

FOUNDED IN 1990 Nature's Tranquil Beauty NORTH CAROLINA

# **NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH FIRE STATION #2**



# ISSUED FOR BIDDING PROJECT MANUAL

for the

# TOWN OF NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH NORTH CAROLINA

Prepared by:



ARCHITECTURE ENGINEERING

October 24, 2023

BMG Project No. 2021025.02

#### **SEALS PAGE**

#### **Architect**

Becker Morgan Group, Inc. 3333 Jaeckle Drive, Suite 120 Wilmington, NC 28403 (910) 341-7600





#### Civil Engineer

Paramounte Engineering, Inc. 122 Cinema Drive Wilmington, NC 28403 (910) 791-6707





## Mechanical / Plumbing Engineer

CBHF Engineers, PLLC 2246 Yaupon Drive Wilmington, NC 28401 (910) 791-4000



10/24/2023

#### **Electrical Engineer**

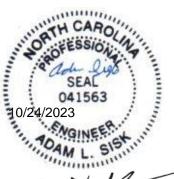
CBHF Engineers, PLLC 2246 Yaupon Drive Wilmington, NC 28401 (910) 791-4000



10/24/2023

### Structural Engineer

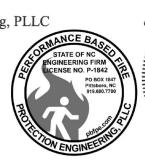
Woods Engineering, PA 254 North Front Street, Suite 201 Wilmington, NC 28401 (910) 343-8007



#### Fire Protection Engineer

Performance Based Fire Protection Engineering, PLLC PO Box 1847 Pittsboro, NC 27312

(919) 600-7780





**SEALS PAGE** 

#### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### **DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

INVITATION TO BID

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS (AIA A701-2018)

FORM OF PROPOSAL (SINGLE PRIME CONTRACT)

MINORITY BUSINESS PARTICIPATION REQUIREMENTS

IDENTIFICATION OF HUB CERTIFIED / MINORITY BUSINESS PARTICIPATION

MBE AFFIDAVIT "A" LISTING OF GOOD FAITH EFFORTS

MBE AFFIDAVIT "B" INTENT TO PERFORM CONTRACT WITH OWN WORKFORCE

MBE AFFIDAVIT "C" PORTION OF WORK TO BE PERFORMED BY MINORITY FIRMS

MBE AFFIDAVIT "D" GOOD FAITH EFFORTS

**E-VERIFY AFFIDAVIT** 

**BID BOND AIA A310-2010** 

STANDARD FORM OF AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER & CONTRACTOR (AIA A101-2017)

INSURANCE AND BONDS (AIA A101 - 2017 - EXHIBIT "A")

PERFORMANCE BOND (AIA A312-2010)

PAYMENT BOND (AIA A312-2010)

003132 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION REPORT PREPARED BY ECS SOUTHEAST, LLP.

#### **DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION, A-201-2017 EDITION

SUPPLEMENTS TO AIA DOCUMENT A-201-2017

011000 SUMMARY OF WORK

012100 ALLOWANCES

012200 UNIT PRICES

012300 ALTERNATES

012500 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

012600 CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

012900 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

013100 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

013200 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

013300 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

014000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

014200 REFERENCES

014533 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

015000 TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

016000 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

017300 EXECUTION

017419 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

017700 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

017823 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

017839 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

017900 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

#### **DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**

033000 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

TABLE OF CONTENTS 000200 - 1

<b>DIVISION</b>	04_	MA	SOI	NRV
DIVISION	V <del>1</del> –	IVIA	$\mathbf{v}$	11/1

042000 UNIT MASONRY

044313.16 ADHERED MANUFACTURED STONE VENEER

#### **DIVISION 05 – METALS**

052100 STEEL JOIST FRAMING

053100 STEEL DECKING

054000 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

055000 METAL FABRICATIONS

055113 METAL PAN STAIRS

#### **DIVISION 06 – WOODS, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

061000 ROUGH CARPENTRY

064116 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

066500 EXTERIOR SYNTHETIC TRIM

#### **DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

071326 SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

072100 THERMAL INSULATION

072726 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

074213.53 METAL SOFFIT PANELS 074646 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

075419 POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

076200 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

077200 ROOF ACCESSORIES

078413 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

079200 JOINT SEALANTS

#### **DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS**

081113 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

081416 FLUSH WOOD DOORS

081743 FIBERGLASS DOORS AND FRAMES

083513 FOLDING DOORS

084113 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

087111 DOOR HARDWARE

088000 GLAZING

089119 FIXED LOUVERS

#### **DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

092216 NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

092900 GYPSUM BOARD

093013 CERAMIC TILING

095113 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

096513 RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

096519 RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

096566 RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING

096723 RESINOUS FLOORING

098316 SPRAYED ACOUSTICAL INSULATION

099113 EXTERIOR PAINTING

099123 INTERIOR PAINTING

#### **DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

101100	VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS
101419	DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE
101423.13	ROOM IDENTIFICATION SIGNAGE
102113.19	PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS
102800	TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES
104413	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS
105113	METAL LOCKERS
105613	METAL STORAGE SHELVING
107114	METAL SUNSHADES
107119	FLOOD PROOFING

#### **DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT**

113100 RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

#### **DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS**

123661 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

#### **DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION**

211000	FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING
	THE BURN ARREST THE ATTACHES TO

211313 WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

#### **DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

DIVISION	22 - PLUMBING
220000	GENERAL PLUMBING
220513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT
220517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220519	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.13	BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.14	CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220529	HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
221119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
221123	DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
221123.21	INLINE, DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
221126	FACILITY LIQUIFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
221319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
221319.13	SANITARY DRAINS
223300	ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS
224213.13	COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
224213.16	COMMERCIAL URINALS
224216.13	COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
224216.16	COMMERCIAL SINKS
224500	EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES
224716	PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

TABLE OF CONTENTS 000200 - 3

000200 - 4

<b>DIVISION</b> 2	23 – MECHANICAL
230000	GENERAL MECHANICAL
230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
230529	HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230548.13	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULTATION
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING
233113	METAL DUCTS
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
233423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
233713	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
235523.13	LOW-INTENSITY, GAS-FIRED, RADIANT HEATERS
237433	DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS
238126	VARIABLE CAPACITY, HEAT PUMP HEAT RECOVERY AIR CONDITIONING
	SYSTEM

## <u>DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL</u>

260500	GENERAL ELECTRICAL
260519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260529	HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260553	ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION
260573	SHORT CIRCUIT, ARC FLASH AND COORDINATION STUDY
260580	EQUIPMENT WIRING SYSTEMS
260923	ENCLOSED CONTACTORS
262416	PANELBOARDS
262726	WIRING DEVICES
262727	OCCUPANCY SENSORS
262813	FUSES
262816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES
263213	DIESEL ENGINE GENERATORS
263600	TRANSFER SWITCHES
264313	SURGE PROTECTION FOR ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS
265100	INTERIOR LUMINAIRES
265200	EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

#### **DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS**

270510 TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS

#### **DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

2831111 DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

## <u>DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK</u>

PLURIS STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

311000 SITE CLEARING

TABLE OF CONTENTS

312200	GRADING
312216	SUBGRADE AND ROADBED
312300	EXCAVATION
312323	FILL AND BACKFILL
312323.23	PROOF ROLLING
312333	TRENCHING FOR SITE UTILITIES
312500	TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL
313700	RIPRAP

### **DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

321123	AGGREGATE BASE COURSE
321126	BITUMINOUS CONCRETE PAVING
321613	CONCRETE CURBING
321723	PAVEMENT MARKINGS
323113	CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES
329113	SOIL PREPARATION
329219	SEEDING
329223	SODDING

## **DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES**

334000	STORM DRAINAGE PIPING
334600	SUBDRAINAGE
334913	MANHOLES AND COVERS

END OF SECTION 000200

TABLE OF CONTENTS

# INVITATION TO BID Town of North Topsail Beach

Sealed bids will be received by the Town of North Topsail Beach, at Town Hall, 2008 Loggerhead Court, North Topsail Beach, North Carolina 28460, by Alice Derian, until <u>Tuesday</u>, <u>November 21, 2023, at 2 PM</u>, and immediately thereafter publicly opened and read for the furnishing of labor, material and equipment entering into the construction of:

#### NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH FIRE STATION #2

A **Mandatory Pre-Bid Meeting and Site Visit** will be held at the Town of North Topsail Beach, Town Hall, 2008 Loggerhead Court, North Topsail Beach, North Carolina 28460, on Tuesday, October 31, 2023, at 2 PM. The meeting will address project scope, bidding procedures, bid forms, MBE Goals, specific questions, and include a tour of the site.

Complete digital plans and specifications for this project may be obtained, at no cost, from Becker Morgan Group, by e-mailing contact information to Kim Wilson (<a href="kwilson@beckermorgan.com">kwilson@beckermorgan.com</a>) during normal office hours.

Each proposal shall be accompanied by a bid bond of five percent (5%) of the bid executed by a surety company licensed under the laws of North Carolina to execute the contract in accordance with the bid bond. Said deposit shall be retained by the owner as liquidated damages in event of failure of the successful bidder to execute the contract within ten days after the award or to give satisfactory surety as required by law.

Single Prime bids will be received from contractors licensed per North Carolina G.S.87. The Town of North Topsail Beach encourages participation by HUB firms and supports efforts to ensure and promote opportunities for MBE. Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) guidelines must be followed.

The Town of North Topsail Beach reserves the unqualified right to reject any and all proposals and waive any informalities.

By order of: Ms. Alice Derian Town Manager Town of North Topsail Beach

#### Instructions to Bidders

for the following Project: (Name, location, and detailed description)

2021025.02 North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2 North Topsail Beach Construction of approximately 11,643 sf of new building and related site work.

(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Town of North Topsail Beach 2008 Loggerhead Court North Topsail Beach, NC 28460 (910) 328-1349

#### THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Becker Morgan Group, Inc. 3333 Jaeckle Drive, Suite 120 Wilmington, NC 28403 (910) 341-7600

#### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 **DEFINITIONS**
- 2 **BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS**
- **BIDDING DOCUMENTS**
- **BIDDING PROCEDURES**
- 5 **CONSIDERATION OF BIDS**
- 6 **POST-BID INFORMATION**
- PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND
- **ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

FEDERAL, STATE, AND LOCAL LAWS MAY IMPOSE REQUIREMENTS ON PUBLIC PROCUREMENT CONTRACTS. **CONSULT LOCAL AUTHORITIES** OR AN ATTORNEY TO VERIFY REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO THIS PROCUREMENT BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM.

It is intended that AIA Document G612<sup>™</sup>–2017, Owner's Instructions to the Architect, Parts A and B will be completed prior to using this document.

#### ARTICLE 1 **DEFINITIONS**

- § 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, supplementary instructions to bidders, the bid form, and any other bidding forms. The Proposed Contract Documents consist of the unexecuted form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor and that Agreement's Exhibits, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, all Addenda, and all other documents enumerated in Article 8 of these Instructions.
- § 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, or in other Proposed Contract Documents apply to the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect, which, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections, modify or interpret the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents, to which Work may be added or deleted by sums stated in Alternate Bids.
- § 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from, or that does not change, the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.
- § 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid and who meets the requirements set forth in the Bidding Documents.
- § 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment, or labor for a portion of the Work.

#### ARTICLE 2 **BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS**

- § 2.1 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that:
  - the Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents;
  - .2 the Bidder understands how the Bidding Documents relate to other portions of the Project, if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction;
  - .3 the Bid complies with the Bidding Documents;
  - the Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and has correlated the Bidder's observations with the requirements of the Proposed Contract Documents;
  - .5 the Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception; and
  - the Bidder has read and understands the provisions for liquidated damages, if any, set forth in the form of .6 Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

#### **BIDDING DOCUMENTS** ARTICLE 3

#### § 3.1 Distribution

§ 3.1.1 Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents, as indicated below, from the issuing office designated in the advertisement or invitation to bid, for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein.

(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall obtain Bidding Documents.)

Complete digital plans and specifications for this project may be obtained, at no cost, from Becker Morgan Group, Inc., by e-mailing contact information to Kim Wilson (kwilson@beckermorgan.com), during normal business hours.

- § 3.1.2 Any required deposit shall be refunded to Bidders who submit a bona fide Bid and return the paper Bidding Documents in good condition within ten days after receipt of Bids. The cost to replace missing or damaged paper documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the paper Bidding Documents, and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.
- § 3.1.3 Bidding Documents will not be issued directly to Sub-bidders unless specifically offered in the advertisement or invitation to bid, or in supplementary instructions to bidders.
- § 3.1.4 Bidders shall use complete Bidding Documents in preparing Bids. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Bidding Documents.
- § 3.1.5 The Bidding Documents will be available for the sole purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by distribution of the Bidding Documents.

#### § 3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents

- § 3.2.1 The Bidder shall carefully study the Bidding Documents, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall notify the Architect of errors, inconsistencies, or ambiguities discovered and request clarification or interpretation pursuant to Section 3.2.2.
- § 3.2.2 Requests for clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing and shall be received by the Architect.

(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit requests for clarification and interpretation.)

All requests for clarification or interpretation shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing to the Architect no later than Tuesday, November 7, 2023, at 2 PM. All requests will be answered in the form of an addendum. Verbal information obtained otherwise will not be considered in awarding of bids.

§ 3.2.3 Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents shall be made by Addendum. Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

#### § 3.3 Substitutions

§ 3.3.1 The materials, products, and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.

#### § 3.3.2 Substitution Process

- § 3.3.2.1 Written requests for substitutions shall be received by the Architect in the same manner as that established for submitting clarifications and interpretations in Section 3.2.2.
- § 3.3.2.2 Bidders shall submit substitution requests on a Substitution Request Form if one is provided in the Bidding Documents.
- § 3.3.2.3 If a Substitution Request Form is not provided, requests shall include (1) the name of the material or equipment specified in the Bidding Documents; (2) the reason for the requested substitution; (3) a complete description of the proposed substitution including the name of the material or equipment proposed as the substitute, performance and test data, and relevant drawings; and (4) any other information necessary for an evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED), that will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.
- § 3.3.3 The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.
- § 3.3.4 If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval shall be set forth in an Addendum. Approvals made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3.5 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### § 3.4 Addenda

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to Bidders known by the issuing office to have received complete Bidding Documents.

(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Addenda will be transmitted.)

- § 3.4.2 Addenda will be available where Bidding Documents are on file.
- § 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued no later than Tuesday, November 14, 2023, except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.
- § 3.4.4 Prior to submitting a Bid, each Bidder shall ascertain that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

#### ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

- § 4.1 Preparation of Bids
- § 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with or identified in the Bidding Documents.
- § 4.1.2 All blanks on the bid form shall be legibly executed. Paper bid forms shall be executed in a non-erasable medium.
- § 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and numbers, unless noted otherwise on the bid form. In case of discrepancy, the amount entered in words shall govern.
- § 4.1.4 Edits to entries made on paper bid forms must be initialed by the signer of the Bid.
- § 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "No Change" or as required by the bid form.
- § 4.1.6 Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the bid security, state the Bidder's refusal to accept award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall neither make additional stipulations on the bid form nor qualify the Bid in any other manner.
- § 4.1.7 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name and legal status of the Bidder. As part of the documentation submitted with the Bid, the Bidder shall provide evidence of its legal authority to perform the Work in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. Each copy of the Bid shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further name the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached, certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.
- § 4.1.8 A Bidder shall incur all costs associated with the preparation of its Bid.

#### § 4.2 Bid Security

**§ 4.2.1** Each Bid shall be accompanied by the following bid security: (*Insert the form and amount of bid security.*)

A bidder's bond on the Bid Bond Form provided herein or on a similar form which in every respect materially complies with said Bid Bond, in the amount of 5% of bid. For purposes of this provision, the amount of the bid shall be the Base Bid. The bidder's bond shall be issued by a surety company licensed to conduct business in North Carolina and acceptable to the Owner.

§ 4.2.2 The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid and shall, if required, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount of the bid security shall

be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty. In the event the Owner fails to comply with Section 6.2, the amount of the bid security shall not be forfeited to the Owner.

- § 4.2.3 If a surety bond is required as bid security, it shall be written on AIA Document A310<sup>TM</sup>, Bid Bond, unless otherwise provided in the Bidding Documents. The attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall affix to the bond a certified and current copy of an acceptable power of attorney. The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.
- § 4.2.4 The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until (a) the Contract has been executed and bonds, if required, have been furnished; (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn; or (c) all Bids have been rejected. However, if no Contract has been awarded or a Bidder has not been notified of the acceptance of its Bid, a Bidder may, beginning 90 days after the opening of Bids, withdraw its Bid and request the return of its bid security.

#### § 4.3 Submission of Bids

§ 4.3.1 A Bidder shall submit its Bid as indicated below:

(Indicate how, such as by website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit their Bid.)

Sealed bids will be received by the Town of North Topsail Beach, at Town Hall, 2008 Loggerhead Court, North Topsail Beach, North Carolina 28460, Alice Derian, until Tuesday, November 21, 2023 at 2 PM, and immediately thereafter publicly opened and read for the furnishing of labor, material, and equipment entering into the construction of North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2.

- § 4.3.2 Paper copies of the Bid, the bid security, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall be addressed to the party receiving the Bids and shall be identified with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address, and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the notation "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof.
- § 4.3.3 Bids shall be submitted by the date and time and at the place indicated in the invitation to bid. Bids submitted after the date and time for receipt of Bids, or at an incorrect place, will not be accepted.
- § 4.3.4 The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids.
- § 4.3.5 A Bid submitted by any method other than as provided in this Section 4.3 will not be accepted.

#### § 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid

- § 4.4.1 Prior to the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder may submit a new Bid to replace a Bid previously submitted, or withdraw its Bid entirely, by notice to the party designated to receive the Bids. Such notice shall be received and duly recorded by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. The receiving party shall verify that replaced or withdrawn Bids are removed from the other submitted Bids and not considered. Notice of submission of a replacement Bid or withdrawal of a Bid shall be worded so as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.
- § 4.4.2 Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids in the same format as that established in Section 4.3, provided they fully conform with these Instructions to Bidders. Bid security shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.
- § 4.4.3 After the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder who discovers that it made a clerical error in its Bid shall notify the Architect of such error within two days, or pursuant to a timeframe specified by the law of the jurisdiction where the Project is located, requesting withdrawal of its Bid. Upon providing evidence of such error to the reasonable satisfaction of the Architect, the Bid shall be withdrawn and not resubmitted. If a Bid is withdrawn pursuant to this Section 4.4.3, the bid security will be attended to as follows:

(State the terms and conditions, such as Bid rank, for returning or retaining the bid security.)

#### ARTICLE 5 **CONSIDERATION OF BIDS**

#### § 5.1 Opening of Bids

If stipulated in an advertisement or invitation to bid, or when otherwise required by law, Bids properly identified and received within the specified time limits will be publicly opened and read aloud. A summary of the Bids may be made available to Bidders.

#### § 5.2 Rejection of Bids

Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids.

#### § 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)

- § 5.3.1 It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents. Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's best interests.
- § 5.3.2 Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Bidding Documents, and to determine the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and Alternates accepted.

#### ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION

#### § 6.1 Contractor's Qualification Statement

Bidders to whom award of a Contract is under consideration shall submit to the Architect, upon request and within the timeframe specified by the Architect, a properly executed AIA Document A305<sup>TM</sup>, Contractor's Qualification Statement, unless such a Statement has been previously required and submitted for this Bid.

#### § 6.2 Owner's Financial Capability

A Bidder to whom award of a Contract is under consideration may request in writing, fourteen days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids, that the Owner furnish to the Bidder reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Owner shall then furnish such reasonable evidence to the Bidder no later than seven days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids. Unless such reasonable evidence is furnished within the allotted time, the Bidder will not be required to execute the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

#### § 6.3 Submittals

- § 6.3.1 After notification of selection for the award of the Contract, the Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, submit in writing to the Owner through the Architect:
  - a designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own forces;
  - .2 names of the principal products and systems proposed for the Work and the manufacturers and suppliers of each; and
  - .3 names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.
- § 6.3.2 The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.
- § 6.3.3 Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect will notify the Bidder if either the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder. If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a proposed person or entity, the Bidder may, at the Bidder's option, withdraw the Bid or submit an acceptable substitute person or entity. The Bidder may also submit any required adjustment in the Base Bid or Alternate Bid to account for the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution. The Owner may accept the adjusted bid price or disqualify the Bidder. In the event of either withdrawal or disqualification, bid security will not be forfeited.
- § 6.3.4 Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner and Architect.

#### ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

#### § 7.1 Bond Requirements

- § 7.1.1 If stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder.
- § 7.1.2 If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid. If the furnishing of such bonds is required after receipt of bids and before execution of the Contract, the cost of such bonds shall be added to the Bid in determining the Contract Sum.
- § 7.1.3 The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.
- § 7.1.4 Unless otherwise indicated below, the Penal Sum of the Payment and Performance Bonds shall be the amount of the Contract Sum.
- (If Payment or Performance Bonds are to be in an amount other than 100% of the Contract Sum, indicate the dollar amount or percentage of the Contract Sum.)

#### § 7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bonds

- § 7.2.1 The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to commence sooner in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered in accordance with this Section 7.2.1.
- § 7.2.2 Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond.
- § 7.2.3 The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.
- § 7.2.4 The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

#### ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- § 8.1 Copies of the proposed Contract Documents have been made available to the Bidder and consist of the following documents:
  - AIA Document A101<sup>TM</sup>–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, unless otherwise stated below.
    - (Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)
  - AIA Document A101<sup>TM</sup>–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, unless otherwise stated below. (Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)
  - AIA Document A201<sup>TM</sup>–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, unless otherwise stated below.
    - (Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)
  - .4 AIA Document E203<sup>TM</sup>–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, dated as indicated below:

(Insert the date of the E203-2013.)

N/A

.5	Drawings				
	Number	Title	Date		
	See G001 - Coversheet				
.6	Specifications				
	<b>Section</b> See Table of Contents	Title	Date	Pages	
.7	Addenda:				
	Number	Date	Pages		
.8	Other Exhibits: (Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)				
[ ] AIA Document E204 <sup>TM</sup> _2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below: (Insert the date of the E204-2017.)					
[ ] The Sustainability Plan:					
	Title	Date	Pages		
	[ ] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:				
	Document	Title	Date	Pages	
.9	Other documents listed below: (List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Proposed Contract Documents.)				
	Geotechnical Exploration Report, prepared by ECS Southeast, LLP, dated January 10, 2023				

AIA Document A701 – 2018. Copyright © 1970, 1974, 1978, 1987, 1997 and 2018. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:21:40 ET on 10/19/2023 under Order No.4104244725 which expires on 08/21/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes:

8

#### FORM OF PROPOSAL

North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2	Contract:
North Topsail Beach, North Carolina	Bidder:
	Date:
or principals is or are named herein and that no other or in the contract to be entered into; that this propose or parties making a bid or proposal; and that it is in The bidder further declares that he has examined the and has read all special provisions furnished prior to work to be performed. The bidder further declares	e only person or persons interested in this proposal as principal reperson than herein mentioned has any interest in this proposal all is made without connection with any other person, company all respects fair and in good faith without collusion or fraud. The site of the work and the contract documents relative thereto the opening of bids; that he has satisfied himself relative to the that he and his subcontractors have fully complied with NCGS d by Section 2 (c) of Session Law 2013-418, codified as N.C.
the form of contract specified below, to furnish all means of transportation and labor necessary to comfull in complete accordance with the plans, specificated of the Town of North Topsail Beach and Becker Me	accepted to contract with the <b>Town of North Topsail Beach</b> in a necessary materials, equipment, machinery, tools, apparatus, plete the construction of the <b>North Topsail Fire Station #2</b> in ations and contract documents, to the full and entire satisfaction organ Group, Inc. with a definite understanding that no money the General Conditions and the contract documents, for the sum

SINGLE PRIME CONTRACT:		
Base Bid:	_ ,,	
	Dollars (\$)	

GS143-128(d) requires all single prime bidders to identify their subcontractors for the above subdivisions of work. A contractor whose bid is accepted shall not substitute any person as subcontractor in the place of the subcontractor listed in the original bid, except (i) if the listed subcontractor's bid is later determined by the contractor to be non-responsible or non-responsive or the listed subcontractor refuses to enter into a contract for the complete performance of the bid work, or (ii) with the approval of the awarding authority for good cause shown by the contractor.

#### TIME OF COMPLETION

If notified of the acceptance of the Bid or any Alternate Bids within ninety (90) calendar days after the date fixed for opening of the Bids, the undersigned agrees to execute and deliver the specified contract and contractor's bonds within ten (10) days. The undersigned agrees if awarded the contract, to commence work within thirty (30) calendar days and to faithfully and properly complete the work no later than three hundred sixty-five (365) calendar days from the date of Notice to Proceed, and all work shall be completed with the best interest of the Owner and the safety of the public.

#### LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

Should the Contractor fail to substantially complete the work under this contract within the stipulated time as has been set forth in "Time of Completion" paragraph above, plus any additional days that may result from extension of time granted by the Architect/Engineer, he agrees that the Owner may retain the sum of \$500.00 per calendar day for each succeeding calendar day that the Owner is deprived of full use of any or all phases of the project. This amount is agreed upon as a reasonable and proper measure of Liquidated Damages which the Owner sustains per day by failure of the Contractor to complete the work within the time stipulated; it being recognized by the Owner, the Contractor, and the Architect that the injury to the Owner which could result from failure by the Contractor to

Proposal Form 1 of 4

complete on schedule is uncertain and insusceptible to certain computation, and this sum is not to be construed in any sense as a penalty.

Uľ	NIT PRICES:		_
1.	Unit Price No. 1: Removal of	unsuitable soils.	
		Dollars (\$	) per cubic yard
2.	Unit Price No. 2: #57 or #67 s	tone backfill including materials placement and comp	paction.
		Dollars (\$	) per cubic yard
Ιh	LLOWANCES: nave included in my General Coodifying addenda.	onstruction Work Base Bid the Allowances as specif	ried in Section 012100 and
Al	LTERNATES:		
		scribed in the contract documents be accepted, the ameducted from the base bid. (Strike out "Add" or "December 1981)	
Al			ng per Specification
<u>(</u> A	ADD/DEDUCT)	Dolla	rs (\$)
<u>TI</u>	HE FOLLOWING SUBCONT	TRACTORS ARE LISTED:	
Ci	vil Subcontractor:		Lic:
Cı	vii Subconfuctor.	(Name, Address, and License Number)	Ele
Plı	umbing Subcontractor:		Lic:
	umomg succontractor.	(Name, Address, and License Number)	210.
M	echanical Subcontractor:		Lie:
		(Name, Address, and License Number)	
Fl	ectricall Subcontractor:		Lic:
Li	ecticali Subcontractor.	(Name, Address, and License Number)	Dic.
D:	re Protection Subcontractor:		I :aı
1.11	TO I TORCCHOIL SUUCOIIII ACIUI.	(Name, Address, and License Number)	Lic:

Proposal Form 2 of 4

#### MINORITY BUSINESS PARTICIPATION REQUIREMENTS

<u>Provide with the bid</u> - Under GS 143-128.2(c) the undersigned bidder shall identify <u>on its bid</u> (Identification of Minority Business Participation Form) the minority businesses that it will use on the project with the total dollar value of the bids that will be performed by the minority businesses. <u>Also</u> list the good faith efforts (Affidavit A) made to solicit minority participation in the bid effort.

**NOTE**: A contractor that performs all of the work with its <u>own workforce</u> may submit an Affidavit (**B**) to that effect in lieu of Affidavit (**A**) required above. The MB Participation Form must still be submitted even if there is zero participation.

<u>After the bid opening</u> - The Owner will consider all bids and alternates and determine the lowest responsible, responsive bidder. Upon notification of being the apparent low bidder, the bidder shall then file within 72 hours of the notification of being the apparent lowest bidder, the following:

An Affidavit (C) that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, which is equal to or more than the 10% goal established. This affidavit shall give rise to the presumption that the bidder has made the required good faith effort and Affidavit **D** is not necessary;

#### \* OR \*

<u>If less than the 10% goal</u>, Affidavit (**D**) of its good faith effort to meet the goal shall be provided. The document must include evidence of all good faith efforts that were implemented, including any advertisements, solicitations and other specific actions demonstrating recruitment and selection of minority businesses for participation in the contract.

**Note:** Bidders must always submit <u>with their bid</u> the Identification of Minority Business Participation Form listing all MB contractors, <u>vendors and suppliers</u> that will be used. If there is no MB participation, then enter none or zero on the form. Affidavit A **or** Affidavit B, as applicable, also must be submitted with the bid. Failure to file a required affidavit or documentation with the bid or after being notified apparent low bidder is grounds for rejection of the bid.

Proposal Form 3 of 4

#### **Proposal Signature Page**

The undersigned further agrees that in the case of failure on his part to execute the said contract and the bonds within ten (10) consecutive calendar days after being given written notice of the award of contract, the certified check, cash or bid bond accompanying this bid shall be paid into the funds of the owner's account set aside for the project, as liquidated damages for such failure; otherwise the certified check, cash or bid bond accompanying this proposal shall be returned to the undersigned.

	(Name of firm or corporation making	bid)
WITNESS:	By:	,
	Signa	ture
(Proprietorship or Partnership)		
(Proprietorship or Partnership)	PTINLO	or type
	Title:	er/Partner/Pres./V.Pres)
	(Own	er/Partner/Pres./V.Pres)
	Address:	
ATTEST:		
By:	License No.:	:
Title:	Federal I.D.	No
(Corp. Sec. or Asst. Sec. only)		
	Email Addre	ess:
(CORPORATE SEAL)		
(CORTORATE SEAL)		
Addendum received and used in comp	outing bid:	
Addendum No. 1	Addendum No. 3	Addendum No. 5
Addendum No. 2	Addendum No. 4	Addendum No. 6

Proposal Form 4 of 4

# GUIDELINES FOR RECRUITMENT AND SELECTION OF MINORITY BUSINESSES FOR PARTICIPATION IN STATE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS

In accordance with G.S. 143-128.2 (effective January 1, 2002) these guidelines establish goals for minority participation in single-prime bidding, separate-prime bidding, construction manager at risk, and alternative contracting methods, on State construction projects in the amount of \$300,000 or more. The legislation provides that the State shall have a verifiable ten percent (10%) goal for participation by minority businesses in the total value of work for each project for which a contract or contracts are awarded. These requirements are published to accomplish that end.

#### **SECTION A: INTENT**

It is the intent of these guidelines that the State of North Carolina, as awarding authority for construction projects, and the contractors and subcontractors performing the construction contracts awarded shall cooperate and in good faith do all things legal, proper and reasonable to achieve the statutory goal of ten percent (10%) for participation by minority businesses in each construction project as mandated by GS 143-128.2. Nothing in these guidelines shall be construed to require contractors or awarding authorities to award contracts or subcontracts to or to make purchases of materials or equipment from minority-business contractors or minority-business subcontractors who do not submit the lowest responsible, responsive bid or bids.

#### **SECTION B: DEFINITIONS**

- 1. <u>Minority</u> a person who is a citizen or lawful permanent resident of the United States and who is:
  - a. Black, that is, a person having origins in any of the black racial groups in Africa;
  - b. Hispanic, that is, a person of Spanish or Portuguese culture with origins in Mexico, South or Central America, or the Caribbean Islands, regardless of race;
  - c. Asian American, that is, a person having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia and Asia, the Indian subcontinent, the Pacific Islands;
  - d. American Indian, that is, a person having origins in any of the original peoples of North America; or
  - e. Female
- 2. Minority Business means a business:
  - a. In which at least fifty-one percent (51%) is owned by one or more minority persons, or in the case of a corporation, in which at least fifty-one percent (51%) of the stock is owned by one or more minority persons or socially and economically disadvantaged individuals; and
  - b. Of which the management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more of the minority persons or socially and economically disadvantaged individuals who own it.
- 3. Socially and economically disadvantaged individual means the same as defined in 15 U.S.C. 637. "Socially disadvantaged individuals are those who have been subjected to racial or ethnic prejudice or cultural bias because of their identity as a member of a group without regard to their individual qualities". "Economically disadvantaged individuals are those socially disadvantaged individuals whose ability to compete in the free enterprise system has been impaired due to diminished capital and credit opportunities as compared to others in the same business area who are not socially disadvantaged".
- 4. Public Entity means State and all public subdivisions and local governmental units.
- 5. Owner The State of North Carolina, through the Agency/Institution named in the contract.
- 6. <u>Designer</u> Any person, firm, partnership, or corporation, which has contracted with the State of North Carolina to perform architectural or engineering, work.
- 7. <u>Bidder</u> Any person, firm, partnership, corporation, association, or joint venture seeking to be awarded a public contract or subcontract.

- 8. <u>Contract</u> A mutually binding legal relationship or any modification thereof obligating the seller to furnish equipment, materials or services, including construction, and obligating the buyer to pay for them.
- 9. <u>Contractor</u> Any person, firm, partnership, corporation, association, or joint venture which has contracted with the State of North Carolina to perform construction work or repair.
- 10. <u>Subcontractor</u> A firm under contract with the prime contractor or construction manager at risk for supplying materials or labor and materials and/or installation. The subcontractor may or may not provide materials in his subcontract.

#### **SECTION C: RESPONSIBILITIES**

1. Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses, Department of Administration (hereinafter referred to as HUB Office).

The HUB Office has established a program, which allows interested persons or businesses qualifying as a minority business under G.S. 143-128.2, to obtain certification in the State of North Carolina procurement system. The information provided by the minority businesses will be used by the HUB Office to:

- a. Identify those areas of work for which there are minority businesses, as requested.
- b. Make available to interested parties a list of prospective minority business contractors and subcontractors.
- c. Assist in the determination of technical assistance needed by minority business contractors.

In addition to being responsible for the certification/verification of minority businesses that want to participate in the State construction program, the HUB Office will:

- (1) Maintain a current list of minority businesses. The list shall include the areas of work in which each minority business is interested.
- (2) Inform minority businesses on how to identify and obtain contracting and subcontracting opportunities through the State Construction Office and other public entities.
- (3) Inform minority businesses of the contracting and subcontracting process for public construction building projects.
- (4) Work with the North Carolina trade and professional organizations to improve the ability of minority businesses to compete in the State construction projects.
- (5) The HUB Office also oversees the minority business program by:
  - a. Monitoring compliance with the program requirements.
  - b. Assisting in the implementation of training and technical assistance programs.
  - c. Identifying and implementing outreach efforts to increase the utilization of minority businesses.
  - d. Reporting the results of minority business utilization to the Secretary of the Department of Administration, the Governor, and the General Assembly.

#### 2. State Construction Office

The State Construction Office will be responsible for the following:

- a. Furnish to the HUB Office a minimum of twenty-one days prior to the bid opening the following:
  - (1) Project description and location;
  - (2) Locations where bidding documents may be reviewed;
  - (3) Name of a representative of the owner who can be contacted during the advertising period to advise who the prospective bidders are;
  - (4) Date, time and location of the bid opening.
  - (5) Date, time and location of prebid conference, if scheduled.
- b. Attending scheduled prebid conference, if necessary, to clarify requirements of the general statutes regarding minority-business participation, including the bidders' responsibilities.

- c. Reviewing the apparent low bidders' statutory compliance with the requirements listed in the proposal, that must be complied with, if the bid is to be considered as responsive, prior to award of contracts. The State reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive informalities.
- d. Reviewing of minority business requirements at Preconstruction conference.
- e. Monitoring of contractors' compliance with minority business requirements in the contract documents during construction.
- f. Provide statistical data and required reports to the HUB Office.
- g. Resolve any protest and disputes arising after implementation of the plan, in conjunction with the HUB Office.

#### 3. Owner

Before awarding a contract, owner shall do the following:

- a. Develop and implement a minority business participation outreach plan to identify minority businesses that can perform public building projects and to implement outreach efforts to encourage minority business participation in these projects to include education, recruitment, and interaction between minority businesses and non-minority businesses.
- b. Attend the scheduled prebid conference.
- c. At least 10 days prior to the scheduled day of bid opening, notify minority businesses that have requested notices from the public entity for public construction or repair work and minority businesses that otherwise indicated to the Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses an interest in the type of work being bid or the potential contracting opportunities listed in the proposal. The notification shall include the following:
  - 1. A description of the work for which the bid is being solicited.

  - The date, time, and location where bids are to be submitted.
     The name of the individual within the owner's organization who will be available to answer questions about the project.
  - 4. Where bid documents may be reviewed.
  - 5. Any special requirements that may exist.
- d. Utilize other media, as appropriate, likely to inform potential minority businesses of the bid being sought.
- e. Maintain documentation of any contacts, correspondence, or conversation with minority business firms made in an attempt to meet the goals.
- f. Review, jointly with the designer, all requirements of G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f) (i.e. bidders' proposals for identification of the minority businesses that will be utilized with corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit listing good faith efforts, or affidavit of self-performance of work, if the contractor will perform work under contract by its own workforce) - prior to recommendation of award to the State Construction Office.
- g. Evaluate documentation to determine good faith effort has been achieved for minority business utilization prior to recommendation of award to State Construction Office.
- h. Review prime contractors' pay applications for compliance with minority business utilization commitments prior to payment.
- i. Make documentation showing evidence of implementation of Owner's responsibilities available for review by State Construction Office and HUB Office, upon request

#### 4. Designer

Under the single-prime bidding, separate prime bidding, construction manager at risk, or alternative contracting method, the designer will:

- a. Attend the scheduled prebid conference to explain minority business requirements to the prospective bidders.
- b. Assist the owner to identify and notify prospective minority business prime and subcontractors of potential contracting opportunities.
- c. Maintain documentation of any contacts, correspondence, or conversation with minority business firms made in an attempt to meet the goals.
- d. Review jointly with the owner, all requirements of G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S.143-128.2(f) (i.e. bidders' proposals for identification of the minority businesses that will be utilized with

- corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit listing Good Faith Efforts, or affidavit of self-performance of work, if the contractor will perform work under contract by its own workforce) prior to recommendation of award.
- e. During construction phase of the project, review "MBE Documentation for Contract Payment" (Appendix E) for compliance with minority business utilization commitments. Submit Appendix E form with monthly pay applications to the owner and forward copies to the State Construction Office.
- f. Make documentation showing evidence of implementation of Designer's responsibilities available for review by State Construction Office and HUB Office, upon request.

# 5. <u>Prime Contractor(s), CM at Risk, and Its First-Tier Subcontractors</u> Under the single-prime bidding, the separate-prime biding, construction manager at risk and

alternative contracting methods, contractor(s) will:

- a. Attend the scheduled prebid conference.
- b. Identify or determine those work areas of a subcontract where minority businesses may have an interest in performing subcontract work.
- c. At least ten (10) days prior to the scheduled day of bid opening, notify minority businesses of potential subcontracting opportunities listed in the proposal. The notification will include the following:
  - (1) A description of the work for which the subbid is being solicited.
  - (2) The date, time and location where subbids are to be submitted.
  - (3) The name of the individual within the company who will be available to answer questions about the project.
  - (4) Where bid documents may be reviewed.
  - (5) Any special requirements that may exist, such as insurance, licenses, bonds and financial arrangements.

If there are more than three (3) minority businesses in the general locality of the project who offer similar contracting or subcontracting services in the specific trade, the contractor(s) shall notify three (3), but may contact more, if the contractor(s) so desires.

- d. During the bidding process, comply with the contractor(s) requirements listed in the proposal for minority participation.
- e. Identify on the bid, the minority businesses that will be utilized on the project with corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit listing good faith efforts as required by G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f).
- f. Make documentation showing evidence of implementation of PM, CM-at-Risk and First-Tier Subcontractor responsibilities available for review by State Construction Office and HUB Office, upon request.
- g. Upon being named the apparent low bidder, the Bidder shall provide one of the following: (1) an affidavit (Affidavit C) that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, which is equal to or more than the applicable goal; (2) if the percentage is not equal to the applicable goal, then documentation of all good faith efforts taken to meet the goal. Failure to comply with these requirements is grounds for rejection of the bid and award to the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder.
- h. The contractor(s) shall identify the name(s) of minority business subcontractor(s) and corresponding dollar amount of work on the schedule of values. The schedule of values shall be provided as required in Article 31 of the General Conditions of the Contract to facilitate payments to the subcontractors.
- i. The contractor(s) shall submit with each monthly pay request(s) and final payment(s), "MBE Documentation for Contract Payment" (Appendix E), for designer's review.
- j. During the construction of a project, at any time, if it becomes necessary to replace a minority business subcontractor, immediately advise the owner, State Construction Office, and the Director of the HUB Office in writing, of the circumstances involved. The prime contractor shall make a good faith effort to replace a minority business subcontractor with another minority business subcontractor.

- k. If during the construction of a project additional subcontracting opportunities become available, make a good faith effort to solicit subbids from minority businesses.
- 1. It is the intent of these requirements apply to all contractors performing as prime contractor and first tier subcontractor under construction manager at risk on state projects.

### 6. <u>Minority Business Responsibilities</u>

While minority businesses are not required to become certified in order to participate in the State construction projects, it is recommended that they become certified and should take advantage of the appropriate technical assistance that is made available. In addition, minority businesses who are contacted by owners or bidders must respond promptly whether or not they wish to submit a bid.

#### **SECTION 4: DISPUTE PROCEDURES**

It is the policy of this state that disputes that involves a person's rights, duties or privileges, should be settled through informal procedures. To that end, minority business disputes arising under these guidelines should be resolved as governed under G.S. 143-128(g).

<u>SECTION 5</u>: These guidelines shall apply upon promulgation on state construction projects. Copies of these guidelines may be obtained from the Department of Administration, State Construction Office, (physical address) 301 North Wilmington Street, Suite 450, NC Education Building, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27601-2827, (mail address) 1307 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27699-1307, phone (919) 807-4100, Website: www.nc-sco.com

**SECTION 6**: In addition to these guidelines, there will be issued with each construction bid package provisions for contractual compliance providing minority business participation in the state construction program.

#### MINORITY BUSINESS CONTRACT PROVISIONS (CONSTRUCTION)

#### **APPLICATION:**

The Guidelines for Recruitment and Selection of Minority Businesses for Participation in State Construction Contracts are hereby made a part of these contract documents. These guidelines shall apply to all contractors regardless of ownership. Copies of these guidelines may be obtained from the Department of Administration, State Construction Office, (physical address) 301 North Wilmington Street, Suite 450, NC Education Building, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27601-2827, (mail address) 1307 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27699-1307, phone (919) 807-4100, Website: http://www.nc-sco.com

#### MINORITY BUSINESS SUBCONTRACT GOALS:

The goals for participation by minority firms as subcontractors on this project have been set at 10%.

The bidder must identify on its bid, the minority businesses that will be utilized on the project with corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit (Affidavit A) listing good faith efforts <u>or</u> affidavit (Affidavit B) of self-performance of work, if the bidder will perform work under contract by its own workforce, as required by G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f).

The lowest responsible, responsive bidder must provide Affidavit C, that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, which is equal to or more than the applicable goal.

#### OR

Provide Affidavit D, that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, with documentation of Good Faith Effort, if the percentage is not equal to the applicable goal.

#### OR

Provide Affidavit B, which includes sufficient information for the State to determine that the bidder does not customarily subcontract work on this type project.

The above information must be provided as required. Failure to submit these documents is grounds for rejection of the bid.

#### MINIMUM COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS:

All written statements, affidavits or intentions made by the Bidder shall become a part of the agreement between the Contractor and the State for performance of this contract. Failure to comply with any of these statements, affidavits or intentions, or with the minority business Guidelines shall constitute a breach of the contract. A finding by the State that any information submitted either prior to award of the contract or during the performance of the contract is inaccurate, false or incomplete, shall also constitute a breach of the contract. Any such breach may result in termination of the contract in accordance with the termination provisions contained in the contract. It shall be solely at the option of the State whether to terminate the contract for breach.

In determining whether a contractor has made Good Faith Efforts, the State will evaluate all efforts made by the Contractor and will determine compliance in regard to quantity, intensity, and results of these efforts. Good Faith Efforts include:

- (1) Contacting minority businesses that reasonably could have been expected to submit a quote and that were known to the contractor or available on State or local government maintained lists at least 10 days before the bid or proposal date and notifying them of the nature and scope of the work to be performed.
- (2) Making the construction plans, specifications and requirements available for review by prospective minority businesses, or providing these documents to them at least 10 days before the bid or proposals are due.
- (3) Breaking down or combining elements of work into economically feasible units to facilitate minority participation.
- (4) Working with minority trade, community, or contractor organizations identified by the Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses and included in the bid documents that provide assistance in recruitment of minority businesses.
- (5) Attending any prebid meetings scheduled by the public owner.
- (6) Providing assistance in getting required bonding or insurance or providing alternatives to bonding or insurance for subcontractors.
- (7) Negotiating in good faith with interested minority businesses and not rejecting them as unqualified without sound reasons based on their capabilities. Any rejection of a minority business based on lack of qualification should have the reasons documented in writing.
- (8) Providing assistance to an otherwise qualified minority business in need of equipment, loan capital, lines of credit, or joint pay agreements to secure loans, supplies, or letters of credit, including waiving credit that is ordinarily required. Assisting minority businesses in obtaining the same unit pricing with the bidder's suppliers in order to help minority businesses in establishing credit.
- (9) Negotiating joint venture and partnership arrangements with minority businesses in order to increase opportunities for minority business participation on a public construction or repair project when possible.
- (10) Providing quick pay agreements and policies to enable minority contractors and suppliers to meet cash-flow demands.

## APPENDIX E

### MBE DOCUMENTATION FOR CONTRACT PAYMENTS

Prime Contractor/Architect	t:			
Address & Phone:				
Project Name:				
Pay Application #:		Period:		
The following is a list of parentioned period.	ayments made to	Minority Business l	Enterprises on this pr	roject for the abov
MBE FIRM NAME	* INDICATE TYPE OF MBE	AMOUNT PAID THIS MONTH	TOTAL PAYMENTS TO DATE	TOTAL AMOUNT COMMITTED
*Minority categories: American Indian (I), F				
Date:	Approved/Ce	ertified By:		ame
			T	itle
			Sig	nature

SUBMIT WITH EACH PAY REQUEST & FINAL PAYMENT

## **Identification of HUB Certified/ Minority Business Participation**

m Name, Address and Phone #	Work Type	*Minority Category	**HUB Certified (Y/N)

The total value of minority business contracting will be (\$)\_\_\_\_\_\_.

<sup>\*\*</sup> HUB Certification with the state HUB Office required to be counted toward state participation goals.

	h to Bid Attach
Cou	inty of
	(Name of Bidder)
Affi	davit of
	I have made a good faith effort to comply under the following areas checked:
	ders must earn at least 50 points from the good faith efforts listed for their bid to be sidered responsive. (1 NC Administrative Code 30 I.0101)
1	1 – (10 pts) Contacted minority businesses that reasonably could have been expected to submit a quote and that were known to the contractor, or available on State or local government maintained lists, at least 10 days before the bid date and notified them of the nature and scope of the work to be performed.
	<b>2(10 pts)</b> Made the construction plans, specifications and requirements available for review by prospective minority businesses, or providing these documents to them at least 10 days before the bids are due.
	3 – <b>(15 pts)</b> Broken down or combined elements of work into economically feasible units to facilitate minority participation.
I	<b>4 – (10 pts)</b> Worked with minority trade, community, or contractor organizations identified by the Office of Historically Underutilized Businesses and included in the bid documents that provide assistance in recruitment of minority businesses.
	5 – (10 pts) Attended prebid meetings scheduled by the public owner.
	<b>6</b> – <b>(20 pts)</b> Provided assistance in getting required bonding or insurance or provided alternatives to bonding or insurance for subcontractors.
ı	7 – (15 pts) Negotiated in good faith with interested minority businesses and did not reject them as unqualified without sound reasons based on their capabilities. Any rejection of a minority business based on ack of qualification should have the reasons documented in writing.
(	3 – <b>(25 pts)</b> Provided assistance to an otherwise qualified minority business in need of equipment, loan capital, lines of credit, or joint pay agreements to secure loans, supplies, or letters of credit, including waiving credit that is ordinarily required. Assisted minority businesses in obtaining the same unit pricing with the bidder's suppliers in order to help minority businesses in establishing credit.
į	9 – <b>(20 pts)</b> Negotiated joint venture and partnership arrangements with minority businesses in order to ncrease opportunities for minority business participation on a public construction or repair project when possible.
	<b>10</b> - <b>(20 pts)</b> Provided quick pay agreements and policies to enable minority contractors and suppliers to meet cash-flow demands.
Ider exe	undersigned, if apparent low bidder, will enter into a formal agreement with the firms listed in the atification of Minority Business Participation schedule conditional upon scope of contract to be cuted with the Owner. Substitution of contractors must be in accordance with GS143-128.2(d) ure to abide by this statutory provision will constitute a breach of the contract.
	undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read the terms of the minority business mitment and is authorized to bind the bidder to the commitment herein set forth.
Date	e <u>:                                    </u>
	Signature:
	Title:

ate <u>:                                    </u>	Name of Authorized Officer:			
	Signature:			
	Title:		_	
SEAL	State of, County of Subscribed and sworn to before me this Notary Public My commission expires	day of	20	

Attach to Bid Attach to Bid

# State of North Carolina AFFIDAVIT B – Intent to Perform Contract with Own Workforce.

County of		With <u>Own</u> Worklords.	
County of			
Affidavit of  I hereby certify that it is our inter	(Nam	ame of Bidder) 10% of the work required for the	
		contra	ct.
(Na	ame of Project)		
	performs and ha	at the Bidder does not customarily subcontract elemer has the capability to perform and will perform <u>all</u> r own current work forces; and	ıts
		ormation or documentation requested by the owner in rees to make a Good Faith Effort to utilize minority	
The undersigned hereby certifies Bidder to the commitments here		has read this certification and is authorized to bind th	е
Date: Name of Aut	thorized Officer:	:	
	Signature:_	::	
SEAL	Title: <sub>-</sub>	e:	
State of	, County of		
State of Subscribed and sworn to before me Notary Public	this	day of20	

My commission expires\_\_\_\_\_

## Do not submit with bid Do not submit with bid Do not submit with bid State of North Carolina AFFIDAVIT C - Portion of the Work to be Performed by HUB Certified/Minority Businesses County of \_\_\_\_\_ (Note this form is to be submitted only by the apparent lowest responsible, responsive bidder.) If the portion of the work to be executed by HUB certified/minority businesses as defined in GS143-128.2(g) and 128.4(a),(b),(e) is equal to or greater than 10% of the bidders total contract price, then the bidder must complete this affidavit. This affidavit shall be provided by the apparent lowest responsible, responsive bidder within 72 hours after notification of being low bidder. Affidavit of \_\_\_\_\_\_(Name of Bidder) I do hereby certify that on the (Project Name) Project ID#\_\_\_\_\_Amount of Bid \$\_\_\_\_\_ I will expend a minimum of \_\_\_\_\_\_% of the total dollar amount of the contract with minority business enterprises. Minority businesses will be employed as construction subcontractors, vendors, suppliers or providers of professional services. Such work will be subcontracted to the following firms listed below. Attach additional sheets if required Name and Phone Number \*Minority \*\*HUB Work Dollar Value Category Certified Description Y/N \*Minority categories: Black, African American (B), Hispanic (H), Asian American (A) American Indian (I), Female (**F**) Socially and Economically Disadvantaged (**D**) \*\* HUB Certification with the state HUB Office required to be counted toward state participation goals. Pursuant to GS143-128.2(d), the undersigned will enter into a formal agreement with Minority Firms for work listed in this schedule conditional upon execution of a contract with the Owner. Failure to fulfill this commitment may constitute a breach of the contract. The undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read the terms of this commitment and is authorized to bind the bidder to the commitment herein set forth. Date: Name of Authorized Officer: SEAL State of \_\_\_\_\_, County of \_\_\_\_\_ Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_day of \_\_\_\_\_20\_\_\_

## State of North Carolina AFFIDAVIT D - Good Faith Efforts

County of				
(Note this form is to be submitted	only by the a	apparent lo	west responsible, resp	oonsive bidder.)
If the goal of 10% participation by HU provide the following documentation				he Bidder shall
Affidavit of			I do hereby	certify that on the
	(Name of Bidde	r)		
Project ID#	ect Name)	Amount c	of Bid \$	
I will expend a minimum of	ity businesse ofessional ser	s will be em vices. Suc	ployed as construction	subcontractors,
Name and Phone Number	*Minority Category	**HUB Certified Y/N	Work Description	Dollar Value

**Examples** of documentation that <u>may</u> be required to demonstrate the Bidder's good faith efforts to meet the goals set forth in these provisions include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

- A. Copies of solicitations for quotes to at least three (3) minority business firms from the source list provided by the State for each subcontract to be let under this contract (if 3 or more firms are shown on the source list). Each solicitation shall contain a specific description of the work to be subcontracted, location where bid documents can be reviewed, representative of the Prime Bidder to contact, and location, date and time when quotes must be received.
- B. Copies of quotes or responses received from each firm responding to the solicitation.
- C. A telephone log of follow-up calls to each firm sent a solicitation.
- D. For subcontracts where a minority business firm is not considered the lowest responsible sub-bidder, copies of quotes received from all firms submitting quotes for that particular subcontract.
- E. Documentation of any contacts or correspondence to minority business, community, or contractor organizations in an attempt to meet the goal.
- F. Copy of pre-bid roster
- G. Letter documenting efforts to provide assistance in obtaining required bonding or insurance for minority business.
- H. Letter detailing reasons for rejection of minority business due to lack of qualification.
- I. Letter documenting proposed assistance offered to minority business in need of equipment, loan capital, lines of credit, or joint pay agreements to secure loans, supplies, or letter of credit, including waiving credit that is ordinarily required.

Failure to provide the documentation as listed in these provisions may result in rejection of the bid and award to the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder.

Pursuant to GS143-128.2(d), the undersigned will enter into a formal agreement with Minority Firms for work listed in this schedule conditional upon execution of a contract with the Owner. Failure to fulfill this commitment may constitute a breach of the contract.

<sup>\*</sup>Minority categories: Black, African American (**B**), Hispanic (**H**), Asian American (**A**) American Indian (**I**), Female (**F**) Socially and Economically Disadvantaged (**D**)

<sup>\*\*</sup> HUB Certification with the state HUB Office required to be counted toward state participation goals.

The undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read the terms of this commitment and is authorized to bind the bidder to the commitment herein set forth.

Date <u>:</u>	Name of Authorized Officer:	 	
	Signature:		
	Title:		
SEAL )	Subscribed and sworn to before me	 20	
	Notary Public My commission expires		

STAT	TE OF
	NTY OF
I,	**************************************
behalt	f of (the entity bidding on project hereinafter "Employer")
after f	first being duly sworn hereby swears or affirms as follows:
1.	Employer understands that <u>E-Verify</u> is the federal E-Verify program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security and other federal agencies, or any successor or equivalent program used to verify the work authorization of newly hired employees pursuant to federal law in accordance with NCGS §64-25(5).
2.	Employer understands that <u>Employers Must Use E-Verify</u> . Each employer, after hiring an employee to work in the United States, shall verify the work authorization of the employee through EVerify in accordance with NCGS§64-26(a).
3.	Employer is a person, business entity, or other organization that transacts business in this State and that employs 25 or more employees in this State. (Mark "Yes" or "No")  a. YES  b. NO
4.	Employer's subcontractors comply with E-Verify, and if Employer is the winning bidder on this project Employer will ensure compliance with E-Verify by any subcontractors subsequently hired by Employer.
This _	
– Signa	ture of Affiant
	or Type Name: of County of
	d and sworn to (or affirmed) before me, this the
_	f, 20
	ommission Expires:
	Notary Public Seal

## **Bid Bond**

#### **CONTRACTOR:**

(Name, legal status and address)

#### SURETY:

(Name, legal status and principal place of business)

#### OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address) Town of North Topsail Beach 2008 Loggerhead County North Topsail Beach, NC 28460

#### **BOND AMOUNT: \$**

#### PROJECT:

(Name, location or address, and Project number, if any) North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2

The Contractor and Surety are bound to the Owner in the amount set forth above, for the payment of which the Contractor and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, as provided herein. The conditions of this Bond are such that if the Owner accepts the bid of the Contractor within the time specified in the bid documents, or within such time period as may be agreed to by the Owner and Contractor, and the Contractor either (1) enters into a contract with the Owner in accordance with the terms of such bid, and gives such bond or bonds as may be specified in the bidding or Contract Documents, with a surety admitted in the jurisdiction of the Project and otherwise acceptable to the Owner, for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and material furnished in the prosecution thereof; or (2) pays to the Owner the difference, not to exceed the amount of this Bond, between the amount specified in said bid and such larger amount for which the Owner may in good faith contract with another party to perform the work covered by said bid, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect. The Surety hereby waives any notice of an agreement between the Owner and Contractor to extend the time in which the Owner may accept the bid. Waiver of notice by the Surety shall not apply to any extension exceeding sixty (60) days in the aggregate beyond the time for acceptance of bids specified in the bid documents, and the Owner and Contractor shall obtain the Surety's consent for an extension beyond sixty (60) days.

If this Bond is issued in connection with a subcontractor's bid to a Contractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location of the Project, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond. Signed and sealed this day of ,

	(Contractor as Principal)	(Seal)
(Witness)	(Title)	
	(Surety)	(Seal)
(Witness)	(Title)	



# **Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor** where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum

**AGREEMENT** made as of the day of in the year (In words, indicate day, month and year.)

#### **BETWEEN** the Owner:

(Name, legal status, address and other information)

Town of North Topsail Beach 2008 Loggerhead Court North Topsail Beach, NC 28460 (910) 328-1349

and the Contractor:

(Name, legal status, address and other information)

for the following Project: (Name, location and detailed description)

North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2

The Architect:

(Name, legal status, address and other information)

Becker Morgan Group, Inc. 3333 Jaeckle Drive, Suite 120 Wilmington, NC 28403 (910) 341-7600

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101®–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201®–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT
- 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
- 4 CONTRACT SUM
- 5 PAYMENTS
- 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION
- 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
- 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

## **EXHIBIT A INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than a Modification, appears in Article 9.

# ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

# ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:

(Check one of the following boxes.)

]	]	The date of this Agreement.
[	]	A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.
[	]	Established as follows: (Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

# § 3.3 Substantial Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work:

(Check one of the following boxes and complete the necessary information.)

[ ] Not later the	han ( ) calendar days from the date of commencemen	nt of the Work.
[ ] By the foll	lowing date:	
to be completed prior to S	nents of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Doe Substantial Completion of the entire Work, the Contractor ons by the following dates:	
Portion of Work	Substantial Completion Date	
§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fa any, shall be assessed as s	ails to achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this set forth in Section 4.5.	s Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if
	T SUM  y the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for th  um shall be (\$ ), subject to additions and deductions	
§ 4.2 Alternates § 4.2.1 Alternates, if any,	included in the Contract Sum:	
Item	Price	
execution of this Agreeme	ditions noted below, the following alternates may be accent. Upon acceptance, the Owner shall issue a Modificat ate and the conditions that must be met for the Owner to	tion to this Agreement.
ltem	Price	Conditions for Acceptance
§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, (Identify each allowance.)	included in the Contract Sum:	
Item	Price	
§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any: (Identify the item and state	te the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which	n the unit price will be applicable.)
Item	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit (\$0.00)
§ 4.5 Liquidated damages (Insert terms and condition	s, if any: ons for liquidated damages, if any.)	
§ 4.6 Other: (Insert provisions for bon	nus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a chan	age to the Contract Sum.)

#### ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS

# § 5.1 Progress Payments

- § 5.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- § 5.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month, or as follows:
- § 5.1.3 Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Architect not later than the day of a month, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than the day of the month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than () days after the Architect receives the Application for Payment. (Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)
- § 5.1.4 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.
- § 5.1.5 Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.
- § 5.1.6 In accordance with AIA Document A201<sup>TM</sup>–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:
- § 5.1.6.1 The amount of each progress payment shall first include:
  - .1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work;
  - .2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and
  - .3 That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified.
- § 5.1.6.2 The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:
  - .1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;
  - .2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017;
  - .3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;
  - 4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017; and
  - .5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

# § 5.1.7 Retainage

§ 5.1.7.1 For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)

# § 5.1.7.1.1 The following items are not subject to retainage:

(Insert any items not subject to the withholding of retainage, such as general conditions, insurance, etc.)

# § 5.1.7.2 Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:

(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)

§ 5.1.7.3 Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Substantial Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. The Application for Payment submitted at Substantial Completion shall not include retainage as follows:

(Insert any other conditions for release of retainage upon Substantial Completion.)

- § 5.1.8 If final completion of the Work is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor, the Owner shall pay the Contractor any additional amounts in accordance with Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017.
- § 5.1.9 Except with the Owner's prior approval, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

# § 5.2 Final Payment

- § 5.2.1 Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor when
  - .1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201–2017, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment; and
  - .2 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect.
- § 5.2.2 The Owner's final payment to the Contractor shall be made no later than 30 days after the issuance of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment, or as follows:

## § 5.3 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate stated below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located. (Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)

%

## ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

## § 6.1 Initial Decision Maker

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, unless the parties appoint below another individual, not a party to this Agreement, to serve as the Initial Decision Maker. (If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)

§ 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolutio	δ	6.2	Binding	a Dispute	Resolutio
---------------------------------	---	-----	---------	-----------	-----------

For any C	laim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, the
method of	binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:
(Check the	e appropriate box.)

[	]	Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2017
[	]	Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction
[	1	Other (Specify)

If the Owner and Contractor do not select a method of binding dispute resolution, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.

## ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.

§ 7.1.1 If the Contract is terminated for the Owner's convenience in accordance with Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, then the Owner shall pay the Contractor a termination fee as follows: (Insert the amount of, or method for determining, the fee, if any, payable to the Contractor following a termination for the Owner's convenience.)

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.

#### ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201–2017 or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## § 8.2 The Owner's representative:

(Name, address, email address, and other information)

§ 8.3 The Contractor's representative:

(Name, address, email address, and other information)

§ 8.4 Neither the Owner's nor the Contractor's representative shall be changed without ten days' prior notice to the other party.

# § 8.5 Insurance and Bonds

- § 8.5.1 The Owner and the Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in AIA Document A101<sup>TM</sup>\_2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- § 8.5.2 The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document A101<sup>TM</sup>\_2017 Exhibit A, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- § 8.6 Notice in electronic format, pursuant to Article 1 of AIA Document A201–2017, may be given in accordance with AIA Document E203<sup>TM</sup>–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, if completed, or as otherwise set forth below:

(If other than in accordance with AIA Document E203–2013, insert requirements for delivering notice in electronic format such as name, title, and email address of the recipient and whether and how the system will be required to generate a read receipt for the transmission.)

§ 8.7 Other provisions:

# ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Drawings

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

- .1 AIA Document A101<sup>TM</sup>–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor
- .2 AIA Document A101<sup>TM</sup>–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds
- AIA Document A201<sup>™</sup>–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction (*Insert the date of the E203-2013 incorporated into this Agreement.*)

.4			
	Number	Title	Date
.5	Specifications		
	Section	Title	Date Pages
.6	Addenda, if any:		
	Number	Date	Pages

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or proposal requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

.7 Other Exhibits: (Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)

	[	]		E204 <sup>TM</sup> –2017, Sustainable Projects of the E204-2017 incorporated into		icated below:
	[	]	The Sustainabili	ty Plan:		
		Title		Date	Pages	
	]	]	Supplementary a	and other Conditions of the Contract	::	
		Docu	ument	Title	Date	Pages
.8	(I D sa re pr	List he locume umple equired roposa	ent A201 <sup>TM</sup> _2017 forms, the Contra ments, and other i als, are not part of	listed below: documents that are intended to form provides that the advertisement or i ctor's bid or proposal, portions of A nformation furnished by the Owner the Contract Documents unless en ed here only if intended to be part of	nvitation to bid, Instr Addenda relating to be in anticipation of rec umerated in this Agre	ructions to Bidders, idding or proposal reiving bids or rement. Any such
This Agreem	ent	entere	ed into as of the da	ay and year first written above.		
OWNER (Sig	gnai	ture)		CONTRACTOR	R (Signature)	
(Printed nat	те о	and tit	tle)	(Printed name	e and title)	

# Insurance and Bonds

This Insurance and Bonds Exhibit is part of the Agreement, between the Owner and the Contractor, dated the day of in the year (In words, indicate day, month and year.)

# for the following **PROJECT**:

(Name and location or address)

North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2

#### THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)

Town of North Topsail Beach 2008 Loggerhead Court North Topsail Beach, NC 28460

# THE CONTRACTOR:

(Name, legal status and address)

# TABLE OF ARTICLES

- A.1 GENERAL
- A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE
- A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS
- A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### ARTICLE A.1 GENERAL

The Owner and Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance, and provide bonds, as set forth in this Exhibit. As used in this Exhibit, the term General Conditions refers to AIA Document A201<sup>TM</sup>–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

# ARTICLE A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE

# § A.2.1 General

**User Notes:** 

Prior to commencement of the Work, the Owner shall secure the insurance, and provide evidence of the coverage, required under this Article A.2 and, upon the Contractor's request, provide a copy of the property insurance policy or policies required by Section A.2.3. The copy of the policy or policies provided shall contain all applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions, and endorsements.

#### § A.2.2 Liability Insurance

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual general liability insurance.

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Document A201®–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. Article 11 of A201®–2017 contains additional insurance provisions.

# § A.2.3 Required Property Insurance

**§ A.2.3.1** Unless this obligation is placed on the Contractor pursuant to Section A.3.3.2.1, the Owner shall purchase and maintain, from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located, property insurance written on a builder's risk "all-risks" completed value or equivalent policy form and sufficient to cover the total value of the entire Project on a replacement cost basis. The Owner's property insurance coverage shall be no less than the amount of the initial Contract Sum, plus the value of subsequent Modifications and labor performed and materials or equipment supplied by others. The property insurance shall be maintained until Substantial Completion and thereafter as provided in Section A.2.3.1.3, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or otherwise agreed in writing by the parties to this Agreement. This insurance shall include the interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors in the Project as insureds. This insurance shall include the interests of mortgagees as loss payees.

§ A.2.3.1.1 Causes of Loss. The insurance required by this Section A.2.3.1 shall provide coverage for direct physical loss or damage, and shall not exclude the risks of fire, explosion, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, or windstorm. The insurance shall also provide coverage for ensuing loss or resulting damage from error, omission, or deficiency in construction methods, design, specifications, workmanship, or materials. Sub-limits, if any, are as follows:

(Indicate below the cause of loss and any applicable sub-limit.)

**Causes of Loss** 

Sub-Limit

§ A.2.3.1.2 Specific Required Coverages. The insurance required by this Section A.2.3.1 shall provide coverage for loss or damage to falsework and other temporary structures, and to building systems from testing and startup. The insurance shall also cover debris removal, including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and reasonable compensation for the Architect's and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss, including claim preparation expenses. Sub-limits, if any, are as follows: (Indicate below type of coverage and any applicable sub-limit for specific required coverages.)

Coverage

Sub-Limit

- § A.2.3.1.3 Unless the parties agree otherwise, upon Substantial Completion, the Owner shall continue the insurance required by Section A.2.3.1 or, if necessary, replace the insurance policy required under Section A.2.3.1 with property insurance written for the total value of the Project that shall remain in effect until expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions.
- § A.2.3.1.4 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions. If the insurance required by this Section A.2.3 is subject to deductibles or self-insured retentions, the Owner shall be responsible for all loss not covered because of such deductibles or retentions.
- § A.2.3.2 Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion. The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.2.3.1 have consented in writing to the continuance of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

# § A.2.3.3 Insurance for Existing Structures

If the Work involves remodeling an existing structure or constructing an addition to an existing structure, the Owner shall purchase and maintain, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, "all-risks" property insurance, on a replacement cost basis, protecting the existing structure against direct physical loss or damage from the causes of loss identified in Section A.2.3.1, notwithstanding the undertaking of the Work. The Owner shall be responsible for all co-insurance penalties.

# § A.2.4 Optional Extended Property Insurance.

The Owner shall purchase and maintain the insurance selected and described below.

the description(s) of selected insurance. For each type of insurance selected, indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below the selected item.) § A.2.4.1 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance, to reimburse the Owner for loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations due to a covered cause of loss. § A.2.4.2 Ordinance or Law Insurance, for the reasonable and necessary costs to satisfy the minimum [ ] requirements of the enforcement of any law or ordinance regulating the demolition, construction, repair, replacement or use of the Project. [ ] § A.2.4.3 Expediting Cost Insurance, for the reasonable and necessary costs for the temporary repair of damage to insured property, and to expedite the permanent repair or replacement of the damaged property. § A.2.4.4 Extra Expense Insurance, to provide reimbursement of the reasonable and necessary excess costs incurred during the period of restoration or repair of the damaged property that are over and above the total costs that would normally have been incurred during the same period of time had no loss or damage occurred. [ ] § A.2.4.5 Civil Authority Insurance, for losses or costs arising from an order of a civil authority prohibiting access to the Project, provided such order is the direct result of physical damage covered under the required property insurance. § A.2.4.6 Ingress/Egress Insurance, for loss due to the necessary interruption of the insured's business due to physical prevention of ingress to, or egress from, the Project as a direct result of physical damage. § A.2.4.7 Soft Costs Insurance, to reimburse the Owner for costs due to the delay of completion of the Work, arising out of physical loss or damage covered by the required property insurance: including construction loan fees; leasing and marketing expenses; additional fees, including those of architects, engineers, consultants, attorneys and accountants, needed for the completion of the construction, repairs, or reconstruction; and carrying costs such as property taxes, building permits, additional interest on loans, realty taxes, and insurance premiums over and above normal expenses. § A.2.5 Other Optional Insurance. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the insurance selected below. (Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to *the description(s) of selected insurance.)* § A.2.5.1 Cyber Security Insurance for loss to the Owner due to data security and privacy breach, [ ]

(Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to

including costs of investigating a potential or actual breach of confidential or private information. (Indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below.)

# [ ] § A.2.5.2 Other Insurance

(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Owner and any applicable limits.)

Coverage

# ARTICLE A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS

# § A.3.1 General

§ A.3.1.1 Certificates of Insurance. The Contractor shall provide certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner evidencing compliance with the requirements in this Article A.3 at the following times: (1) prior to commencement of the Work; (2) upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance; and (3) upon the Owner's written request. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of commercial liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the periods required by Section A.3.2.1 and Section A.3.3.1. The certificates will show the Owner as an additional insured on the Contractor's Commercial General Liability and excess or umbrella liability policy or policies.

Limits

- § A.3.1.2 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions. The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any deductible or self-insured retentions applicable to any insurance required to be provided by the Contractor.
- § A.3.1.3 Additional Insured Obligations. To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall cause the commercial general liability coverage to include (1) the Owner, the Architect, and the Architect's consultants as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions for which loss occurs during completed operations. The additional insured coverage shall be primary and non-contributory to any of the Owner's general liability insurance policies and shall apply to both ongoing and completed operations. To the extent commercially available, the additional insured coverage shall be no less than that provided by Insurance Services Office, Inc. (ISO) forms CG 20 10 07 04, CG 20 37 07 04, and, with respect to the Architect and the Architect's consultants, CG 20 32 07 04.

## § A.3.2 Contractor's Required Insurance Coverage

§ A.3.2.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below: (If the Contractor is required to maintain insurance for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)

# § A.3.2.2 Commercial General Liability

- § A.3.2.2.1 Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project written on an occurrence form with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) each occurrence, (\$ ) general aggregate, and (\$ ) aggregate for products-completed operations hazard, providing coverage for claims including
  - .1 damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, including occupational sickness or disease, and death of any person;
  - .2 personal injury and advertising injury;
  - 3 damages because of physical damage to or destruction of tangible property, including the loss of use of such property;
  - .4 bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations; and
  - .5 the Contractor's indemnity obligations under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions.

- **§ A.3.2.2.2** The Contractor's Commercial General Liability policy under this Section A.3.2.2 shall not contain an exclusion or restriction of coverage for the following:
  - .1 Claims by one insured against another insured, if the exclusion or restriction is based solely on the fact that the claimant is an insured, and there would otherwise be coverage for the claim.
  - .2 Claims for property damage to the Contractor's Work arising out of the products-completed operations hazard where the damaged Work or the Work out of which the damage arises was performed by a Subcontractor.
  - .3 Claims for bodily injury other than to employees of the insured.
  - .4 Claims for indemnity under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions arising out of injury to employees of the insured.
  - .5 Claims or loss excluded under a prior work endorsement or other similar exclusionary language.
  - .6 Claims or loss due to physical damage under a prior injury endorsement or similar exclusionary language.
  - .7 Claims related to residential, multi-family, or other habitational projects, if the Work is to be performed on such a project.
  - .8 Claims related to roofing, if the Work involves roofing.
  - .9 Claims related to exterior insulation finish systems (EIFS), synthetic stucco or similar exterior coatings or surfaces, if the Work involves such coatings or surfaces.
  - .10 Claims related to earth subsidence or movement, where the Work involves such hazards.
  - .11 Claims related to explosion, collapse and underground hazards, where the Work involves such hazards.
- § A.3.2.3 Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, and non-owned vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage.
- § A.3.2.4 The Contractor may achieve the required limits and coverage for Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability through a combination of primary and excess or umbrella liability insurance, provided such primary and excess or umbrella insurance policies result in the same or greater coverage as the coverages required under Section A.3.2.2 and A.3.2.3, and in no event shall any excess or umbrella liability insurance provide narrower coverage than the primary policy. The excess policy shall not require the exhaustion of the underlying limits only through the actual payment by the underlying insurers.
- § A.3.2.5 Workers' Compensation at statutory limits.
- § A.3.2.6 Employers' Liability with policy limits not less than (\$ ) each accident, (\$ ) each employee, and (\$ ) policy limit.
- § A.3.2.7 Jones Act, and the Longshore & Harbor Workers' Compensation Act, as required, if the Work involves hazards arising from work on or near navigable waterways, including vessels and docks
- § A.3.2.8 If the Contractor is required to furnish professional services as part of the Work, the Contractor shall procure Professional Liability insurance covering performance of the professional services, with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per claim and (\$ ) in the aggregate.
- § A.3.2.9 If the Work involves the transport, dissemination, use, or release of pollutants, the Contractor shall procure Pollution Liability insurance, with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per claim and (\$ ) in the aggregate.
- **§ A.3.2.10** Coverage under Sections A.3.2.8 and A.3.2.9 may be procured through a Combined Professional Liability and Pollution Liability insurance policy, with combined policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per claim and (\$ ) in the aggregate.
- § A.3.2.11 Insurance for maritime liability risks associated with the operation of a vessel, if the Work requires such activities, with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per claim and (\$ ) in the aggregate.

	nce for the use or operation of manned or unmanned aircraft, if the Work requires such activities, with ot less than (\$ ) per claim and (\$ ) in the aggregate.
§ A.3.3.1 Insurance insurance compare Contractor shall resection 12.2.2 of (If the Contractor)	ce selected and described in this Section A.3.3 shall be purchased from an insurance company or nies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below:  The is required to maintain any of the types of insurance selected below for a duration other than the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)
Section A.3.3.1. (Select the types of	intractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance in accordance with of insurance the Contractor is required to purchase and maintain by placing an $X$ in the box(es) next $u(s)$ of selected insurance. Where policy limits are provided, include the policy limit in the oint.)
Se pu A. the an pre ad ac (W as other the	A.3.3.2.1 Property insurance of the same type and scope satisfying the requirements identified in action A.2.3, which, if selected in this section A.3.3.2.1, relieves the Owner of the responsibility to archase and maintain such insurance except insurance required by Section A.2.3.1.3 and Section 2.3.3. The Contractor shall comply with all obligations of the Owner under Section A.2.3 except to execute provided below. The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner the amount of any deductible, defined the Owner shall be responsible for losses within the deductible. Upon request, the Contractor shall ovide the Owner with a copy of the property insurance policy or policies required. The Owner shall just and settle the loss with the insurer and be the trustee of the proceeds of the property insurance in cordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions unless otherwise set forth below:  Where the Contractor's obligation to provide property insurance differs from the Owner's obligations described under Section A.2.3, indicate such differences in the space below. Additionally, if a party there than the Owner will be responsible for adjusting and settling a loss with the insurer and acting as trustee of the proceeds of property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General conditions, indicate the responsible party below.)
	<b>A.3.3.2.2 Railroad Protective Liability Insurance</b> , with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per claim d (\$ ) in the aggregate, for Work within fifty (50) feet of railroad property.
an	<b>A.3.3.2.3 Asbestos Abatement Liability Insurance</b> , with policy limits of not less than (\$ ) per claim d (\$ ) in the aggregate, for liability arising from the encapsulation, removal, handling, storage, insportation, and disposal of asbestos-containing materials.
	<b>A.3.3.2.4</b> Insurance for physical damage to property while it is in storage and in transit to the instruction site on an "all-risks" completed value form.
	<b>A.3.3.2.5</b> Property insurance on an "all-risks" completed value form, covering property owned by the ontractor and used on the Project, including scaffolding and other equipment.

Coverage Limits

§ A.3.3.2.6 Other Insurance

(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Contractor and any applicable limits.)

# Performance Bond

CONTRACTOR: (Name, legal status and address)	<b>SURETY:</b> (Name, legal status and principal place of business)
OWNER: (Name, legal status and address) Town of North Topsail Beach 2008 Loggerhead Court North Topsail Beach, NC 28460	
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT Date:	
Amount: \$ Description:	
(Name and location) North Topsail Beach Fire Station	#2
BOND Date: (Not earlier than Construction Co	ontract Date)
Amount: \$ Modifications to this Bond:	None See Section 16
CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL Company: (Corporate Seal)	SURETY Company: (Corporate Seal)
Signature: Name and	Signature:Name and
Title:	Title: r on the last page of this Performance Bond.)

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

(Architect, Engineer or other party:)

- § 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner for the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.
- § 2 If the Contractor performs the Construction Contract, the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond, except when applicable to participate in a conference as provided in Section 3.
- § 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after
  - the Owner first provides notice to the Contractor and the Surety that the Owner is considering declaring a Contractor Default. Such notice shall indicate whether the Owner is requesting a conference among the Owner, Contractor and Surety to discuss the Contractor's performance. If the Owner does not request a conference, the Surety may, within five (5) business days after receipt of the Owner's notice, request such a conference. If the Surety timely requests a conference, the Owner shall attend. Unless the Owner agrees otherwise, any conference requested under this Section 3.1 shall be held within ten (10) business days of the Surety's receipt of the Owner's notice. If the Owner, the Contractor and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Construction Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Owner's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor
  - .2 the Owner declares a Contractor Default, terminates the Construction Contract and notifies the Surety;
  - .3 the Owner has agreed to pay the Balance of the Contract Price in accordance with the terms of the Construction Contract to the Surety or to a contractor selected to perform the Construction Contract.
- § 4 Failure on the part of the Owner to comply with the notice requirement in Section 3.1 shall not constitute a failure to comply with a condition precedent to the Surety's obligations, or release the Surety from its obligations, except to the extent the Surety demonstrates actual prejudice.
- § 5 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions of Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take one of the following actions:
- § 5.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with the consent of the Owner, to perform and complete the Construction Contract;
- § 5.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Construction Contract itself, through its agents or independent contractors:
- § 5.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Owner for a contract for performance and completion of the Construction Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the Owner and a contractor selected with the Owner's concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the bonds issued on the Construction Contract, and pay to the Owner the amount of damages as described in Section 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Price incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor Default; or
- § 5.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor and with reasonable promptness under the circumstances:
  - After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Owner and, as soon as practicable after the amount is determined, make payment to the Owner; or
  - .2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Owner, citing the reasons for denial.
- § 6 If the Surety does not proceed as provided in Section 5 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond seven days after receipt of an additional written notice from the Owner to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner. If the Surety proceeds as provided in Section 5.4, and the Owner refuses the payment or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, without further notice the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner.

- § 7 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.2 or 5.3, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Owner shall not be greater than those of the Contractor under the Construction Contract, and the responsibilities of the Owner to the Surety shall not be greater than those of the Owner under the Construction Contract. Subject to the commitment by the Owner to pay the Balance of the Contract Price, the Surety is obligated, without duplication, for
  - the responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective work and completion of the Construction Contract;
  - .2 additional legal, design professional and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under Section 5; and
  - .3 liquidated damages, or if no liquidated damages are specified in the Construction Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor.
- § 8 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.3 or 5.4, the Surety's liability is limited to the amount of this Bond.
- § 9 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Price shall not be reduced or set off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than the Owner or its heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.
- § 10 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.
- § 11 Any proceeding, legal or equitable, under this Bond may be instituted in any court of competent jurisdiction in the location in which the work or part of the work is located and shall be instituted within two years after a declaration of Contractor Default or within two years after the Contractor ceased working or within two years after the Surety refuses or fails to perform its obligations under this Bond, whichever occurs first. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.
- § 12 Notice to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears.
- § 13 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

# § 14 Definitions

- § 14.1 Balance of the Contract Price. The total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract after all proper adjustments have been made, including allowance to the Contractor of any amounts received or to be received by the Owner in settlement of insurance or other claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Construction Contract.
- § 14.2 Construction Contract. The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.
- § 14.3 Contractor Default. Failure of the Contractor, which has not been remedied or waived, to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Construction Contract.
- § 14.4 Owner Default. Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.
- § 14.5 Contract Documents. All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 15 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

§ 16 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

(Space is provided below for add	itional signatures of ad	ded parties, other than those d	appearing on the cover page.
CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL		SURETY	
Company:	(Corporate Seal)	Company:	(Corporate Seal)
Signature:		Signature:	
Name and Title:		Name and Title:	
Address:		Address:	

# **Payment Bond**

CONTRACTOR:	SURETY:
(Name, legal status and address)	(Name, legal status and principal place of business)
	of oustiless)
OWNER:	
(Name, legal status and address)	
Town of North Topsail Beach	
2008 Loggerhead Court	
North Topsail Beach, NC 28460	
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT	
Date:	
Amount: \$	
Description:	
(Name and location)	
North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2	
DAVID	
BOND	
Date: (Not earlier than Construction Contrac	t Data)
(Not earlier than Construction Contract	i Duie)
Amount: \$	
Modifications to this Bond:	None See Section 18
CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL	SURETY
Company: (Corporate Seal)	Company: (Corporate Seal)
Signature:	Signature:
Name and	Name and
Title:	Title:
(Any additional signatures appear on the	ne last page of this Payment Bond.)
(FOR INFORMATION ONLY — Name,	address and telephone)
AGENT or BROKER:	OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE:
- 11-11-11	(Architect, Engineer or other party:)
	, , ,

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

- § 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner to pay for labor, materials and equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference, subject to the following terms.
- § 2 If the Contractor promptly makes payment of all sums due to Claimants, and defends, indemnifies and holds harmless the Owner from claims, demands, liens or suits by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, then the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond.
- § 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation to the Owner under this Bond shall arise after the Owner has promptly notified the Contractor and the Surety (at the address described in Section 13) of claims, demands, liens or suits against the Owner or the Owner's property by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract and tendered defense of such claims, demands, liens or suits to the Contractor and the Surety.
- § 4 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions in Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner against a duly tendered claim, demand, lien or suit.
- § 5 The Surety's obligations to a Claimant under this Bond shall arise after the following:
- § 5.1 Claimants, who do not have a direct contract with the Contractor,
  - have furnished a written notice of non-payment to the Contractor, stating with substantial accuracy the amount claimed and the name of the party to whom the materials were, or equipment was, furnished or supplied or for whom the labor was done or performed, within ninety (90) days after having last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment included in the Claim; and
  - have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Section 13).
- § 5.2 Claimants, who are employed by or have a direct contract with the Contractor, have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Section 13).
- § 6 If a notice of non-payment required by Section 5.1.1 is given by the Owner to the Contractor, that is sufficient to satisfy a Claimant's obligation to furnish a written notice of non-payment under Section 5.1.1.
- § 7 When a Claimant has satisfied the conditions of Sections 5.1 or 5.2, whichever is applicable, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take the following actions:
- § 7.1 Send an answer to the Claimant, with a copy to the Owner, within sixty (60) days after receipt of the Claim, stating the amounts that are undisputed and the basis for challenging any amounts that are disputed; and
- § 7.2 Pay or arrange for payment of any undisputed amounts.
- § 7.3 The Surety's failure to discharge its obligations under Section 7.1 or Section 7.2 shall not be deemed to constitute a waiver of defenses the Surety or Contractor may have or acquire as to a Claim, except as to undisputed amounts for which the Surety and Claimant have reached agreement. If, however, the Surety fails to discharge its obligations under Section 7.1 or Section 7.2, the Surety shall indemnify the Claimant for the reasonable attorney's fees the Claimant incurs thereafter to recover any sums found to be due and owing to the Claimant.
- § 8 The Surety's total obligation shall not exceed the amount of this Bond, plus the amount of reasonable attorney's fees provided under Section 7.3, and the amount of this Bond shall be credited for any payments made in good faith by the Surety.
- § 9 Amounts owed by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract shall be used for the performance of the Construction Contract and to satisfy claims, if any, under any construction performance bond. By the Contractor furnishing and the Owner accepting this Bond, they agree that all funds earned by the Contractor in the performance of the Construction Contract are dedicated to satisfy obligations of the Contractor and Surety under this Bond, subject to the Owner's priority to use the funds for the completion of the work.

- § 10 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner, Claimants or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract. The Owner shall not be liable for the payment of any costs or expenses of any Claimant under this Bond, and shall have under this Bond no obligation to make payments to, or give notice on behalf of, Claimants or otherwise have any obligations to Claimants under this Bond.
- § 11 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.
- § 12 No suit or action shall be commenced by a Claimant under this Bond other than in a court of competent jurisdiction in the state in which the project that is the subject of the Construction Contract is located or after the expiration of one year from the date (1) on which the Claimant sent a Claim to the Surety pursuant to Section 5.1.2 or 5.2, or (2) on which the last labor or service was performed by anyone or the last materials or equipment were furnished by anyone under the Construction Contract, whichever of (1) or (2) first occurs. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.
- § 13 Notice and Claims to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears. Actual receipt of notice or Claims, however accomplished, shall be sufficient compliance as of the date received.
- § 14 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.
- § 15 Upon request by any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of this Bond, the Contractor and Owner shall promptly furnish a copy of this Bond or shall permit a copy to be made.

# § 16 Definitions

- § 16.1 Claim. A written statement by the Claimant including at a minimum:
  - .1 the name of the Claimant;
  - .2 the name of the person for whom the labor was done, or materials or equipment furnished;
  - .3 a copy of the agreement or purchase order pursuant to which labor, materials or equipment was furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
  - a brief description of the labor, materials or equipment furnished;
  - .5 the date on which the Claimant last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
  - .6 the total amount earned by the Claimant for labor, materials or equipment furnished as of the date of the
  - .7 the total amount of previous payments received by the Claimant; and
  - .8 the total amount due and unpaid to the Claimant for labor, materials or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim.
- § 16.2 Claimant. An individual or entity having a direct contract with the Contractor or with a subcontractor of the Contractor to furnish labor, materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract. The term Claimant also includes any individual or entity that has rightfully asserted a claim under an applicable mechanic's lien or similar statute against the real property upon which the Project is located. The intent of this Bond shall be to include without limitation in the terms "labor, materials or equipment" that part of water, gas, power, light, heat, oil, gasoline, telephone service or rental equipment used in the Construction Contract, architectural and engineering services required for performance of the work of the Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors, and all other items for which a mechanic's lien may be asserted in the jurisdiction where the labor, materials or equipment were furnished.
- § 16.3 Construction Contract. The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and all changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

- § 16.4 Owner Default. Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.
- § 16.5 Contract Documents. All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.
- § 17 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.
- § 18 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

(Space is provided below for add	litional signatures of add	-	appearing on the cover page.,
CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL		SURETY	
Company:	(Corporate Seal)	Company:	(Corporate Seal)
Signature:		Signature:	
Name and Title:		Name and Title:	
Address:		Address:	

#### DOCUMENT 003132 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA

## 1.1 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

- A. This Document with its referenced attachments is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information. This Document and its attachments are not part of the Contract Documents.
- B. Because subsurface conditions indicated by the soil borings are a sampling in relation to the entire construction area, and for other reasons, the Owner, the Architect, the Architect's consultants, and the firm reporting the subsurface conditions do not warranty the conditions below the depths of the borings or that the strata logged from the borings are necessarily typical of the entire site. Any party using the information described in the soil borings and geotechnical report shall accept full responsibility for its use.
- C. A geotechnical investigation report for Project, prepared by ECS Southeast, PPL, dated January 10, 2023, is available for viewing as appended to this Document.
  - 1. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
  - 2. Any party using information described in the geotechnical report shall make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations that may be required to determine the character of subsurface materials that may be encountered.

END OF DOCUMENT 003132





# **ECS Southeast, LLP**

Geotechnical Engineering Report North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2

North Topsail Beach, Onslow County, North Carolina

ECS Project No. 22:32561

January 10, 2023



January 10, 2023

Mr. Ernest W. Olds, AIA Becker Morgan Group, Inc 3333 Jaeckle Drive, Suite 120 Wilmington, NC 28403

ECS Project No. 22:32561

Reference: **Geotechnical Engineering Report** 

**Riverfront Mixed Use Village** 

Wilmington, New Hanover County, North Carolina

Dear Mr. Brown:

ECS Southeast, LLP (ECS) has finished the subsurface exploration and geotechnical engineering analyses for the above-referenced project. Our services were performed in general accordance with our agreed to scope of work. This report presents our understanding of the geotechnical aspects of the project along with the results of the field exploration and our design and construction recommendations.

It has been our pleasure to be of service to Becker Morgan Group, Inc during the design phase of this project. We would appreciate the opportunity to remain involved during the continuation of the design phase, and we would like to provide our services during construction phase operations as well to verify subsurface conditions assumed for this report. Should you have questions concerning the information contained in this report, or if we can be of further assistance to you, please contact us.

Respectfully submitted,

**ECS Southeast, LLP** 

Caitlin M Cerza Caitlin M. Cerza Staff Project Manager CCerza@ecslimited.com

Winslow Goins, PE Principal Engineer

WGoins@ecslimit

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	
1.0 INTRODUCTION	2
2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION	3
2.1 Project Location/Current Site Use/Past Site Use	3
2.2 Proposed Construction	4
3.0 FIELD EXPLORATION testing	4
3.1 Subsurface Characterization	4
3.2 Groundwater Observations	5
4.0 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS	6
4.1 Shallow Foundations	6
4.2 Slabs On Grade	6
4.3 Seismic Design Considerations	7
4.4 Pavements	8
5.0 SITE CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS	10
5.1 Subgrade Preparation	10
5.1.1 Stripping and Grubbing	10
5.1.2 Proofrolling	10
5.1.3 Site Temporary Dewatering	10
5.2 Earthwork Operations	11
5.2.1 Structural Fill	11
5.3 Foundation and Slab Observations	12
5.4 Utility Installations	12
6.0 CLOSING	13

# **APPENDICES**

# **Appendix A – Drawings & Reports**

- Site Location Diagram
- Exploration Location Diagram

# **Appendix B – Field Operations**

- Reference Notes for CPT Soundings
- Cone Penetration Test Sounding Logs (S-1 through S-3)
- Reference Notes for Boring Logs
- Hand Auger Boring Logs (K-01 through K-03)
- Kessler DCP Test Results (K-01 through K-03)

# Appendix C – Supplemental Report Documents

GBA Document

#### **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

The following summarizes the main findings of the exploration, particularly those that may have a cost impact on the planned development. Further, our principal foundation recommendations are summarized. Information gleaned from the Executive Summary should not be utilized in lieu of reading the geotechnical report.

- The geotechnical exploration performed for the site included three (3) electronic cone penetration test (CPT) soundings drilled to termination and refusal depths of approximately 24.93 to 46.26 feet. Additionally, three (3) hand augers with Kessler DCPs were performed to depths of 4 feet.
- Provided the subgrades are prepared as recommended in this report, the planned structures may
  be supported by conventional shallow foundations consisting of column or strip footings bearing
  on compacted structural fill and natural soils using a net allowable soil bearing pressure of 3,000
  psf.
- Groundwater was encountered in the soundings at depths ranging from approximately 3.2 feet to 4.5 feet below existing grade.

Please note this Executive Summary is an important part of this report and should be considered a "summary" only. The subsequent sections of this report constitute our findings, conclusions, and recommendations in their entirety.

#### 1.0 INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this study was to provide geotechnical information for the design of foundations and pavements for the proposed fire station located at 3304 Gray Street in North Topsail Beach, North Carolina. The recommendations developed for this report are based on project information supplied by Mr. Brice Reid of Becker Morgan Group, Inc.

Our services were provided in accordance with our Proposal No. 22:26680, dated September 13, 2022, as authorized by Mr. Ernest Olds of Becker Morgan Group, Inc on November 22, 2022.

This report contains the procedures and results of our subsurface exploration programs, review of existing site conditions, engineering analyses, and recommendations for the design and construction of the project.

The report includes the following items.

- A brief review and description of our field test procedures and the results of testing conducted;
- A review of surface topographical features and site conditions;
- A review of subsurface soil stratigraphy with pertinent available physical properties;
- Foundation recommendations;
  - o Allowable bearing pressure;
  - Settlement estimates (total and differential);
- Site development recommendations;
- Reusability of soils for use as fill material;
- Seismic site class and liquefaction recommendations;
- Discussion of groundwater impact;
- Compaction recommendations;
- Site vicinity map;
- Exploration location plan;
- Hand auger boring logs;
- Kessler DCP logs; and
- CPT sounding logs.

#### 2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION

# 2.1 PROJECT LOCATION/CURRENT SITE USE/PAST SITE USE

The proposed site is located at 3304 Gray Street in North Topsail Beach, North Carolina. The site is bounded on the north by undeveloped vegetated land, and on all other side by existing residential developments and on the west by the Public Works buildings. Figure 2.1.1 below shows an image of where the site is located.



Figure 2.1.1 Site Location

At the time of our exploration, the property consisted of the existing fire station and its associated pavements. Based on our site visit and approximate elevations from Google Earth, the site is relatively flat with typical elevations on site ranging from approximately 4 to 6 feet.

#### 2.2 PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION

The following information explains our understanding and assumptions of the planned development including proposed buildings and related infrastructure.

SUBJECT	DESIGN INFORMATION / ASSUMPTIONS
Usage	Fire Station
Column Loads	Up to 300 kips
Wall Loads	Up to 9 kips per linear foot (klf)
Finish Floor Elevation	within +/- 4 feet of existing grades

ECS understands the project consists of construction of a new 8,800 square-foot fire station with its associated concrete and asphalt pavements. We understand the existing structure will be demolished.

#### 3.0 FIELD EXPLORATION TESTING

Our exploration procedures are explained in greater detail in Appendix B including the Reference Notes for Cone Penetration Soundings. Our scope of work included performing three (3) CPT soundings and three (3) hand augers with Kessler DCPs. Our approximate CPT soundings and hand auger boring location are shown on the Exploration Location Diagram in Appendix A.

#### 3.1 SUBSURFACE CHARACTERIZATION

The subsurface conditions encountered were generally consistent with published geological mapping. The following sections provide generalized characterizations of the soil. Please refer to the CPT sounding and hand auger boring logs in Appendix B.

The site is located in the Coastal Plain Physiographic Province of North Carolina. The Coastal Plain is composed of seven terraces, each representing a former level of the Atlantic Ocean. Soils in this area generally consist of sedimentary materials transported from other areas by the ocean or rivers. These deposits vary in thickness from a thin veneer along the western edge of the region to more than 10,000 feet near the coast. The sedimentary deposits of the Coastal Plain rest upon consolidated rocks similar to those underlying the Piedmont and Mountain Physiographic Provinces. In general, shallow unconfined groundwater movement within the overlying soils is largely controlled by topographic gradients. Recharge occurs primarily by infiltration along higher elevations and typically discharges into streams or other surface water bodies. The elevation of the shallow water table is transient and can vary greatly with seasonal fluctuations in precipitation.

**Table 3.1.1 Subsurface Stratigraphy** 

Approximate Depth Range	Stratum	Description	Ranges of N*-Values(1) blows per foot (bpf)
0 to (0.8 to 1.0) (Surface cover)	N/A	No topsoil was observed at the test locations. The cores encountered approximately 1.75 to 2.75 inches of asphalt underlain by approximately 7.50 to 10.25 inches of stone base.	N/A
(0.8 to 1.0) to 28	I	Very Loose to Very Dense, CLEAN TO SILTY SAND (SM, SP) and SILTY SAND TO SANDY SILT (SM, ML).	3 to 55
28 to 33	II	Soft to Firm CLAY (CL) and SILTY CLAY (ML-CL).	3 to 6
33 to 46	III	Loose to Very Dense, CLEAN TO SILTY SAND (SM, SP) and SILTY SAND TO SANDY SILT (SM, ML).	6 to 78

Notes: (1) Equivalent Corrected Standard Penetration Test Resistances

# **3.2 GROUNDWATER OBSERVATIONS**

Water levels were encountered in our CPT soundings and are shown in Appendix B. Groundwater depths measured at the time of exploration ranged from approximately 3.2 to 4.5 feet below the ground surface. Variations in the long-term water table may occur as a result of changes in precipitation, evaporation, surface water runoff, construction activities, and other factors.

#### **4.0 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS**

## **4.1 SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS**

Provided subgrades and structural fills are prepared as recommended in this report, the proposed structures can be supported by shallow foundations including column footings and continuous wall footings. We recommend the foundation design use the following parameters:

Design Parameter	Column Footing	Wall Footing
Net Allowable Bearing Pressure <sup>(1)</sup>	3,000 psf	3,000 psf
Recommended Bearing Soil Material	Stratum I Soils or Structural Fill	Stratum I Soils or Structural Fill
Minimum Width	30 inches	18 inches
Minimum Footing Embedment Depth (below slab or finished grade) (2)	12 inches	12 inches
Minimum Exterior Frost Depth (below final exterior grade)	6 inches	6 inches
Estimated Total Settlement (3)	Less than 1- inch	Less than 1- inch
Estimated Differential Settlement (4)	Less than ½ inches between columns	Less than ½ inches

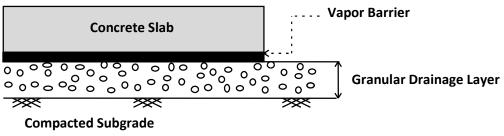
Notes:

- (1) Net allowable bearing pressure is the applied pressure in excess of the surrounding overburden soils above the base of the foundation.
- (2) For bearing considerations and frost penetration requirements.
- (3) Based on assumed structural loads. If final loads are different, ECS must be contacted to update foundation recommendations and settlement calculations.
- (4) Based on maximum column/wall loads and variability in borings. Differential settlement can be reevaluated once the foundation plans are finished.

**Potential Undercuts:** A majority of the soils at the estimated foundation bearing elevation are anticipated to be adequate for support of the proposed structures. If soft or loose soils are observed at the footing bearing elevations, the soils should be undercut and removed. Undercut should be backfilled with structural fill up to the original design bottom of footing elevation; the original footing may be constructed on top of the structural fill.

#### **4.2 SLABS ON GRADE**

The on-site natural soils are generally considered adequate for support of the slab-on-grade floor slabs. Based on the assumption that the finished floor elevation is around current grades, it appears that the slabs for the structure will likely bear on the Stratum I SAND (SP, SM) or Structural Fill. The following graphic depicts our soil-supported slab recommendations:



**Figure 4.2.1** 

- 1. Drainage Layer Thickness: 6 inches
- 2. Drainage Layer Material: GRAVEL (GP) or SAND containing <5% fines passing #200 sieve (SP, SW)

Soft or yielding soils may be encountered in some areas. Those soils should be removed and replaced with compacted Structural Fill in accordance with the recommendations included in this report.

**Subgrade Modulus:** Provided the Structural Fill and Granular Drainage Layer are constructed in accordance with our recommendations, the slab may be designed assuming a modulus of subgrade reaction,  $k_1$  of 175 pci (lbs./cu. inch). The modulus of subgrade reaction value is based on a 1 ft by 1 ft plate load test basis.

**Vapor Barrier:** Before the placement of concrete, a vapor barrier may be placed on top of the granular drainage layer to provide additional protection against moisture vapor penetration through the floor slab. Curing of the slab should be performed in accordance with ACI specifications to reduce the potential for uneven drying, curling and/or cracking of the slab. Depending on proposed flooring material types, the structural engineer and/or the architect may choose to do away with the vapor barrier.

**Slab Isolation:** Soil-supported slabs should be isolated from the foundations and foundation-supported elements of the structure so that differential movement between the foundations and slab will not induce excessive shear and bending stresses in the floor slab. Where the structural configuration inhibits the use of a free-floating slab such as in a drop down footing/monolithic slab configuration, the slab should be designed to avoid overstressing of the slab.

# **4.3 SEISMIC DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS**

**Seismic Site Classification:** The ASCE7-16 standard requires site classification for seismic design based on the upper 100 feet of a soil profile. At least two methods are utilized in classifying sites, namely the shear wave velocity ( $v_s$ ) method and the Standard Penetration Resistance (N-value) method. The first method (shear wave velocity) was used in classifying this site.

Based upon our interpretation of the subsurface conditions, the appropriate Seismic Site Classification is "D."

**Liquefaction:** When a saturated soil with little to approximately no cohesion liquefies during a major earthquake, it experiences a temporary loss of shear strength as a result of a transient rise in excess pore water pressure generated by strong ground motion. Flow failure, lateral spreading, differential settlement, loss of bearing, ground fissures, and sand boils are evidence of excess pore pressure generation and liquefaction.

The potential for liquefaction at the site is considered low based upon the CPT results and the liquefaction index procedure developed by Iwasaki (1982). Based on our CPT results and our evaluation using a site peak ground acceleration of 0.097 (PGA<sub>m</sub>) per ASCE7-16, an earthquake event with a magnitude of 7.3 and procedures developed by Robertson (2009), Moss et al. (2006), and Boulanger & Idriss (2014), the liquefaction induced settlement at the subject site is estimated to be approximately 0.3 inches or less. The max differential settlement is estimated to be 0.3 inches over a distance of 115 feet.

**Ground Motion Parameters:** In addition to the seismic site classification, ECS has determined the design spectral response acceleration parameters following the ASCE7-16 methodology. The Mapped Reponses were estimated from the ATC Hazards by Location Tool available from the USGS website (<a href="https://hazards.atcouncil.org">https://hazards.atcouncil.org</a>). The design responses for the short (0.2 sec, S<sub>DS</sub>) and 1-second period (S<sub>D1</sub>) are noted in bold at the far right end of the following table.

GROUND MOTION PARAMETERS – SITE CLASS D [ASCE7-16 Method]								
Period (sec)	Mapped Spectral Response Accelerations (g)		Values of Site Coefficient for Site Class		Maximum Spectral Response Acceleration Adjusted for Site Class (g)		Design Spectral Response Acceleration (g)	
Reference	Figures 16 (1) & (2)	513.3.1	Tables 16: (1) & (2)	13.3.3	Eqs. 16-37 8	Š.	Eqs. 16-39 & 16-40	
0.2	Ss	0.151	$F_a$	1.6	$S_{MS}=F_aS_s$	0.241	S <sub>DS</sub> =2/3 S <sub>MS</sub>	0.161
1.0	$S_1$	0.067	$F_{\nu}$	2.4	$S_{M1}=F_vS_1$	0.16	S <sub>D1</sub> =2/3 S <sub>M1</sub>	0.107

The Site Class definition should not be confused with the Seismic Design Category designation which the Structural Engineer typically assesses.

## **4.4 PAVEMENTS**

**Subgrade Characteristics:** Based on the results of our borings, it appears that the pavement subgrades will consist mainly of SAND (SP, SM) or Structural Fill. If site earthwork is performed during the typically cooler, wetter months of the year, additional undercutting is anticipated due to excessively wet unstable soils.

For design purposes, provided in-place densification recommendations are followed, we recommend assuming a CBR value of 10.

We were not provided traffic loading information so we have assumed loadings typical of this type of project. Our recommended pavement sections are based on up to 20,000 ESALs over a 20-year design life for light duty and up to 125,000 ESALs over a 20-year design life for heavy duty.

The preliminary pavement sections below are guidelines that may or may not comply with local jurisdictional minimums.

	PROPOSED PAVEMENT SECTIONS  FLEXIBLE PAVEMENT RIGID PAVEMENT				
MATERIAL	<b>Heavy Duty</b>	Light Duty	Heavy Duty	Light Duty	
Portland Cement Concrete (f'c = 4,500 psi)	-	-	7 in.	5 in.	
Asphalt Surface Course	3 in	2 in	-	-	
Aggregate Base Course	8 in	6 in	4 in.	-	

In general, heavy duty sections are areas that will be subjected to trucks, buses, or other similar vehicles including main drive lanes of the development. Light duty sections are appropriate for vehicular traffic and parking areas.

Large, front loading trash dumpsters frequently impose concentrated front wheel loads on pavements during loading. This type of loading typically results in rutting of asphalt pavement and ultimately pavement failures. For preliminary design purposes, we recommend that the pavement in trash pickup areas consist of a 7-inch thick, 4,500 psi, reinforced concrete slab underlain by 4-inches of aggregate base course. When traffic loading becomes available, ECS or the Civil Engineer can design the pavements.

Prior to subbase placement and paving, CBR testing of the subgrade soils (both natural and fill soils) should be performed to determine the soil engineering properties for final pavement design. A minimum distance of 18 inches should be maintained between the bottom of the pavement section and the groundwater table.

The soil subgrade should be smooth-rolled and proofrolled prior to ABC placement. Areas that pump, rut, or are otherwise unstable should be re-compacted or undercut and replaced.

To confirm that the specified degree of compaction is being obtained, field compaction testing should be performed in each ABC lift by the geotechnical engineer's representative. We recommend that compaction tests be performed at a minimum frequency of one test per 5,000 square feet per lift in pavement areas.

The Portland cement concrete pavement section should consist of air-entrained Portland cement concrete having a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4,500 psi. The rigid pavement section should be provided with construction joints and saw-cut control joints at appropriate intervals per Portland Cement Association (PCA) requirements. The construction joints should be reinforced with dowels to transfer loads across the joints. Wire mesh should be included to control shrinkage cracking of the concrete.

We used a Load Transfer Coefficient, J, of 4.2 to determine the recommended concrete pavement thickness given in the preceding table. The concrete pavement section thickness is for plain jointed concrete pavement with reinforcement dowels only at construction joints.

**Drainage:** An important consideration with the design and construction of pavements is surface and subsurface drainage. Where standing water develops, either on the pavement surface or within the aggregate base course layer, softening of the subgrades and other problems related to the deterioration of the pavement can be expected. This is particularly important at the site due to the moisture sensitive near-surface soils. Furthermore, good drainage should help reduce the possibility of the subgrade materials becoming saturated during the normal service period of the pavement.

#### **5.0 SITE CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS**

#### **5.1 SUBGRADE PREPARATION**

#### 5.1.1 Stripping and Grubbing

The subgrade preparation should consist of stripping vegetation, rootmat, topsoil, existing fill, existing foundations, existing pavements, and soft or loose materials from the 10-foot expanded building and 5-foot expanded pavement limits. Deeper topsoil or organic laden soils may be present in wet, low-lying, and poorly drained areas. ECS should be retained to verify that topsoil, existing foundations and pavements, construction debris, and substandard surficial materials have been removed prior to the placement of structural fill or construction of structures.

#### **5.1.2 Proofrolling**

Prior to fill placement or other construction on subgrades, the subgrades should be evaluated by an ECS field technician. The exposed subgrade should be proofrolled with construction equipment having a minimum axle load of 10 tons [e.g. tandem-axle dump truck loaded to capacity]. Proofrolling should be traversed in two perpendicular directions with overlapping passes of the vehicle under the observation of an ECS technician. This procedure is intended to assist in identifying localized yielding materials.

Where proofrolling identifies areas that are unsteady or "pumping" subgrade those areas should be repaired prior to the placement of subsequent Structural Fill or other construction materials. Methods of stabilization include undercutting and moisture conditioning. The situation should be discussed with ECS to determine the appropriate procedure. Test pits may be excavated to explore the shallow subsurface materials to help in determining the cause of the observed unsteady materials, and to assist in the evaluation of appropriate remedial actions to stabilize the subgrade.

#### 5.1.3 Site Temporary Dewatering

**Limited Excavation Dewatering:** Based upon our subsurface exploration at this site, as well as significant experience on sites in nearby areas of similar geologic setting, we believe construction dewatering may be needed in some areas of the site for removing accumulated rainwater and for seepage from the support of excavation (SOE) during installation of foundations, and underground utilities.

Deep wells should not be required for the temporary dewatering system. However, the dewatering operations can be handled by the use of conventional submersible pumps directly in the excavation or temporary trenches.

If temporary sump pits are used, we recommend they be established at an elevation one to two feet below the bottom of the excavation subgrade or bottom of footing. A perforated 55 gallon drum or other temporary structure could be used to house the pump. We recommend continuous dewatering of the excavations using electric pumps or manned gasoline pumps be used during construction.

If dewater operations are performed at the site, ECS recommends that the dewatering operations be performed in accordance with Local, State and Federal Government regulatory requirements for surface water discharges. ECS would be pleased to be consulted by the client on those requirements, if requested.

#### **5.2 EARTHWORK OPERATIONS**

#### 5.2.1 Structural Fill

Prior to placement of Structural Fill, bulk samples (about 50 pounds) of on-site and/or off-site borrow should be submitted to ECS for laboratory testing, which typically include Atterberg limits, natural moisture content, grain-size distribution, and moisture-density relationships (i.e., Proctors) for compaction. Import materials should be tested prior to being hauled to the site to determine if they meet project specifications. Alternatively, Proctor data from other accredited laboratories can be submitted if the test results are within the last 90 days.

**Structural Fill Materials:** Materials selected for use as structural fill should consist of inorganic soils with the following engineering properties and compaction requirements.

STRUCTURAL FILL INDEX PROPERTIES					
Subject Property					
Building and Pavement Areas	LL < 40, PI<10				
Max. Particle Size	3 inches				
Fines Content	Max. 20 % < #200 sieve				
Max. organic content	5% by dry weight				

STRUCTURAL FILL COMPACTION REQUIREMENTS						
Subject	Requirement					
Compaction Standard	Standard Proctor, ASTM D698					
Required Compaction	98% of Max. Dry Density					
Dry Unit Weight	>100 pcf					
Moisture Content	-2 to +2 % points of the soil's optimum value					
Loose Thickness	8 inches prior to compaction					

**On-Site Borrow Suitability:** Natural deposits of possible fill material are present near surface on the site. The on-site near surface sands (SM, SP) with fines contents less than 20 percent should meet the recommendations for re-use as Structural Fill.

**Fill Placement:** Fill materials should not be placed on frozen soils, on frost-heaved soils, and/or on excessively wet soils. Borrow fill materials should not contain frozen materials at the time of placement, and frozen or frost-heaved soils should be removed prior to placement of structural fill or other fill soils and aggregates. Excessively wet soils or aggregates should be scarified, aerated, and moisture conditioned.

#### **5.3 FOUNDATION AND SLAB OBSERVATIONS**

**Protection of Foundation Excavations:** Exposure to the environment may weaken the soils at the footing bearing level if the foundation excavations remain open for too long a time. Therefore, foundation concrete should be placed the same day that excavations are made. If the bearing soils are softened by surface water intrusion or exposure, the softened soils must be removed from the foundation excavation bottom immediately prior to placement of concrete. If the excavation must remain open overnight, or if rainfall becomes imminent while the bearing soils are exposed, a 1 to 3-inch thick "mud mat" of "lean" concrete should be placed on the bearing soils before the placement of reinforcing steel.

**Footing Subgrade Observations:** A majority of the soils encountered on site at the foundation bearing elevation are anticipated to be adequate for support of the proposed structure. It is important to have ECS observe the foundation subgrade prior to placing foundation concrete, to confirm the bearing soils are what has been specified.

**Slab Subgrade Verification:** Prior to placement of a drainage layer, the subgrade should be prepared in accordance with the recommendations found in **Section 5.1.2 Proofrolling**.

#### **5.4 UTILITY INSTALLATIONS**

**Utility Subgrades:** The soils encountered in our exploration are expected to be generally adequate for support of utility pipes. The pipe subgrades should be observed and probed for stability by ECS. Loose or unsteady materials encountered should be removed and replaced with compacted Structural Fill, or pipe stone bedding material.

**Utility Backfilling:** The granular bedding material (AASHTO #57 stone) should be 4 inches thick, but not less than that specified by the civil engineer's project drawings and specifications. We recommend that the bedding materials be placed up to the springline of the pipe. Fill placed for support of the utilities, as well as backfill over the utilities, should meet the requirements for Structural Fill and fill placement.

**Excavation Safety:** Excavations and slopes should be constructed and maintained in accordance with OSHA excavation safety standards. The contractor is solely responsible for designing, constructing, and maintaining stable temporary excavations and slopes. The contractor's Responsible Person, as defined in 29 CFR Part 1926, should evaluate the soil exposed in the excavations as part of the contractor's safety procedures. The slope height, slope inclination, and excavation depth, including utility trench excavation depth, should not exceed those specified in local, state, and federal safety regulations. ECS is providing this information solely as a service to our client. ECS is not assuming responsibility for construction site safety or the contractor's activities; such responsibility is not being implied and should not be inferred.

#### 6.0 CLOSING

ECS has prepared this report to guide the geotechnical-related design and construction aspects of the project. We performed these services in accordance with the standard of care expected of professionals in the industry performing similar services on projects of like size and complexity at this time in the region. No other representation, expressed or implied, and no warranty or guarantee is included or intended in this report.

The description of the proposed project is based on information provided to ECS by Mr. Brice Reid with Becker Morgan Group, Inc. If this information is untrue or changes, either because of our interpretation of the documents provided or site or design changes that may occur later, ECS should be contacted so we can review our recommendations and provide additional or alternate recommendations that reflect the proposed construction.

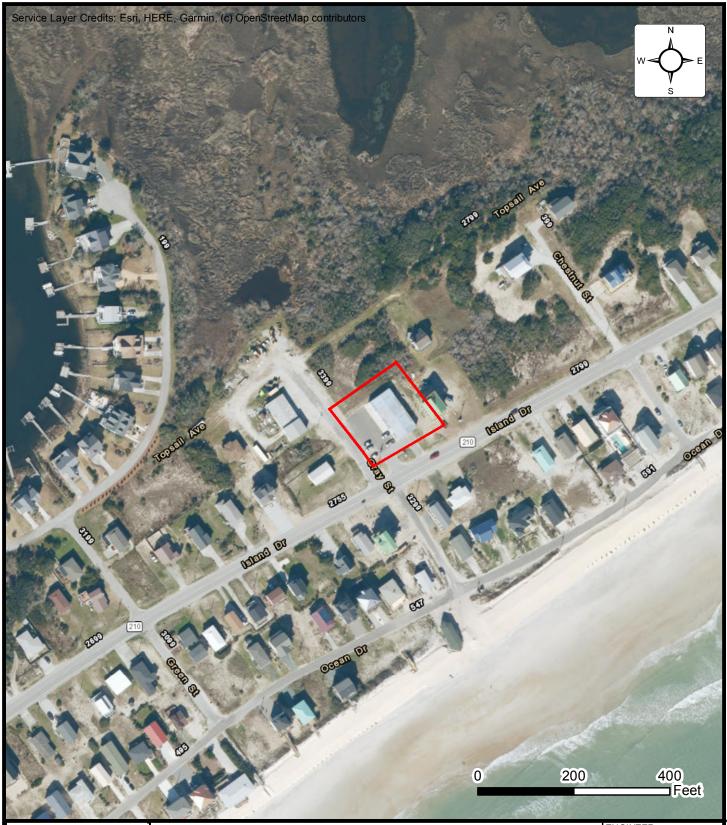
We recommend that ECS review the project plans and specifications so we can confirm that those plans/specifications are in accordance with the recommendations of this geotechnical report.

Field observations and quality assurance testing during earthwork and foundation installation are an extension of, and integral to, the geotechnical design. We recommend that ECS be retained to apply our expertise throughout the geotechnical phases of construction, and to provide consultation and recommendation should issues arise.

ECS is not responsible for the conclusions, opinions, or recommendations of others based on the data in this report.

### **APPENDIX A – Diagrams & Reports**

Site Location Diagram
Exploration Location Diagram





# SITE LOCATION DIAGRAM NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH FIRE STATION

3304 GRAY ST, NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH, NC

**BECKER MORGAN GROUP** 

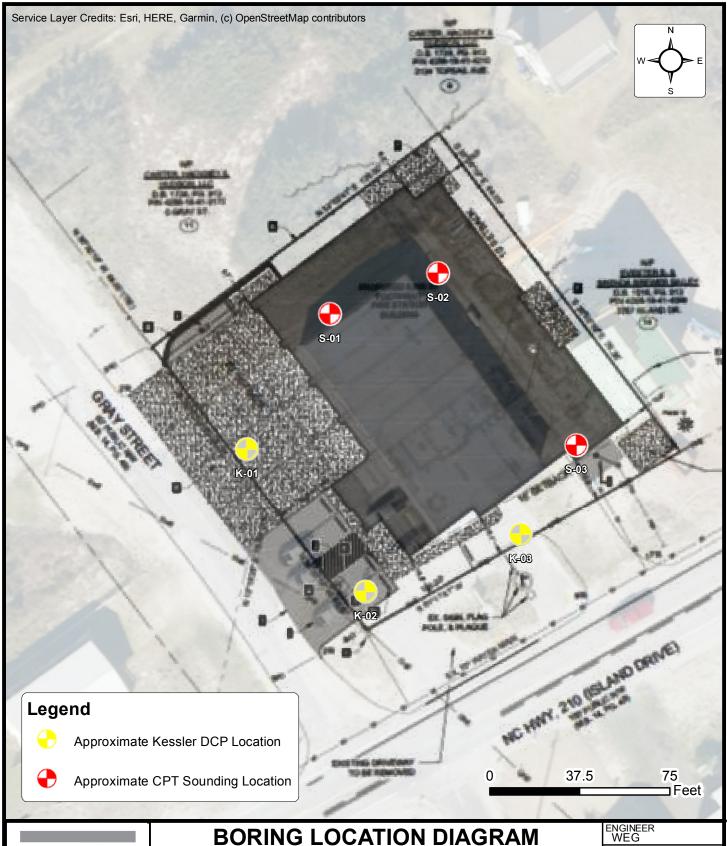
<b>ENGI</b>	INEER
W/F	G

SCALE AS NOTED

PROJECT NO. 22:32561

FIGURE 1 OF 2

DATE 12/8/2022





## BORING LOCATION DIAGRAM NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH FIRE STATION

3304 GRAY ST, NORTH TOPSAIL BEACH, NC

**BECKER MORGAN GROUP** 

SCALE AS NOTED

PROJECT NO. 22:32561

FIGURE 2 OF 2

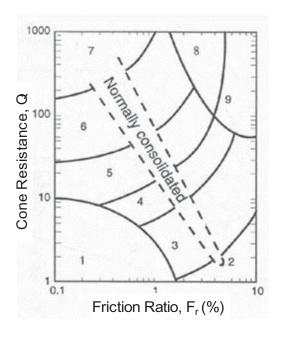
DATE 12/8/2022

#### **APPENDIX B – Field Operations**

Reference Notes for CPT Sounding Logs
Cone Penetration Test Sounding Logs (S-1 through S-3)
Reference Notes for Boring Logs
Hand Auger Boring Logs (K-01 through K-03)
Kessler Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) Test Results (K-01 through K-03)

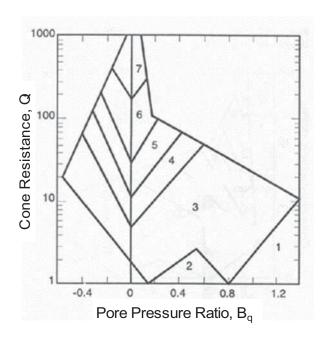
## REFERENCE NOTES FOR CONE PENETRATION TEST (CPT) SOUNDINGS

In the CPT sounding procedure (ASTM-D-5778), an electronically instrumented cone penetrometer is hydraulically advanced through soil to measure point resistance  $(q_c)$ , pore water pressure  $(u_2)$ , and sleeve friction  $(f_s)$ . These values are recorded continuously as the cone is pushed to the desired depth. CPT data is corrected for depth and used to estimate soil classifications and intrinsic soil parameters such as angle of internal friction, preconsolidation pressure, and undrained shear strength. The graphs below represent one of the accepted methods of CPT soil behavior classification (Robertson, 1990).





- 2. Organic Soils-Peats
- 3. Clays; Clay to Silty Clay
- 4. Clayey Silt to Silty Clay
- 5. Silty Sand to Sandy Silt



6. Clean Sands to Silty Sands

- 7. Gravelly Sand to Sand
- 8. Very Stiff Sand to Clayey Sand
- 9. Very Stiff Fine Grained

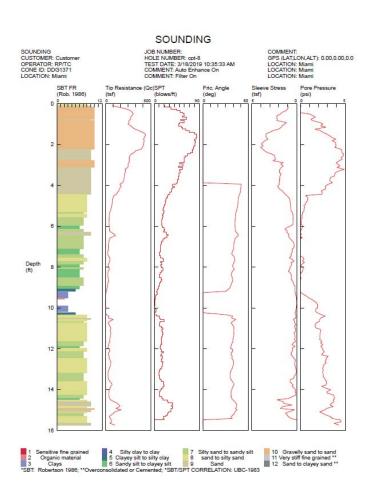
The following table presents a correlation of corrected cone tip resistance  $(q_t)$  to soil consistency or relative density:

SA	ND	SILT/0	CLAY		
Corrected Cone Tip Resistance (qt) (tsf) Relative Density		Corrected Cone Tip Resistance (q <sub>t</sub> ) (tsf)	Relative Density		
<20	Very Loose	<5	Very Soft		
20-40	20-40 Loose 5-10		Soft		
40-120	Medium Dense	10-15	Firm		
40-120	Medialli Delise	15-30	Stiff		
120-200	Dense	30-45	Very Stiff		
>200	Vany Dance	45-60	Hard		
>200	Very Dense	>60	Very Hard		



# SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION PROCEDURE: CONE PENETRATION TESTING (CPT) ASTM D 5778

In the CPT sounding procedure, an electronically instrumented cone penetrometer is hydraulically advanced through soil to measure point resistance (qc), pore water pressure (U2), and sleeve friction (fs). These values are recorded continuously as the cone is pushed to the desired depth. CPT data is corrected for depth and used to estimate soil classifications and intrinsic soil parameters such as angle of internal friction, pre-consolidation pressure, and undrained shear strength.



## **CPT Procedure:**

- Involves the direct push of an electronically instrumented cone penetrometer\* through the soil
- Values are recorded continuously
- CPT data is corrected and correlated to soil parameters

\*CPT Penetrometer Size May Vary



**ECS Southeast, LLP** 6714 Netherlands Drive Wilmington, NC 28403 ECS Project # 22-32561

CPT: S-1

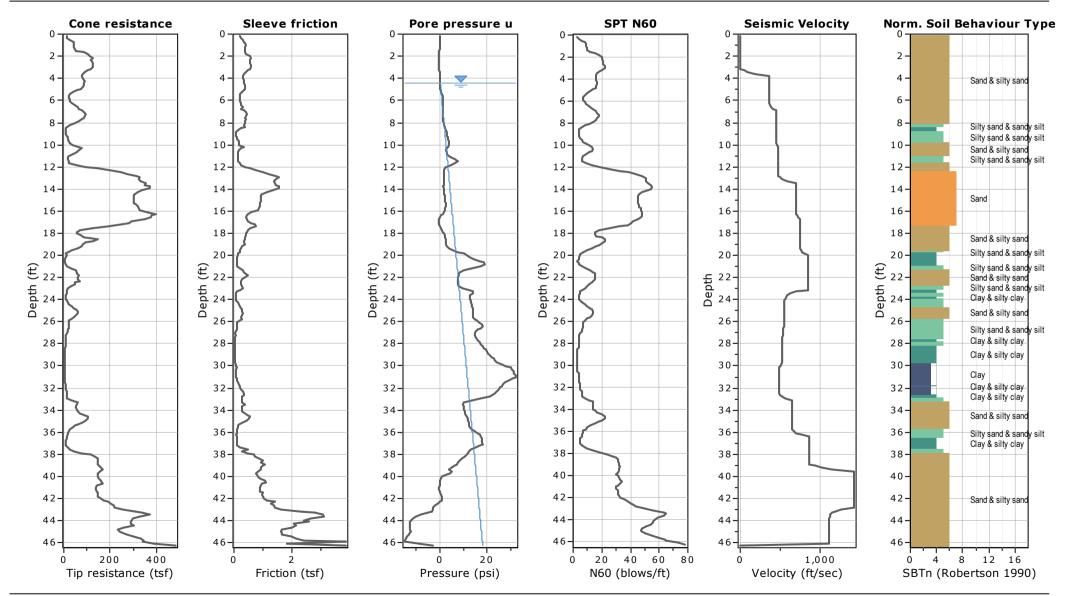
Total depth: 46.26 ft, Date: 12/8/2022

Cone Type: Uknown

Cone Operator: Cory Robison

Project: North Topsail Beach Fire Station # 2

**Location: North Topsail Beach, Onslow County, North Carolina** 





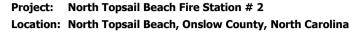
**ECS Southeast, LLP** 6714 Netherlands Drive Wilmington, NC 28403 ECS Project # 22-32561

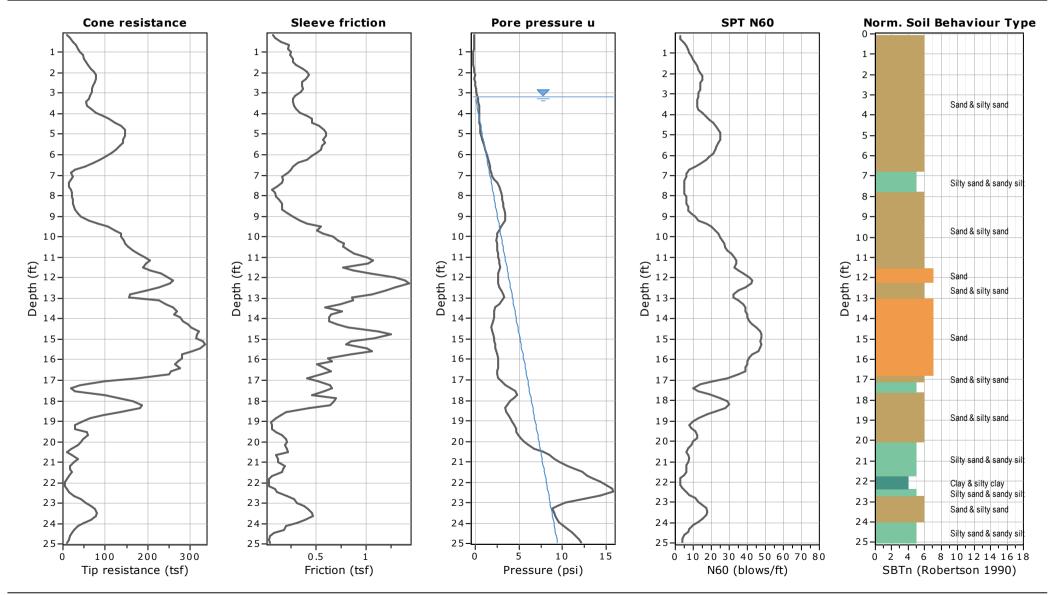
CPT: S-2

Total depth: 24.93 ft, Date: 12/8/2022

Cone Type: Uknown

Cone Operator: Cory Robison







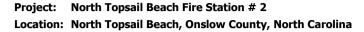
**ECS Southeast, LLP** 6714 Netherlands Drive Wilmington, NC 28403 ECS Project # 22-32561

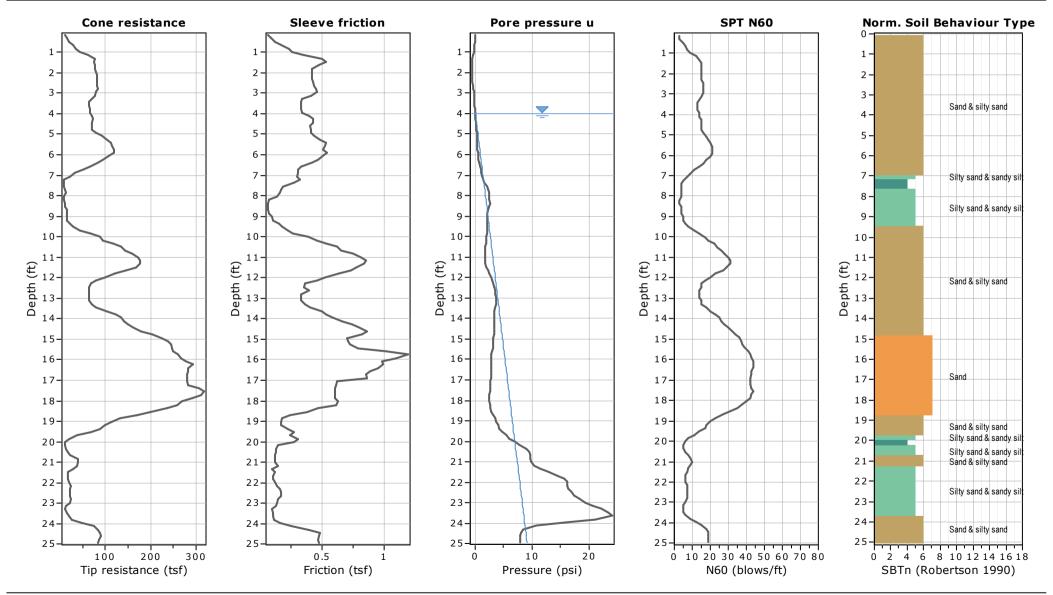
CPT: S-3

Total depth: 24.93 ft, Date: 12/8/2022

Cone Type: Uknown

Cone Operator: Cory Robison







### REFERENCE NOTES FOR BORING LOGS

MATERIAL <sup>1</sup>	,2	
	ASPI	HALT
	CON	CRETE
0,00	GRA	VEL
	TOPS	SOIL
	VOID	
	BRIC	κ
	AGG	REGATE BASE COURSE
	GW	WELL-GRADED GRAVEL gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines
\$°.0	GP	POORLY-GRADED GRAVEL gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines
	GM	SILTY GRAVEL gravel-sand-silt mixtures
Z Z	GC	CLAYEY GRAVEL gravel-sand-clay mixtures
Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ Δ	sw	WELL-GRADED SAND gravelly sand, little or no fines
	SP	POORLY-GRADED SAND gravelly sand, little or no fines
	SM	SILTY SAND sand-silt mixtures
///>	sc	CLAYEY SAND sand-clay mixtures
	ML	SILT non-plastic to medium plasticity
	МН	ELASTIC SILT high plasticity
	CL	LEAN CLAY low to medium plasticity
	СН	FAT CLAY high plasticity
	OL	ORGANIC SILT or CLAY non-plastic to low plasticity
\$\$\$	ОН	ORGANIC SILT or CLAY high plasticity
5 76 7 76 75	PT	PEAT highly organic soils
9		

DRILLING SAMPLING SYMBOLS & ABBREVIATIONS							
SS	S Split Spoon Sampler PM Pressuremeter Test						
ST	Shelby Tube Sampler	RD	Rock Bit Drilling				
ws	Wash Sample	RC	Rock Core, NX, BX, AX				
BS	Bulk Sample of Cuttings	REC	Rock Sample Recovery %				
PA	Power Auger (no sample)	RQD	Rock Quality Designation %				
HSA	Hollow Stem Auger						

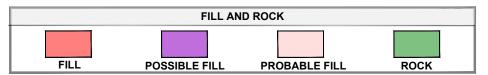
	PARTICLE SIZE IDENTIFICATION					
DESIGNAT	TION	PARTICLE SIZES				
Boulders	5	12 inches (300 mm) or larger				
Cobbles		3 inches to 12 inches (75 mm to 300 mm)				
Gravel: Coarse		3/4 inch to 3 inches (19 mm to 75 mm)				
Fine		4.75 mm to 19 mm (No. 4 sieve to 3/4 inch)				
Sand: Coarse		2.00 mm to 4.75 mm (No. 10 to No. 4 sieve)				
	Medium	0.425 mm to 2.00 mm (No. 40 to No. 10 sieve)				
Fine		0.074 mm to 0.425 mm (No. 200 to No. 40 sieve)				
Silt & Clay ("Fines")		<0.074 mm (smaller than a No. 200 sieve)				

COHESIVE SILTS & CLAYS							
UNCONFINED  COMPRESSIVE  STRENGTH, QP <sup>4</sup>	SPT <sup>5</sup> (BPF)	CONSISTENCY <sup>7</sup> (COHESIVE)  Very Soft Soft Firm Stiff					
<0.25	<2	Very Soft					
0.25 - <0.50	2 - 4	Soft					
0.50 - <1.00	5 - 8	Firm					
1.00 - <2.00	9 - 15	Stiff					
2.00 - <4.00	16 - 30	Very Stiff					
4.00 - 8.00	31 - 50	Hard					
>8.00	>50	Very Hard					

RELATIVE AMOUNT <sup>7</sup>	COARSE GRAINED (%) <sup>8</sup>	FINE GRAINED (%) <sup>8</sup>				
Trace	<u>&lt;</u> 5	<u>&lt;</u> 5				
With	10 - 20	10 - 25				
Adjective (ex: "Silty")	25 - 45	30 - 45				

GRAVELS, SANDS & NON-COHESIVE SILTS						
SPT⁵	DENSITY					
<5	Very Loose					
5 - 10	Loose					
11 - 30	Medium Dense					
31 - 50	Dense					
>50	Very Dense					

WATER LEVELS <sup>6</sup>	
WL (First Encountered)	
WL (Completion)	
WL (Seasonal High Water)	
WL (Stabilized)	
	WL (First Encountered) WL (Completion) WL (Seasonal High Water)



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Classifications and symbols per ASTM D 2488-17 (Visual-Manual Procedure) unless noted otherwise.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>To be consistent with general practice, "POORLY GRADED" has been removed from GP, GP-GM, GP-GC, SP, SP-SM, SP-SC soil types on the boring logs.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Non-ASTM designations are included in soil descriptions and symbols along with ASTM symbol [Ex: (SM-FILL)].

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Typically estimated via pocket penetrometer or Torvane shear test and expressed in tons per square foot (tsf).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>Standard Penetration Test (SPT) refers to the number of hammer blows (blow count) of a 140 lb. hammer falling 30 inches on a 2 inch OD split spoon sampler required to drive the sampler 12 inches (ASTM D 1586). "N-value" is another term for "blow count" and is expressed in blows per foot (bpf). SPT correlations per 7.4.2 Method B and need to be corrected if using an auto hammer.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>The water levels are those levels actually measured in the borehole at the times indicated by the symbol. The measurements are relatively reliable when augering, without adding fluids, in granular soils. In clay and cohesive silts, the determination of water levels may require several days for the water level to stabilize. In such cases, additional methods of measurement are generally employed.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>Minor deviation from ASTM D 2488-17 Note 14.

 $<sup>^8\</sup>mbox{Percentages}$  are estimated to the nearest 5% per ASTM D 2488-17.

PROJI North SITE L 3304 G	er Mo ECT I Tops OCA Gray S	ΓΙΟΝ: S <b>t, Nort</b>					1 of 1 SURFACE ELEVATION:			<b>-C</b>	2	
NOR	THIN	G:	T		EASTING:							110
ОЕРТН (FT)	WATER LEVELS	ELEVATION (FT)		DESCRIPTION OF N	∕/ATERIAL			EXCAVATION EFFORT	DCP	SAMPLE NUMBER	FINES CONTENT (%)	MOISTURE CONTENT (%)
			Asphalt Thickness	[1.75"]								
-	-	-	Gravel Thickness[2	10.25"]								
-		-	(SP) FINE TO MED	IUM SAND, tan to gra	ay, moist to saturat	ed						
_	-	_										
-	-	-										
-	•	-										
-	-	-		END OF HAND AUG	SER AT 4 FT	:						
-5-												
REMA	 ARKS:											
TI	HE S	TRATIF	ICATION LINES REPRES	ENT THE APPROXIMATE	BOUNDRY LINES BET	WEEN SOIL TYPES	S. IN-SITU	THE T	RANSIT	ION MAY I	BE GRAI	DUAL
			EXC	CAVATION EFFORT: E - EA		DIFFICULT VD - VE	RY DIFFIC	CULT		П		
$\Box$	WL	(First E	ncountered)	▼ WL (Seasonal H	ligh)	ECS REP:	DATE CO	OMPLE	ETED: L	JNITS:	CAVE-IN	N-DEPTH:
•	WL	(Comp	letion) 3.50			CDH	Dec 01 2	022	E	nglish	3.50	
					<b>HAND AUGER L</b>	.OG						

CLIENT: Becker Morgan Group				PROJECT NO.: SHEET <b>22:32561 1 of 1</b>								
PROJECT NAME:					HAND AUGER NO.:		SURFACE ELEVATION:					
North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2 K-02							ATION:					
SITE LOCATION: STATION: 3304 Gray St, North Topsail Beach, North Carolina, 28460												
NOR	THIN	IG:			EASTING:							Th.
DEРТН (FT)	WATER LEVELS	ELEVATION (FT)	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL					EXCAVATION EFFORT	DCP	SAMPLE NUMBER	FINES CONTENT (%)	MOISTURE CONTENT (%)
			Asphalt Thickness	[2.00"]								
-			Gravel Thickness[7	7.50"]								
	(SP) FINE TO MEDIUM SAND, tan to gray, moist to saturated				ed ::	7 0 0 0						
-		-										
_		-		END OF HAND AUG	GER AT 4 FT	: :	14 1 41 1 141					
-			-									
5												
REMA			ICATION LINES SESSE	ENT THE ADDRESS OF THE	- POLINIPOVI III TO	EMEEN CON THE	INI COTTO	T				
TI	HE S	TRATIF		ENT THE APPROXIMATE					RANSIT	ION MAY	BE GRAI	DUAL
EXCAVATION EFFORT: E - EASY M - MEDIUM D - DIFFICULT VD - VERY DIFFICULT								I DEDTI:				
✓ WL (First Encountered) ✓ WL (Seasonal High) ECS REP:						DATE COMPLETED: UNITS: CAVE-IN-DEP				N-DEPTH:		
▼ WL (Completion) 3.50 CDH Dec 01 2022 English 3.50  HAND AUGER LOG												

CLIENT: Becker Morgan Group	PROJECT NO.: <b>22:32561</b>	PROJECT NO.: SHEET: <b>22:32561 1 of 1</b>							
PROJECT NAME:	HAND AUGER N		SURFACE ELEVATION:						
North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2 SITE LOCATION:	STATION:	TATION:							
3304 Gray St, North Topsail Beach, North Carolina, 28460									
NORTHING:	EASTING:			EXCAVATION EFFORT					
WATER LEVELS ELEVATION (FT)	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL					SAMPLE NUMBER	FINES CONTENT (%)	MOISTURE CONTENT (%)	
Asphalt Thickness[2.75"]	Asphalt Thickness[2.75"]								
Gravel Thickness[9.00"]	Gravel Thickness[9.00"]								
(SM) SILTY FINE TO MED	st								
(SP) FINE TO MEDIUM SA	AND, tan to gray, moist to sa	turated							
	OF HAND 44055 47 4 57								
END	OF HAND AUGER AT 4 FT								
5									
REMARKS:									
NEW WILL									
THE STRATIFICATION LINES REPRESENT TH	E APPROXIMATE BOUNDRY LINE	S BETWEEN SOIL TYP	ES. IN-SITU	THE T	RANSITI	I YAM NC	BE GRAI	DUAL	
EXCAVATIO	ON EFFORT: E - EASY M - MEDIUI	M D - DIFFICULT VD - \	VERY DIFFI	CULT	1	Т			
✓ WL (First Encountered) ✓	ECS REP:	DATE COMPLETED: UNITS: CAVE-IN-DEP				N-DEPTH:			
▼ WL (Completion) 3.50 CDH Dec 01 2022 English 3.50  HAND AUGER LOG									

#### **DCP TEST DATA** Project: NTB Fire station #2 Date: 1-Dec-22 Location: Soil Type(s): SAND (SP) 17.6 lbs. O Both hammers used All other soils Accumulative Type of **CBR Blows** Penetration Hammer 1.0 10.0 100.0 0.1 (<u>m</u>m) 45.72 78.74 114.3 152.4 190.5 220.98 264.16 DEPTH, mm 314.96 368.3 416.56 490.22 558.8 0.1 1.0 10.0 100.0 **BEARING CAPACITY, psf** 508 H 508 DEPTH, mm DEPTH, in Based on approximate interrelationships of CBR and Bearing values (Design of Concrete Airport Pavement, Portland Cement Association, page 8, 1955) **BEARING CAPACITY, psi**

#### **DCP TEST DATA** Project: NTB Fire station #2 Date: 1-Dec-22 Location: K-2 Soil Type(s): SAND (SP) • 17.6 lbs. O Both hammers used All other soils Accumulative Type of **CBR Blows** Penetration Hammer 1.0 10.0 100.0 0.1 (mm) 66.04 114.3 160.02 193.04 226.06 261.62 299.72 DEPTH, mm 335.28 401.32 421.64 462.28 502.92 546.1 690.88 0.1 1.0 10.0 100.0 **BEARING CAPACITY, psf** 508 H 508 DEPTH, mm DEPTH, in Based on approximate interrelationships of CBR and Bearing values (Design of Concrete Airport Pavement, Portland Cement Association, page 8, 1955) **BEARING CAPACITY, psi**

#### **DCP TEST DATA** Project: NTB Fire station #2 1-Dec-22 Location: Soil Type(s): SAND (SP, SM) Hammer 10.1 lbs. 17.6 lbs. O Both hammers used All other soils Accumulative Type of **CBR Blows** Penetration Hammer 1.0 10.0 100.0 0.1 (<u>m</u>m) 83.82 134.62 172.72 205.74 233.68 269.24 322.58 DEPTH, mm 378.46 421.64 454.66 497.84 541.02 0.1 1.0 10.0 100.0 **BEARING CAPACITY, psf** 508 H 508 DEPTH, mm DEPTH, in Based on approximate interrelationships of CBR and Bearing values (Design of Concrete Airport Pavement, Portland Cement Association, page 8, 1955) **BEARING CAPACITY, psi**

## **APPENDIX C – Supplemental Report Documents**

**GBA** Document

## **Important Information about This**

# Geotechnical-Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

The Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA) has prepared this advisory to help you – assumedly a client representative - interpret and apply this geotechnical-engineering report as effectively as possible. In that way, clients can benefit from a lowered exposure to the subsurface problems that, for decades, have been a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. If you have questions or want more information about any of the issues discussed below, contact your GBA-member geotechnical engineer. **Active involvement in the Geoprofessional Business** Association exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk-confrontation techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project.

## Geotechnical-Engineering Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical-engineering study conducted for a given civil engineer will not likely meet the needs of a civilworks constructor or even a different civil engineer. Because each geotechnical-engineering study is unique, each geotechnical-engineering report is unique, prepared solely for the client. Those who rely on a geotechnical-engineering report prepared for a different client can be seriously misled. No one except authorized client representatives should rely on this geotechnical-engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. And no one – not even you – should apply this report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.

#### Read this Report in Full

Costly problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical-engineering report did not read it *in its entirety*. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only. *Read this report in full*.

## You Need to Inform Your Geotechnical Engineer about Change

Your geotechnical engineer considered unique, project-specific factors when designing the study behind this report and developing the confirmation-dependent recommendations the report conveys. A few typical factors include:

- the client's goals, objectives, budget, schedule, and risk-management preferences;
- the general nature of the structure involved, its size, configuration, and performance criteria;
- the structure's location and orientation on the site; and
- other planned or existing site improvements, such as retaining walls, access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities.

Typical changes that could erode the reliability of this report include those that affect:

- the site's size or shape;
- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light-industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse;
- the elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure;
- the composition of the design team; or
- · project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes – even minor ones – and request an assessment of their impact. The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that arise because the geotechnical engineer was not informed about developments the engineer otherwise would have considered.

#### This Report May Not Be Reliable

Do not rely on this report if your geotechnical engineer prepared it:

- for a different client;
- for a different project;
- for a different site (that may or may not include all or a portion of the original site); or
- before important events occurred at the site or adjacent to it; e.g., man-made events like construction or environmental remediation, or natural events like floods, droughts, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations.

Note, too, that it could be unwise to rely on a geotechnical-engineering report whose reliability may have been affected by the passage of time, because of factors like changed subsurface conditions; new or modified codes, standards, or regulations; or new techniques or tools. *If your geotechnical engineer has not indicated an "apply-by" date on the report, ask what it should be,* and, in general, *if you are the least bit uncertain* about the continued reliability of this report, contact your geotechnical engineer before applying it. A minor amount of additional testing or analysis – if any is required at all – could prevent major problems.

## Most of the "Findings" Related in This Report Are Professional Opinions

Before construction begins, geotechnical engineers explore a site's subsurface through various sampling and testing procedures. Geotechnical engineers can observe actual subsurface conditions only at those specific locations where sampling and testing were performed. The data derived from that sampling and testing were reviewed by your geotechnical engineer, who then applied professional judgment to form opinions about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual sitewide-subsurface conditions may differ – maybe significantly – from those indicated in this report. Confront that risk by retaining your geotechnical engineer to serve on the design team from project start to project finish, so the individual can provide informed guidance quickly, whenever needed.

## This Report's Recommendations Are Confirmation-Dependent

The recommendations included in this report – including any options or alternatives – are confirmation-dependent. In other words, they are not final, because the geotechnical engineer who developed them relied heavily on judgment and opinion to do so. Your geotechnical engineer can finalize the recommendations only after observing actual subsurface conditions revealed during construction. If through observation your geotechnical engineer confirms that the conditions assumed to exist actually do exist, the recommendations can be relied upon, assuming no other changes have occurred. The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot assume responsibility or liability for confirmation-dependent recommendations if you fail to retain that engineer to perform construction observation.

#### This Report Could Be Misinterpreted

Other design professionals' misinterpretation of geotechnicalengineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer serve as a full-time member of the design team, to:

- confer with other design-team members,
- help develop specifications,
- review pertinent elements of other design professionals' plans and specifications, and
- be on hand quickly whenever geotechnical-engineering guidance is needed.

You should also confront the risk of constructors misinterpreting this report. Do so by retaining your geotechnical engineer to participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences and to perform construction observation.

#### **Give Constructors a Complete Report and Guidance**

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can shift unanticipated-subsurface-conditions liability to constructors by limiting the information they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent the costly, contentious problems this practice has caused, include the complete geotechnical-engineering report, along with any attachments or appendices, with your contract documents, but be certain to note conspicuously that you've included the material for informational purposes only. To avoid misunderstanding, you may also want to note that "informational purposes" means constructors have no right to rely on the interpretations, opinions, conclusions, or recommendations in the report, but they may rely on the factual data relative to the specific times, locations, and depths/elevations referenced. Be certain that constructors know they may learn about specific project requirements, including options selected from the report, only from the design drawings and specifications. Remind constructors that they may

perform their own studies if they want to, and *be sure to allow enough time* to permit them to do so. Only then might you be in a position to give constructors the information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions. Conducting prebid and preconstruction conferences can also be valuable in this respect.

#### **Read Responsibility Provisions Closely**

Some client representatives, design professionals, and constructors do not realize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. That lack of understanding has nurtured unrealistic expectations that have resulted in disappointments, delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. To confront that risk, geotechnical engineers commonly include explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations," many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely*. Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

#### **Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered**

The personnel, equipment, and techniques used to perform an environmental study – e.g., a "phase-one" or "phase-two" environmental site assessment – differ significantly from those used to perform a geotechnical-engineering study. For that reason, a geotechnical-engineering report does not usually relate any environmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. Unanticipated subsurface environmental problems have led to project failures. If you have not yet obtained your own environmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk-management guidance. As a general rule, do not rely on an environmental report prepared for a different client, site, or project, or that is more than six months old.

## Obtain Professional Assistance to Deal with Moisture Infiltration and Mold

While your geotechnical engineer may have addressed groundwater, water infiltration, or similar issues in this report, none of the engineer's services were designed, conducted, or intended to prevent uncontrolled migration of moisture – including water vapor – from the soil through building slabs and walls and into the building interior, where it can cause mold growth and material-performance deficiencies. Accordingly, proper implementation of the geotechnical engineer's recommendations will not of itself be sufficient to prevent moisture infiltration. Confront the risk of moisture infiltration by including building-envelope or mold specialists on the design team. Geotechnical engineers are not building-envelope or mold specialists.



Telephone: 301/565-2733 e-mail: info@geoprofessional.org www.geoprofessional.org

Copyright 2016 by Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA). Duplication, reproduction, or copying of this document, in whole or in part, by any means whatsoever, is strictly prohibited, except with GBA's specific written permission. Excerpting, quoting, or otherwise extracting wording from this document is permitted only with the express written permission of GBA, and only for purposes of scholarly research or book review. Only members of GBA may use this document or its wording as a complement to or as an element of a report of any kind. Any other firm, individual, or other entity that so uses this document without being a GBA member could be committing negligent

#### General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

#### for the following PROJECT:

(Name and location or address)

North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2

#### THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)

Town of North Topsail Beach 2008 Loggerhead Court North Topsail Beach, NC 28460

#### THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status and address)

Becker Morgan Group, Inc. 3333 Jaeckle Drive, Suite 120 Wilmington, NC 28403

#### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- **GENERAL PROVISIONS**
- **OWNER**
- CONTRACTOR 3
- **ARCHITECT**
- **SUBCONTRACTORS**
- CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS 6
- 7 **CHANGES IN THE WORK**
- 8 TIME
- **PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION** 9
- PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY 10
- **INSURANCE AND BONDS** 11
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 **MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An Additions and Deletions Report that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

- 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
- 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES



**User Notes:** 

#### **INDEX** (Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.) Acceptance of Nonconforming Work 9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3 Acceptance of Work 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3 Access to Work **3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1 **Accident Prevention** Acts and Omissions 3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2 Addenda 1.1.1 Additional Costs, Claims for 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5 **Additional Inspections and Testing** 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4** Additional Time, Claims for 3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, 15.1.6 **Administration of the Contract** 3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5 Advertisement or Invitation to Bid 1.1.1 Aesthetic Effect 4.2.13 **Allowances Applications for Payment** 4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10 2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1 Arbitration 8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4** ARCHITECT Architect, Definition of 4.1.1 Architect, Extent of Authority 2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1 Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility 2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2 Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Administration of the Contract

Architect's Authority to Reject Work 3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1 Architect's Copyright 1.1.7, 1.5 Architect's Decisions 3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2 Architect's Inspections 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4 Architect's Instructions 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2 Architect's Interpretations 4.2.11, 4.2.12 Architect's Project Representative 4.2.10 Architect's Relationship with Contractor 1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2 Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors 1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3 Architect's Representations 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1 Architect's Site Visits 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4 Asbestos 10.3.1 Attorneys' Fees 3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3 Award of Separate Contracts 6.1.1, 6.1.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for **Portions of the Work** 5.2 **Basic Definitions** 1.1 **Bidding Requirements** 1.1.1 Binding Dispute Resolution 8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1 Bonds, Lien 7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3 Bonds, Performance, and Payment 7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5 Building Information Models Use and Reliance** 1.8 **Building Permit** 3.7.1 Capitalization Certificate of Substantial Completion 9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:25:28 ET on 10/19/2023 under Order No.4104244725 which expires on 08/21/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

**Certificates for Payment** 

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval 13.4.4

Certificates of Insurance 9.10.2

**Change Orders** 

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

Change Orders, Definition of

7.2.1

**CHANGES IN THE WORK** 

2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, **7**, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

Claims, Definition of

15.1.1

Claims, Notice of

1.6.2, 15.1.3

**CLAIMS AND DISPUTES** 

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4 Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims

**Claims for Additional Cost** 

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5** 

**Claims for Additional Time** 

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6** 

Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for 3.7.4

Claims for Damages

3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Claims Subject to Arbitration

15.4.1

**Cleaning Up** 

**3.15**, 6.3

Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to 2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5** 

Commencement of the Work, Definition of 8.1.2

**Communications** 

3.9.1, 4.2.4

Completion, Conditions Relating to

3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2

COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND

9

Completion, Substantial

3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

Compliance with Laws

2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

Concealed or Unknown Conditions

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written

3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2,

**Consolidation or Joinder** 

15.4.4

CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

1.1.4, 6

**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of **7.3.1** 

**Construction Change Directives** 

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1

Construction Schedules, Contractor's

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2 **Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts** 

**5.4**, 14.2.2.2

**Continuing Contract Performance** 

15.1.4

Contract, Definition of

1.1.2

CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE

5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, 14

Contract Administration

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating

\_ . . . .

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of 1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

Contract Documents, Definition of

1.1.1

**Contract Sum** 

2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5, 15.2.5** 

Contract Sum, Definition of

9.1

Contract Time

1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

Contract Time, Definition of

8.1.1

**CONTRACTOR** 

3

Contractor, Definition of

3.1, 6.1.2

**Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules** 

**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:25:28 ET on 10/19/2023 under Order No.4104244725 which expires on 08/21/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes: (1450464299)

Contractor's Employees Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, Contractors 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1 3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4 Contractor's Liability Insurance Damage to the Work 11.1 3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4 Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors Damages, Claims for 3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, and Owner's Forces 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7 Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors Damages for Delay 1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2 Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4 Contractor's Relationship with the Architect 1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 8.1.3 Day, Definition of 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1 8.1.4 Contractor's Representations Decisions of the Architect 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2 3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, Work 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2 3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8 **Decisions to Withhold Certification** Contractor's Review of Contract Documents 9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3 Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Contractor's Right to Stop the Work Rejection and Correction of 2.2.2, 9.7 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract 9.10.4, 12.2.1 14.1 **Definitions** Contractor's Submittals 1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3 **Delays and Extensions of Time** Contractor's Superintendent **3.2**, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**, 3.9, 10.2.6 10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5 Contractor's Supervision and Construction **Digital Data Use and Transmission Procedures** 1.7 1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, Disputes 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4 6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2 Coordination and Correlation **Documents and Samples at the Site** 1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1 3.11 Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications **Drawings**, Definition of 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11 1.1.5 Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of Copyrights 1.5, 3.17 Correction of Work Effective Date of Insurance 2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, 12.2, 12.3, 8.2.2 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1 **Emergencies Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents 10.4**, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5** 1.2 Employees, Contractor's Cost, Definition of 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 7.3.4 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1 Costs Equipment, Labor, or Materials 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2 **Cutting and Patching** Execution and Progress of the Work **3.14**, 6.2.5 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4

Extensions of Time Insurance, Stored Materials 3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 9.3.2 INSURANCE AND BONDS 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5 Failure of Payment** 9.5.1.3, 9.7, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2 Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy Faulty Work (See Defective or Nonconforming Work) Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of **Final Completion and Final Payment** 4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3 Intent of the Contract Documents Financial Arrangements, Owner's 1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13 2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4 **Interest GENERAL PROVISIONS** 13.5 Interpretation 1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1 **Governing Law** 13.1 Interpretations, Written Guarantees (See Warranty) 4.2.11, 4.2.12 **Hazardous Materials and Substances** Judgment on Final Award 10.2.4, **10.3** 15.4.2 Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers Labor and Materials, Equipment 5.2.1 1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, Indemnification 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2 Information and Services Required of the Owner Labor Disputes 2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 8.3.1 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, Laws and Regulations 1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4 **Initial Decision** 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.2 15.4 Initial Decision Maker, Definition of Liens 1.1.8 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8 Initial Decision Maker, Decisions Limitations, Statutes of 14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5 12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1 Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority Limitations of Liability 14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, Injury or Damage to Person or Property 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 10.2.8, 10.4 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1 Limitations of Time Inspections 3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, Instructions to Bidders 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15, 1.1.1 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5 Instructions to the Contractor Materials, Hazardous 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2 10.2.4, **10.3** Materials, Labor, Equipment and Instruments of Service, Definition of 1.1.7 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, Insurance 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, 11 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2 Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and 11.1.4, 11.2.3 Procedures of Construction Insurance, Contractor's Liability 3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2 11.1 Mechanic's Lien Insurance, Effective Date of 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.88.2.2, 14.4.2 Mediation Insurance, Owner's Liability 8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1 **Insurance, Property** Minor Changes in the Work 1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4 10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:25:28 ET on 10/19/2023 under Order No.4104244725 which expires on 08/21/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations,

e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes: (1450464299)

#### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13

Modifications, Definition of

111

Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2

**Mutual Responsibility** 

62

Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of

9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2

Notice

**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1

Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance 11.1.4, 11.2.3

**Notice of Claims** 

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.4.1, 13.4.2

Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

Occupancy

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

**OWNER** 

2

Owner, Definition of

2.1.1

Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements

**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

Owner, Information and Services Required of the 2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

**Owner's Insurance** 

11.2

Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors 1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work 2.5, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Clean Up

6.3

Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

6.1

Owner's Right to Stop the Work

2.4

Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, **9.9** 

Patching, Cutting and

**3.14**, 6.2.5 Patents

3.17

Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1,

14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment, Certificates for** 

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1,

9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2** 

Payments, Progress

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9

Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

PCB

10.3.1

Performance Bond and Payment Bond

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2** 

Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF

Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

**Product Data**, Definition of 3.12.2

**Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings** 

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

**Progress and Completion** 

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

**Progress Payments** 

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:25:28 ET on 10/19/2023 under Order No.4104244725 which expires on 08/21/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes: (1450464299)

Project, Definition of Separate Contracts and Contractors 1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2 1.1.4 Separate Contractors, Definition of Project Representatives 4.2.10 6.1.1 **Property Insurance** Shop Drawings, Definition of 10.2.5, **11.2** 3.12.1 **Proposal Requirements Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples** 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY Site, Use of 10 **3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1 Site Inspections Regulations and Laws 3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4 1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4 Site Visits, Architect's 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4 Rejection of Work 4.2.6, 12.2.1 Special Inspections and Testing 4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4 Releases and Waivers of Liens 9.3.1, 9.10.2 Specifications, Definition of Representations 1.1.6 3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1**Specifications** Representatives 1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1 Statute of Limitations Responsibility for Those Performing the Work 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1 3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10 Stopping the Work 2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1 9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3 Stored Materials **Review of Contract Documents and Field** 6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4 **Conditions by Contractor** Subcontractor, Definition of 5.1.1 **3.2**, 3.12.7, 6.1.3 Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and **SUBCONTRACTORS** Architect 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2 Subcontractors, Work by Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples 1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, by Contractor **Subcontractual Relations** 3.12 **Rights and Remedies 5.3**, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1 1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, Submittals 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8, 12.2.4, 13.3, 14, 15.4 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights Submittal Schedule 3.17 3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7 Rules and Notices for Arbitration Subrogation, Waivers of 15.4.1 6.1.1, **11.3** Safety of Persons and Property Substances, Hazardous 10.2, 10.4 10.3 **Safety Precautions and Programs Substantial Completion** 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4 Samples, Definition of 15.1.2 3.12.3 Substantial Completion, Definition of Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and 9.8.1 Substitution of Subcontractors 3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7 Samples at the Site, Documents and 5.2.3, 5.2.4 3.11 Substitution of Architect Schedule of Values 2.3.3 **9.2**, 9.3.1 Substitutions of Materials

Init.

Schedules, Construction

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AlA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:25:28 ET on 10/19/2023 under Order No.4104244725 which expires on 08/21/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

5.1.2

3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8

Sub-subcontractor, Definition of

**Subsurface Conditions** 

3.7.4

**Successors and Assigns** 

13.2

**Superintendent** 

**3.9**, 10.2.6

**Supervision and Construction Procedures** 

1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3,

7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Suppliers

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6,

9.10.5, 14.2.1

Surety

5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2,

15.2.7

Surety, Consent of

9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Surveys

1.1.7, 2.3.4

Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

14.3

Suspension of the Work

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

Suspension or Termination of the Contract

5.4.1.1, 14

**Taxes** 

3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

**Termination by the Contractor** 

**14.1**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Cause** 

5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Convenience** 

14.4

Termination of the Architect

2.3.3

Termination of the Contractor Employment

14.2.2

TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

14

**Tests and Inspections** 

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,

9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, 13.4

TIME

8

Time, Delays and Extensions of

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7,

10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,

5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1,

9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2,

15.1.3, 15.4

**Time Limits on Claims** 

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work

9.3.2, 9.3.3

UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

12

**Uncovering of Work** 

12.1

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

**Unit Prices** 

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

Use of Site

**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

Values, Schedule of

**9.2**, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect

13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor

9.10.5, 13.3.2, 15.1.7

Waiver of Claims by the Owner

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7** 

Waiver of Consequential Damages

14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

Waivers of Subrogation

6.1.1, 11.3

Warranty

**3.5**, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2,

15.1.2

Weather Delays

8.3, 15.1.6.2

Work, Definition of

1.1.3

Written Consent

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3,

13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

#### ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

#### § 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### § 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### § 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### § 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### § 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### § 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### § 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### § 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

#### § 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

- § 1.2.1.1 The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.
- § 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.
- § 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

#### § 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

#### § 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

#### § 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

- § 1.5.1 The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.
- § 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

#### § 1.6 Notice

- § 1.6.1 Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.
- § 1.6.2 Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

#### § 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203<sup>TM</sup>\_2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

#### § 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203<sup>TM</sup>—2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document

G202<sup>TM</sup>–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

#### ARTICLE 2 OWNER

#### § 2.1 General

- § 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.
- § 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

#### § 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements

- § 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.
- § 2.2.2 Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.
- **§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.
- § 2.2.4 Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

#### § 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

- § 2.3.1 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.
- § 2.3.2 The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**User Notes:** 

- § 2.3.3 If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.
- § 2.3.4 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.
- § 2.3.5 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.
- § 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### § 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### § 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

#### ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

#### § 3.1 General

- § 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.
- § 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- § 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

#### § 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**User Notes:** 

- § 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.
- § 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.
- § 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

# § 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

- § 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.
- § 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.
- § 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

#### § 3.4 Labor and Materials

- § 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.
- § 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

#### § 3.5 Warranty

- § 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.
- § 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

## § 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

#### § 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

- § 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.
- § 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.
- § 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

#### § 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

# § 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

- § 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,
  - .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
  - .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
  - whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.
- § 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

# § 3.9 Superintendent

- § 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.
- § 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.
- § 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

## § 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

- § 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.
- § 3.10.2 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.
- § 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

## § 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and

delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

# § 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

- § 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.
- § 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.
- § 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.
- § 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.
- § 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.
- § 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.
- § 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.
- § 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.
- § 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.
- § 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.
- § 3.12.10.1 If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will

specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.10.2 If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

# § 3.13 Use of Site

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

## § 3.14 Cutting and Patching

- § 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.
- § 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

## § 3.15 Cleaning Up

- § 3.15.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.
- § 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

#### § 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

## § 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

#### § 3.18 Indemnification

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

#### ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

# § 4.1 General

- § 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.
- § 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

# § 4.2 Administration of the Contract

- § 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.
- § 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.
- § 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

# § 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

- § 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.
- § 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.
- § 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.
- § 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.
- § 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.
- § 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.
- § 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.
- § 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.
- § 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.
- § 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

#### ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

# § 5.1 Definitions

- § 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.
- § 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

#### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

- § 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.
- § 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.
- § 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.
- § 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

## § 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

#### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

- § 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that
  - .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
  - **.2** assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

- § 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.
- § 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

- § 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts
- § 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.
- § 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- § 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.
- **§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

#### § 6.2 Mutual Responsibility

- § 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.
- § 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.
- **§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.
- § 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

## § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

#### ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

## § 7.1 General

- § 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- § 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.
- § 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

# § 7.2 Change Orders

- § 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:
  - .1 The change in the Work;
  - .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
  - .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

## § 7.3 Construction Change Directives

- § 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.
- § 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.
- § 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:
  - .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
  - .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
  - .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
  - .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.
- § 7.3.4 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- 1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.
- § 7.3.5 If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.
- § 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.
- § 7.3.7 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.
- § 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.
- § 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.
- § 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

## § 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

# ARTICLE 8 TIME

## § 8.1 Definitions

- § 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.
- § 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.
- § 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

## § 8.2 Progress and Completion

- § 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.
- § 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.
- § 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

#### § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

- § 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.
- § 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.
- § 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

#### ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

#### § 9.1 Contract Sum

- § 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.
- § 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

#### § 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

#### § 9.3 Applications for Payment

- § 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.
- § 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

- § 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.
- § 9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.
- § 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

## § 9.4 Certificates for Payment

- § 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.
- § 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

#### § 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

- § 9.5.1 The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of
  - .1 defective Work not remedied;
  - .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
  - **.3** failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;

- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- § 9.5.2 When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.
- § 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.
- § 9.5.4 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

## § 9.6 Progress Payments

- § 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.
- § 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.
- § 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.
- § 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.
- § 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.
- § 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- § 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.
- § 9.6.8 Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

# § 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

## § 9.8 Substantial Completion

- § 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.
- § 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- § 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.
- § 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.
- § 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### § 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

## § 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

#### ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

#### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

## § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.
- § 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.
- § 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.
- § 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.
- § 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.
- § 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.
- § 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

## § 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

#### § 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances

- § 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.
- § 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will

promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

- § 10.3.3 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.
- § 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.
- § 10.3.5 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.
- § 10.3.6 If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

# § 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

# ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

# § 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

- § 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.
- § 11.1.2 The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.
- § 11.1.3 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.
- § 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act

or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

#### § 11.2 Owner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance. If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

#### § 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

§ 11.3.2 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

#### § 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

## §11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss

§ 11.5.1 A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

§ 11.5.2 Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

## ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

# § 12.1 Uncovering of Work

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

# § 12.2 Correction of Work

## § 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

## § 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

- § 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.
- § 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.
- § 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.
- § 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- § 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

#### § 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

#### § 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

#### § 13.2 Successors and Assigns

- § 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.
- § 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

## § 13.3 Rights and Remedies

- § 13.3.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.
- § 13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

## § 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and

(1450464299)

approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

- § 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.
- § 13.4.3 If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.
- § 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.
- § 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.
- § 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## § 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

# ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

## § 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

- § 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:
  - .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped:
  - **.2** An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
  - .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
  - .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.
- § 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.
- § 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

## § 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

- § 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor
  - .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
  - .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
  - .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
  - .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.
- § 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:
  - Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
  - .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
  - .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.
- § 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.
- § 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

#### § 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

- § 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.
- § 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent
  - .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
  - 2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### § 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

- § 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.
- § 14.4.2 Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall
  - .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
  - .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work;
  - .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

#### ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 Claims

#### § 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

# § 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

# § 15.1.3 Notice of Claims

§ 15.1.3.1 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

## § 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance

§ 15.1.4.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.4.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### § 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

## § 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time

§ 15.1.6.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.6.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

## § 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

## § 15.2 Initial Decision

- § 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.
- § 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.
- § 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.
- § 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.
- § 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.
- § 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.
- § 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

- § 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.
- § 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

## § 15.3 Mediation

- § 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.
- § 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.
- § 15.3.3 Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.
- § 15.3.4 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

## § 15.4 Arbitration

- § 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.
- § 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.
- § 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.
- § 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

## § 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder

§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

# SUPPLEMENTS TO AIA DOCUMENT A201-2017 GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

#### **GENERAL:**

The following supplements modify, change, delete from or add to the "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction," AIA Document A201-2017. Where any Article of the General Conditions is modified or any paragraph, subparagraph, or clause thereof is modified or deleted by these supplements, the unaltered portions of the General Conditions shall remain in effect.

# **ARTICLE 4 - ARCHITECT**

- 4.2 <u>ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT</u>: Supplement as follows:
- 4.2.9.1 The Architect shall provide one final inspection after the Contractor notifies the Architect that the project is complete.
- 4.2.9.2 The Architect shall, upon final inspection, prepare a written list of items to be completed and promptly provide the list to the Contractor.
- 4.2.9.3 The Contractor shall be required to complete the project and the items on the list in **30** days and provide all required closeout documents within **60** days of the final inspection.
- 4.2.9.4 The Architect shall provide one (1) re-inspection to verify that the Contractor has completed the project and the final inspection list. The Owner and the Contractor shall be promptly notified of any deficiencies noted during this inspection. The Contractor shall immediately make the necessary corrections.
- 4.2.9.5 Any additional re-inspections necessitated due to the deficiencies being noted under 4.2.9.4 above and any additional time required by the Architect, due to closeout documents being incomplete or Contractor not submitting the documents within **60** days of the final inspection, will be billed to the Owner by the Architect as per the Owner/Architect agreement.
- 4.2.9.6 The Owner shall have the right to deduct the charges of the Architect incurred under Section 4.2.9.5 from the Contractor's last application for payment.

## **ARTICLE 15 – CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

- 15.1.6 CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL TIME: Supplement as follows:
- 15.1.6.3 Add the following Subparagraph 15.1.6.3 to Subparagraph 15.1.6:

  Time Extensions will not be granted for rain, wind, snow or other natural phenomena of normal intensity for the locality where work is performed. For purpose of determining extent of delay attributable to unusable weather phenomena, a determination shall be made by comparing the weather for the contract period involved with the average of the preceding five (5) year climatic range during the same time interval based on the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Weather Service statistics for the locality where work is performed and on daily weather logs kept on the job site by the Contractor reflecting the effect of the weather on progress of the work and initialed by the

Architect's representative. Time extensions for weather delays <u>do not entitle the Contractor to "extended overhead" recovery.</u>

- 15.1.6.4 Add the following Subparagraph 15.1.6.4 to Subparagraph 15.1.6:

  If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the progress of his work by any act or negligence of the Owner or the Architect, or by any employee of either; by any separate Contractor employed by the Owner; by changes ordered in the work; by labor disputes at the project site; by abnormal weather conditions not reasonably anticipated for the locality where the work is performed; by unavoidable casualties; by any causes beyond the Contractor's control; or by any other causes which the Architect and Owner determine may justify the delay, then the contract time may be extended by change order for the time which the Architect and Owner may determine is reasonable.
- 15.1.6.5 Add the following Subparagraph 15.1.6.5 to Subparagraph 15.1.6:

  No claim shall be allowed on account of failure of the Architect to furnish drawings or instructions until twenty-one (21) days after demand for such drawings and/or instructions.
- 15.1.6.6 Add the following Subparagraph 15.1.6.6 to Subparagraph 15.1.6:
  Claims for additional time and additional cost will not be allowed if the actual construction time does not exceed the actual completion time as stated in the original Owner-Contractor Agreement.

#### SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Phased construction.
- 4. Owner-furnished products.
- 5. Access to site.
- 6. Work restrictions.
- 7. Specification and drawing conventions.
- 8. Miscellaneous provisions.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. See Sections 001 "Advertisement for Bids" and 002 "Instructions to Bidders" for bid procedures and forms, bonding requirements, MBE/DBE requirements, Supplementary General Conditions, draft Contract for Construction and other requirements. These two sections take precedence over all other Division 1 specifications.
- 2. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

## 1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2.
  - 1. Project Location: 3304 Gray Street, North Topsail Beach, North Carolina 28460.
- B. Owner: Town of North Topsail
  - 1. Owner's Representative: Alice Derian.
  - 2. Contact Email: <a href="mailto:aderian@northtopsailbeachnc.gov">aderian@northtopsailbeachnc.gov</a>
- C. Architect: Becker Morgan Group, Inc.
  - 1. Architect's Representative: Brice Reid, AIA.
  - 2. Contact Email: breid@beckermorgan.com
- D. Architect's Consultants: The Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

- 1. Civil Engineering:
  - a. Paramounte Engineering, Inc.
  - b. Contact: Robert Balland, PE; <u>rballand@paramounte-eng.com</u>
- 2. Structural Engineering:
  - a. Woods Engineering, PA
  - b. Contact: Adam Sisk, PE; asisk@woodseng.com
- 3. Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing Engineering:
  - a. CBHF Engineers, PLLC
  - b. Electrical Contact: Allen Cribb, PE; acribb@cbhfengineers.com
  - c. Mechanical Contact: Troy Grady, PE; tgrady@cbhfengineers.com
- E. Project Web Site: A project Web site administered by Architect will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.
  - 1. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for using the Project Web site.

## 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:
  - 1. The project consists of the construction of approximately 11,643 sf of new building and related site work for the Town of North Topsail Beach Fire Station No. 2. The project will include:
    - a. Site Approximately .38 acres total land area includes: earthwork; utilities; parking; entrances; pedestrian and vehicular paving; stormwater structures; and landscaping. Site lighting, other than exterior building lighting, is to be provided by Jones Onslow EMC.
    - Building ground supported reinforced concrete foundations; reinforced concrete b. slab on grade; structural metal studs and concrete block wall construction; stone veneer; cementitious siding; aluminum windows and storefront; membrane roofing; rigid, batt and foam insulation; interior metal studs; gypsum wallboard; acoustic panel ceilings; solid wood doors; fiberglass reinforced doors and frames; door hardware; ceramic tile; paint; casework; lockers; residential appliances and fire fighter specialties. Building systems utilities: underground electric service; panelboards; interior and exterior lighting; switches/receptacles; underground propane tank; diesel-fueled engine-generator; automatic power transfer switch; automatic fire detection and alarm system; empty conduit for voice, data, video and security systems; high-efficiency mechanical systems; outside air ventilation/energy recovery units; metal and flexible insulated air distribution ducts; dampers; air devices; automatic temperature controls; domestic hot and cold water; plumbing fixtures and fittings; sanitary and storm sewer; and automatic fire extinguishment system. All utilities connected to municipal services.

# B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

## 1.5 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Work includes receiving, unloading, handling, storing, protecting, and installing Owner-furnished products.

## B. Owner-Furnished Products:

- 1. Gear Washer in Room 112.
- 2. Gear Dryer in Room 112
- 3. Ice Machine in Room 113.
- 4. Clothes Washer/Dryer in Room 106.
- 5. Air Compressor in Room 114
- 6. Microwave Ovens in Room 105.
- 7. Gas Range with Oven in Room 105.
- 8. Range Hood in Room 105.
- 9. Televisions in Rooms 104, 206 and 209.
- 10. Computer Monitors throughout the building.
- 11. Speaker system located throughout the building.
- 12. Water Heater in Mezzanine 212.
- 13. Outdoor Propane Grill at Patio

#### 1.6 ACCESS TO SITE

A. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

#### 1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing building to normal business working hours of 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.
- D. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- E. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
  - 1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

# 1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
  - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

#### SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
  - 3. Quantity allowances.
  - 4. Contingency allowances.
  - 5. Testing and inspecting allowances.

# C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
- 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

# 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Allowance is a quantity of work or dollar amount established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

#### 1.4 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

# 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

ALLOWANCES 012100 - 1

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

# 1.7 LUMP-SUM, UNIT-COST AND QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

## 1.8 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
  - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
  - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

ALLOWANCES 012100 - 2

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

## 3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance No. 1: Unit-Cost Allowance: Include the sum of \$35.00 per cubic yard for unsatisfactory soil excavation and disposal off-site and replacement with satisfactory soil material from off-site, as specified in Section 312323 "Fill and Backfill"
- B. Allowance No. 2: Lump Sum Allowance: Include the sum of \$3,000 for interior panel signage per A004 Construction Types Signage Details.

END OF SECTION 012100

ALLOWANCES 012100 - 3

#### SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
  - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

UNIT PRICES 012200 - 1

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

- A. Unit Price No. 1 Excavation and removal of unsuitable material from site with furnishing and placing select backfill including compaction and all other incidental work. Measurement and payment will be made for quantities actually excavated, removed, furnished and placed. Unsuitable soil will be defined by the testing agency as specified in Section 312323 "Fill and Backfill". Units Cubic Yards (CY).
- B. Unit Price No. 2 Undercutting and Backfilling Unsuitable Subgrade Soils: Excavate below bottom of concrete footings to remove Unsuitable Soil and dispose of offsite; **Replace with #57 or #67 Stone per Section 312000** or replace with Controlled Low-Strength (Flowable Fill)
  Material per Section 312323 "Fill and Backfill". Units Cubic Yards (CY).

END OF SECTION 012200

UNIT PRICES 012200 - 2

#### SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

ALTERNATES 012300 - 1

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 1: Sprayed Acoustic Insulation
  - 1. Base Bid: No spray application
  - 2. Add Alternate: Provide sprayed acoustic insulation at underside of metal decking per Specification Section 098316. See finish schedule on A601 for locations.

END OF SECTION 012300

ALTERNATES 012300 - 2

#### SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific

- features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
- e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
- g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
- h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
- i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
- j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
- k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- 1. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
  - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

### 1.6 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
    - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

#### SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

# B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use CSI Form 13.6D, "Proposal Worksheet Summary," and Form 13.6C, "Proposal Worksheet Detail" or forms acceptable to Architect.

- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.6A, "Change Order Request (Proposal)," with attachments CSI Form 13.6D, "Proposal Worksheet Summary," and Form 13.6C, "Proposal Worksheet Detail" or form acceptable to Architect.

### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

### SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
    - b. Submittal schedule.
    - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.

- c. Architect's project number.
- d. Contractor's name and address.
- e. Date of submittal.
- 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
- 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
  - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
    - 1) Labor.
    - 2) Materials.
    - 3) Equipment.
- 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
- 5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
- 6. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
- 7. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
- 8. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
- 9. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
- 10. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

### 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
  - 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  - 1. List of subcontractors.
  - 2. Schedule of values.
  - 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
  - 5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  - 6. Schedule of unit prices.
  - 7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  - 9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  - 10. Copies of building permits.
  - 11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  - 12. Initial progress report.
  - 13. Report of preconstruction conference.
  - 14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  - 15. Performance and payment bonds.
  - 16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
  - 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  - 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
  - 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  - 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  - 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.

- 4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
- 5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
- 6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
- 7. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
- 8. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

#### SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
  - 4. Project Web site.
  - 5. Project meetings.

### B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
- 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
- 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

# 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use CSI Form 1.5A. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

# 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.
  - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7. Project closeout activities.
  - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
  - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

### 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is

required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.

- 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
  - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
  - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
  - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
  - 1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  - 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  - 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  - 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  - 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  - 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.

- c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
  - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
  - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other firealarm locations.
  - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
  - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
- 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
  - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
- 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
  - 1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
  - 2. File Preparation Format: DWG, Version 2022, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
  - 3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using Portable Data File (PDF) format.
  - 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
    - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2022 format. Building Information Model (BIM) file will be available in Revit 2022 format.
    - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106.

### 1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
  - 1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
  - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Project number.
  - 3. Date.
  - 4. Name of Contractor.
  - 5. Name of Architect.
  - 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  - 7. RFI subject.
  - 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  - 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  - 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  - 12. Contractor's signature.
  - 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 or software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
  - 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
  - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  - 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
  - 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."

- a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Use CSI Log Form 13.2B or software log with not less than the following:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Name and address of Contractor.
  - 3. Name and address of Architect.
  - 4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  - 5. RFI description.
  - 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  - 7. Date Architect's response was received.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
  - 1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

### 1.8 PROJECT WEB SITE

- A. Use Architect's Project Web site for purposes of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
- B. Architect will provide the following Project Web site software packages under their current published licensing agreements:
  - 1. Newforma, Inc. Newforma Project Center.
- C. Contractor, subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Project Web site shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106.

### 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
  - 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.

- 1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
- 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
  - a. Tentative construction schedule.
  - b. Phasing.
  - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
  - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
  - e. Lines of communications.
  - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
  - g. Procedures for RFIs.
  - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
  - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
  - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
  - k. Submittal procedures.
  - 1. Preparation of record documents.
  - m. Use of the premises.
  - n. Work restrictions.
  - o. Working hours.
  - p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
  - r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
  - s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
  - t. Construction waste management and recycling.
  - u. Parking availability.
  - v. Office, work, and storage areas.
  - w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
  - x. First aid.
  - y. Security.
  - z. Progress cleaning.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Pre-installation Conferences: Conduct a pre-installation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
  - 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect and Owner's Commissioning Authority of scheduled meeting dates.
  - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.

- d. Related Change Orders.
- e. Purchases.
- f. Deliveries.
- g. Submittals.
- h. Review of mockups.
- i. Possible conflicts.
- j. Compatibility requirements.
- k. Time schedules.
- 1. Weather limitations.
- m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
- n. Warranty requirements.
- o. Compatibility of materials.
- p. Acceptability of substrates.
- q. Temporary facilities and controls.
- r. Space and access limitations.
- s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
- u. Installation procedures.
- v. Coordination with other work.
- w. Required performance results.
- x. Protection of adjacent work.
- y. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
- 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
- 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of record documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Submittal of written warranties.
    - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.

- f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
- g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
- h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
- i. Submittal procedures.
- j. Coordination of separate contracts.
- k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
- 1. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
- m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
- 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular and appropriate intervals, but not less than monthly.
  - 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting.

      Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site utilization.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Progress cleaning.
      - 10) Quality and work standards.
      - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 12) Field observations.
      - 13) Status of RFIs.
      - 14) Status of proposal requests.
      - 15) Pending changes.

- 16) Status of Change Orders.
- 17) Pending claims and disputes.
- 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
  - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site utilization.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Work hours.
      - 10) Hazards and risks.
      - 11) Progress cleaning.
      - 12) Quality and work standards.
      - 13) Change Orders.

3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

#### SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Startup construction schedule.
  - 2. Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4. Daily construction reports.
  - 5. Material location reports.
  - 6. Site condition reports.
  - 7. Special reports.

### B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
- 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

# 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
  - 2. PDF electronic file.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
  - 1. Approval of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

- C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
  - 1. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
- E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- F. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- G. Material Location Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- H. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- I. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- J. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
  - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
  - 3. Discuss constraints, including work stages and interim milestones.
  - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
  - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
  - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
  - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
  - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
  - 9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
  - 10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
  - 11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work to date of final completion.
  - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  - 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
  - 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  - 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  - 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
  - 1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
  - 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
  - 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  - 4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.

- 5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
- 6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
  - a. Environmental control.
- 7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - Subcontract awards.
  - b. Submittals.
  - c. Purchases.
  - d. Mockups.
  - e. Fabrication.
  - f. Sample testing.
  - g. Deliveries.
  - h. Installation.
  - i. Tests and inspections.
  - j. Adjusting.
  - k. Curing.
  - 1. Building flush-out.
  - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
- 8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
  - a. Structural completion.
  - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
  - c. Permanent space enclosure.
  - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
  - e. Completion of electrical installation.
  - f. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
  - 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  - 1. Unresolved issues.
  - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  - 4. Notations on returned submittals.

- 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

### 2.2 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, bar-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for commencement of the Work.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

# 2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's construction schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

#### 2.4 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  - 4. Equipment at Project site.
  - 5. Material deliveries.
  - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  - 7. Accidents.
  - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
  - 9. Unusual events (see special reports).
  - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  - 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.

- 12. Emergency procedures.
- 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
- 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
- 16. Services connected and disconnected.
- 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
- 18. Partial completions and occupancies.
- 19. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At weekly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
  - 1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  - 2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  - 3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

### 2.5 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, and response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
  - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.

- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

#### SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
- 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
- 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making

corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

- 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
- 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
- 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
- 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
  - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  - b. Specification Section number and title.
  - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
  - d. Name of subcontractor.
  - e. Description of the Work covered.
  - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
  - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.

### 1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
  - 1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
    - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2022.
    - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA C106.
    - d. The following digital data files will by furnished for each appropriate discipline:
      - 1) Floor plans.
      - 2) Reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.

- 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
- 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
  - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  - 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  - 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
  - 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  - 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A).
  - 3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  - 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name of Construction Manager.
    - e. Name of Contractor.
    - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
    - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
    - h. Category and type of submittal.
    - i. Submittal purpose and description.
    - j. Specification Section number and title.

- k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
- 1. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
- m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
- n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
- o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
- p. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
- q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
- r. Other necessary identification.
- s. Remarks.
- 5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
  - a. Project name.
  - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - c. Manufacturer name.
  - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- F. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
  - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
  - 4. Submittals will be reviewed no more than twice at the Owner's expense. All subsequent reviews will be performed at times convenient to the Designer and at the Contractor's expense, based on the Designer's then prevailing rates including all direct and indirect costs and fees. The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for all such fees invoiced to the Owner by the Designer.
  - 5. Any need for more than one resubmission, or any other delay in obtaining Designer's review of submittals, will not entitle Contractor to extension of the Contract Time.
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- I. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  - 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  - 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
  - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.

- b. Schedules.
- c. Compliance with specified standards.
- d. Notation of coordination requirements.
- e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
- f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
- g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
- 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
  - a. PDF electronic file.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  - 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  - 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  - 3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  - 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  - 6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing

color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit one sets of Samples. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record sample.
  - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  - 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  - 3. Number and name of room or space.
  - 4. Location within room or space.
  - 5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- F. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
- I. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- J. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- K. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- L. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- M. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

- N. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- O. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- P. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- S. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- T. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
  - 2. Date of evaluation.
  - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
  - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - 5. Description of product.
  - 6. Test procedures and results.
  - 7. Limitations of use.
- U. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- W. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- X. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads.

Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

### 2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit PDF electronic file, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

#### 3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.

- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 013300

#### SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

- 1. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
  - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.

- 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
  - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
  - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by the Commissioning Authority.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed

- for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
  - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
  - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
    - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect and Commissioning Authority, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report

whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
  - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.

#### 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
  - 2. These services will be hired directly by the owner.
  - 3. Any costs for a testing inspector having to revisit the site, retesting and/or re-inspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  - 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

- 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
- 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
- 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
- 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in pre-installation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. Retesting/Re-inspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and re-inspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
  - 1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  - 1. Access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.

- 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
- 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
  - 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.11 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
  - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  - 2. Notifying Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect and Commissioning Authority with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Retesting and re-inspecting corrected work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.

- 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, reference during normal working hours.

#### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

#### SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

REFERENCES 014200 - 1

- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

REFERENCES 014200 - 2

#### SECTION 014533 - SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary General Conditions and other Division I Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Special Inspections and Structural Testing shall be in accordance with Chapter 17 of the 2018 North Carolina State Building Code.
- B. The program of Special Inspection and Structural Testing is a Quality Assurance program intended to ensure that the work is performed in accordance with the Contract Documents
- C. This specification section is intended to inform the Contractor of the Owner's quality assurance program and the extent of the Contractor's responsibilities. This specification section is also intended to notify the Special Inspector, Testing Company/Testing Laboratory, and other Agents of the Special Inspector of their requirements and responsibilities.

#### 1.3 SCHEDULE OF INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

A. Required inspections and tests are described in the attached Schedule of Special Inspections and in the individual Specification Sections for the items to be inspected or tested.

### 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. The Special Inspector shall be a licensed Professional Engineer who is approved by the Structural Engineer of Record (SER) and Building Official.
- B. The Testing Company/Testing Laboratory and individual technicians shall be approved by the Structural Engineer of Record (SER) and Building Official.
- C. The Testing Company/Testing Laboratory shall retain a full-time licensed Professional Engineer on staff who shall certify all test reports. The Engineer shall be responsible for the training of the testing technicians and shall be in responsible charge of the field and laboratory testing operations.
  - 1. Special Inspections of soils and foundations may be performed by inspectors with an education and background in geotechnical engineering in lieu of a background in structural engineering.
  - 2. Technicians performing sampling and testing of concrete shall be ACI certified Concrete Field Testing Technicians-Grade 1.
  - 3. Inspectors performing inspections of concrete work such as inspections of concrete placement, batching, reinforcing placement, curing and protection, may be ACI certified

- Concrete Construction Inspectors or ICBO certified Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector in lieu of being a licensed P.E. or EIT.
- 4. Inspectors performing inspections of prestressed concrete work may be ICBO/BOCA/SBCCI certified Prestressed Concrete Special Inspector.
- 5. Inspectors performing inspections of masonry may be ICBO certified Structural Masonry Special Inspector.
- 6. Technicians performing visual inspection of welding shall be AWS Certified Welding Inspectors or ICBO certified Structural Steel and Welding Special Inspectors, technicians performing non-destructive testing such as ultrasonic testing, radiographic testing, magnetic particle testing, or dye-penetrant testing shall be certified as an ASNT-TC Level II or Level III technician.
- 7. Inspectors performing inspections of spray fireproofing may be ICBO certified Spray-Applied Fireproofing Special Inspector.
- 8. Technicians performing standard tests described by specific ASTM Standards shall have training in the performance of such tests and must be able to demonstrate either by oral or written examination competence for the test to be conducted. They shall be under the supervision of a licensed Professional Engineer and shall not be permitted to independently evaluate test results.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. The Special Inspector and Testing Company/Testing Laboratory shall submit to the SER and Building Official for review a copy of their qualifications which shall include the names and qualifications of each of the individual inspectors and technicians who will be performing inspections or tests.
- B. The Special Inspector and Testing Company/Testing Laboratory shall disclose any past or present business relationship or potential conflict of interest with the Contractor or any of the Subcontractors whose work will be inspected or tested.

### 1.6 PAYMENT

- A. The Owner shall engage and pay for the services of the Special Inspector, Agents of the Special Inspector or Testing Company/Testing Laboratory.
- B. If any materials which require Special Inspections are fabricated in a plant that is not certified and is not located within 150 miles of the project, the Contractor shall be responsible for the travel expenses of the Special Inspector of Testing Company/Testing Laboratory.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for the cost of any retesting or reinspection of work which fails to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Special Inspector and his agents so that the Special Inspections and testing may be performed without hindrance.

- B. The Contractor shall review the Statement of Special Inspections and shall be responsible for coordinating and scheduling inspections and tests. The Contractor shall notify the Structural Engineer of Record, Special Inspector or Testing Company/Testing Laboratory at least 48 hours in advance of a required inspection or test. Uninspected work that required inspection may be rejected solely on that basis.
- C. The Contractor shall provide the form for the Final Report of Special Inspections to the Special Inspector for completion at the completion of the project.
- D. The Statement of Special Inspections will be completed by the Structural Engineer of Record and the Owner and provided to the Contractor after the contracts are signed and returned to the Owner. The Contractor shall submit the completed Statement of Special Inspections to the Building Official for acceptance at the time the building permit is applied for.
- E. The Contractor shall provide incidental labor and facilities to provide access to the work to be inspected or tested, to obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of products to be tested, to facilitate tests and inspections, storage and curing of test samples.
- F. The Contractor shall keep at the project site the latest set of construction drawings, field sketches, approved shop drawings, and specifications for use by the inspectors and testing technicians.
- G. The Special Inspection program shall in no way relieve the Contractor of his obligation to perform work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or from implementing an effective Quality Control program. All work that is to be subjected to Special Inspections shall first be reviewed by the Contractor's quality control personnel.
- H. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for construction site safety.

#### 1.8 LIMITS ON AUTHORITY

- A. The Special Inspector or Testing Company/Testing Laboratory may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. The Special Inspector or Testing Company/Testing Laboratory will not have control over the Contractor's means or methods of construction.
- C. The Special Inspector or Testing Company/Testing Laboratory shall not be responsible for construction site safety.
- D. The Special Inspector or Testing Company/Testing Laboratory has no authority to stop the work.

#### 1.9 STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. The Statement of Special Inspections will be prepared by the Structural Engineer of Record.
- B. The attached Statement of Special Inspections shall be used.

C. The Statement of Special Inspections shall be provided to the Contractor after the contracts are signed and returned to the Owner and shall be submitted with the application of Building Permit.

#### 1.10 RECORDS AND REPORTS

- A. Detailed daily reports shall be prepared of each inspection or test and submitted to the Special Inspector. Reports shall include:
  - 1. date of test or inspection
  - 2. name of inspector or technician
  - 3. location of specific areas tested or inspected
  - 4. description of test or inspection and results
  - 5. applicable ASTM standard
  - 6. weather conditions
  - 7. Engineer's seal and signature
- B. The Special Inspector shall submit interim reports to the Building Official at the end of each month which include all inspections and test reports received last week. Copies shall be sent to the SER, Architect and Contractor.
- C. Any discrepancies from the Contract Documents found during a Special Inspection shall be immediately reported to the Contractor. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the Special Inspector shall notify the SER and Building Official. Reports shall document all discrepancies identified and the correction action taken.
- D. The Testing Company/Testing Laboratory shall immediately notify the Special Inspector and the SER by telephone, fax or electronic mail any test results which fail to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- E. Reports shall be submitted to the Special Inspector within 7 days of the inspection or test. Legible hand written reports may be submitted if final typed copies are not readily available. Formal reports shall follow.
- F. At the completion of the work requiring Special Inspections, each inspection agency and Testing Company/Testing Laboratory shall provide a statement to the Special Inspector that all work was completed in substantial conformance with the Contract Documents and that all appropriate inspections and tests were performed.

#### 1.11 FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. The Final Report of Special Inspections shall be completed by the Special Inspector and submitted to the SER and Building Official prior to the issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.
- B. The attached Final Report of Special Inspections shall be used.

C. The Final Report of Special Inspections will certify that all required inspections have performed and will itemize any discrepancies that were not corrected or resolved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (not applicable)

### Attached are the following forms:

- 1. Statement of Special Inspections
- 2. Schedule of Special Inspection Services
- 3. Quality Assurance Plan
- 4. Qualifications of Inspectors and Testing Technicians
- 5. Schedule of Special Inspection Services
- 6. Final Report of Special Inspections
- 7. Final Report of Special Inspections (Agent's Final Report)
- 8. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility
- 9. Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance

END OF SECTION 01 4533

### **Statement of Special Inspections**

Project: North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2

Location: 3304 Gray Street North Topsail Beach, NC

Owner's Representative: Alice Derian

Owner's Address: aderian@northtopsailbeachnc.gov

This Statement of Special Inspections is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with the Special Inspection requirements of the 2018 North Carolina State Building Code. It includes a Schedule of Special Inspection Services applicable to this project, the name of the Special Inspector, the identity of other approved agencies retained for conducting Special Inspections, and the required inspector qualifications. This Statement of Special Inspections was prepared by the following Designers of Record:

, ,	3 3	0.1		
Structural	Adam L Sisk	Clohn Sish	3/24/2022	
	(Type or print name)	(Signature)	(Date)	
Architectural				
	(Type or print name)	(Signature)	(Date)	
Mechanical				
	(Type or print name)	(Signature)	(Date)	
Other				
	(Type or print name)	(Signature)	(Date)	

The Special Inspector shall keep records of all special inspections and tests and shall furnish reports to the State Construction Office and the Designers of Record. Reports shall indicate if the work inspected or tested was or was not completed in conformance with the approved construction documents. Discovered discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. If such discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the State Construction Office and the Designers of Record. The Special Inspections program does not relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities.

Interim reports shall be submitted to the State Construction Office, Owner, and the Designers of Record.

Interim Report Frequency: Monthly

A Final Report of Special Inspections documenting completion of all required Special Inspections, testing, and correction of any discrepancies should be submitted prior to issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.

Job Site safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Owner's Authorization		Accepted by Brunswick County:	
Signature	Date	Signature	Date

Schedule of Special Inspection Services
---

The following sheets comprise t construction divisions which req	-	•	•			
<ul> <li>Structural Steel &amp; High Strengt</li> <li>Welding of Structural Steel</li> <li>Cold-Formed Steel Deck</li> <li>Open-Web Steel Joists &amp; Joist</li> <li>Cold-Formed Steel Framing</li> <li>Concrete Construction</li> <li>Masonry Construction</li> <li>Wood Construction</li> <li>Soils</li> <li>Driven Deep Foundations</li> <li>Cast-in-Place Deep Foundation</li> <li>The inspection frequency indicated on on a daily basis.</li> </ul>	th Bolting	Helical Pile Fou Rammed Aggre Sprayed Fire-Re Mastic & Intume Exterior Insulati Fire-Resistant F Smoke Control Retaining Wall & Special Inspecti Special Inspecti	ndations gate Piers & Stone Columns esistant Material escent Fire-Resistant Coatings on & Finish System Penetrations & Joints & Systems > 5 Feet ons for Wind Resistance ons for Seismic Resistance			
Inspection Agents	Firm Name & Potact	oint of Con-	Address / Phone / E-mail			
Special Inspector (SI-1)						
2. Testing Agency (TA-1)						
3. Testing Agency (TA-2)						
Geotechnical Engineer     (GE-1)						
5. Other (O-1)						
Note: The inspection and testing agent(s) shall be engaged by the Owner or the Registered Design Professional of Record acting as the Owner's agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the State Construction Office, prior to commencing work.						
Seismic Design Category:	□ A □ B 🗵	C 🗆 D				
Basic Wind Speed (V <sub>asd</sub> ):	90-109mph [	] 110-119mph	≥120mph			
Wind Exposure Category: ☐ B ☐ C ☒ D						

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services Structural Steel and High-Strength Bolting

	Inspection Task		Freq	Reference	Agent	
	·	Req'd	Req'd	AISC 360	NCBC	
1.	Fabricator Certification / Verification of Quality Control Procedures					
	a. Verify fabricator qualifications	×	С		1704.2.5.1	
	b. Review material test reports & certifications	⊠	С	N5.2		
	c. Collect certificates of compliance from the steel fabricator at completion of fabrication	×	С		1704.5	
2.	Inspections Prior to High-Strength Bolting at Pretensioned and Slip-Critical Joints					
	<ul> <li>Collect manufacturer's certifications for fas- tener materials</li> </ul>	⊠	С	Table (Tbl) N5.6-1		
	<ul> <li>Fasteners are marked per ASTM require- ments</li> </ul>	⊠	P	Tbl N5.6-1		
	<ul> <li>Ensure correct fasteners and bolting procedures are selected for joint details</li> </ul>	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.6-1		
	<ul> <li>Verify connecting elements, including the appropriate faying surface condition and hole preparation when specified, comply with the construction documents</li> </ul>	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.6-1		
	e. Observe and document pre-installation verifi- cation testing by installation personal for fas- tener assemblies and methods		Р	Tbl N5.6-1		
	f. Verify proper storage provided for all fastener components		Р	Tbl N5.6-1		
3.	Inspections During High-Strength Bolting at Pretensioned and Slip-Critical Joints					
	<ul> <li>Ensure correct fastener assemblies placed in all holes and washers, when specified, are positioned as required</li> </ul>		Р	Tbl N5.6-2		
	b. Verify joint brought to snug-tight condition prior to pretensioning	×	Р	Tbl N5.6-2		
	c. Verify fastener components not turned by the wrench prevented from rotating		Р	Tbl N5.6-2		
	<ul> <li>d. Ensure fasteners are pretensioned in accord- ance with RCSC, progressing from the most rigid point towards free edges</li> </ul>		Р	Tbl N5.6-2		
4.	Document acceptance or rejection of bolted connections after high-strength bolting is complete	×	С	Tbl N5.6-3		
5.	Structural Details					
	<ul> <li>Verify diameter, grade, type and length of an- chor rods and other embedded items support- ing structural steel</li> </ul>		Р	N5.7		
	b. Inspection of fabricated assemblies & erected steel framing verifying compliance with the construction documents		Р	N5.7		

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services **Welding of Structural Steel**

	Inspection Task	Task	Freq	Code Re	eference	Agent
		Req'd		AISC 360	NCBC	
1.	Inspections Prior to Welding			N5.4		
	Collect & review welding procedure specification (WPS) and verify manufacturer certifications for welding consumables	×	С	Table (Tbl) N5.4-1		
	b. Confirm weld material type & grade	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.4-1		
	c. Confirm method of welder identification	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.4-1		
	d. Inspection of fit-up for groove & fillet welds including access hole configuration & finish	×	Р	Tbl N5.4-1		
2.	Inspections During Welding			N5.4		
	a. Verify welder qualifications	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.4-2		
	b. Verify proper control and handling of welding consumables	×	Р	Tbl N5.4-2		
	c. Monitor environmental conditions	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.4-2		
	d. Monitor proper implementation of WPS	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.4-2		
	Inspection of welding techniques including no welding over cracked tack welds	×	Р	Tbl N5.4-2		
3.	Inspections After Welding			N5.4, N5.5		
	a. Verify welds have been cleaned	⊠	Р	Tbl N5.4-3		
	<ul> <li>Confirm the installed size, length and location of welds matches the contract documents</li> </ul>	×	С	Tbl N5.4-3		
	c. Verify welds meet visual acceptance criteria	⊠	С	Tbl N5.4-3		
	d. Confirm arc strikes comply with Part 5.28 of AWS D1.1	×	С	Tbl N5.4-3		
	e. Visually observe web k-area for cracks within 3" of welded doubler plates, continuity plates and stiff-eners	⊠	С	Tbl N5.4-3		
	f. Backing and weld tabs removed per contract documents	⊠	С	Tbl N5.4-3		
	g. Observe and inspect weld repair activities	⊠	С	Tbl N5.4-3		
	h. For Risk Category III or IV structures, conduct ultrasonic testing (UT) of CJP groove welds in materials ≥ 5/16" at butt, T- and corner joints subject to transversely applied tension loading	⊠	С	N.5.5b, N5.5e		
	<ul> <li>For Risk Category II structures, conduct ultrasonic testing (UT) of CJP groove welds in materials ≥ 5/16" at butt, T- and corner joints subject to trans- versely applied tension loading</li> </ul>	⊠	Р	N.5.5b, N5.5f		
	j. Conduct magnetic particle testing (MT) or liquid penetrant testing (PT) at thermally cut surfaces of access holes for rolled section with tf > 2" and built- up shape with tw > 2"	⊠	С	N5.5c		
	k. Radiographic or ultrasonic inspection at joints subject to fatigue	⊠	С	N5.5d, Tbl A-3.1		
	Document acceptance / rejection of welded joints and members	☒	С	Tbl N5.4-3, N5.5g		

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services Cold-Formed Steel Deck

	Inspection Task	Task	Freq	Reference fo	or Criteria	Agent
		Req'd		SDI QA/QC	NCBC	
1.	Prior to deck placement, verify deck and deck accessories comply with the construction documents	⊠	С	Table (Tbl) 1.1		
2.	Inspection Tasks After Deck Placement					
	Verify the installation of deck & deck accessories complies with the construction documents	⊠	С	Tbl 1.2		
	b. Verify that deck materials' mill certifications comply with the construction documents	⊠	С	Tbl 1.2		
3.	Inspection Tasks Prior to Deck Welding					
	Collect welding procedure specification (WPS)	⋈	Р	Tbl 1.3		
	b. Collect manufacturer certifications for welding consumables	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.3		
	c. Verify material type and grade	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.3		
	d. Check welding equipment	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.3		
4.	Inspection Tasks During Deck Welding					
	a. Verify welder qualifications	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.4		
	b. Verify proper control and handling of welding consumables	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.4		
	c. Monitor environmental conditions	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.4		
	d. Monitor proper implementation of WPS	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.4		
5.	Inspection Tasks After Welding					
	Verify size and location of welds, including support, sidelap and perimeter welds	⊠	С	Tbl 1.5		
	b. Verify welds meet visual acceptance criteria	⊠	С	Tbl 1.5		
	c. Observe weld repair activities	⊠	С	Tbl 1.5		
6.	Inspection Tasks Prior to Mechanical Fastening					
	Verify manufacturer installation instructions available for mechanical fasteners	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.6		
	b. Proper tools available for fastener installation	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.6		
	c. Verify proper storage of mechanical fasteners	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.6		
7.	Inspection Tasks During Mechanical Fastening					
	a. Observe fastener spacing and position	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.7		
	b. Verify fasteners are installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions	⊠	Р	Tbl 1.7		
8.	Inspection Tasks After Mechanical Fastening					
	a. Check spacing, type and installation of support fasteners	⊠	С	Tbl 1.8		
	b. Check spacing, type, and installation of sidelap fasteners	⊠	С	Tbl 1.8		
	c. Check spacing, type, and installation of perimeter fasteners	⊠	С	Tbl 1.8		
	d. Verify repair activities	⊠	С	Tbl 1.8		
9.	Document acceptance or rejection of deck & deck accessories for all phases of construction	⊠	С	Tbls 1.1 thru 1.8		

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services Open-Web Steel Joists and Joist Girders

	Inspection Task	Task	Freq	Reference	for Criteria	Agent
		Req'd		Standard	NCBC	
1.	Fabricator Certification / Verification of Quality Control Procedures					
	a. Verify fabricator qualifications	$\boxtimes$	С		1704.2.5.1	
	b. Collect certificate of compliance from steel joist producer at completion of manufacture		С		1704.5, 2207.5	
2.	Observe bolted and welded joist end connections	⊠	Р	SJI-K 5.3, 5.6, SJI- LH/DLH 104.4, 104.7, SJI-JG 1004.4, 1004.6, SJI-CJ 104.4, 104.7	Table (Tbl) 1705.2.3	
3.	Verify size, spacing and connection of standard horizontal and diagonal bridging	⊠	Р	SJI-K 5.4, SJI- LH/DLH 104.5, SJI-JG 1004.5, 1004.9, SJI-CJ 104.5	Tbl 1705.2.3	
4.	Verify size, spacing and connection of bridging that differs from the SJI specifications listed by Part 2207.1 of the NCBC	⊠	Р		Tbl 1705.2.3	

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services Cold-Formed Steel Framing

Inspection Task		Freq	Reference for Criteria		Agent
	Req'd		Standard	NCBC	
Fabricator Certification / Verification of Quality     Control Procedures					
a. Verify fabricator qualifications	×	С		1704.2.5.1	
b. Collect certificates of compliance from the steel fabricator at completion of fabrication	×	С		1704.5	

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services Concrete Construction

	Inspection Task	Task	Freq	Reference	for Criteria	Agent
	•	Req'd	-	Standard <sub>a</sub>	NCBC	
1.	Inspect reinforcement and verify placement	×	Р	ACI Ch.20, 25.2, 25.3, 26.6.1- 26.6.3	1908.4	
2.	Reinforcing Bar Welding:			AWS D1.4		
	e. Verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A706 and collect reports	×	Р	ACI 26.6.4	1704.5	
	f. Inspect single-pass fillet welds ≤ 5/16"	$\boxtimes$	Р	ACI 26.6.4		
	<ul> <li>g. Inspect all welds other than single-pass fillet welds ≤ 5/16"</li> </ul>	$\boxtimes$	С	ACI 26.6.4		
3.	Concrete Anchors:					
	a. Inspect anchors cast in concrete	$\boxtimes$	Р	ACI 17.8.2		
	b. Inspect adhesive anchors installed in hard- ened concrete with horizontally or upwardly inclined orientations that resist sustained ten- sion loads	X	С	ACI 17.8.2.4		
	c. Inspect adhesive anchors installed in hard- ened concrete with orientations different from Item 3.b	×	Р	ACI 17.8.2		
	d. Inspect mechanical anchors installed in hard- ened concrete	×	Р	ACI 17.8.2		
4.	Collect mix designs and verify the correct mix used during installation	X	Р	ACI Ch19, 26.4.3, 26.4.4	1904.1, 1904.2, 1908.2, 1908.3	
5.	Prior to concrete placement, fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of the concrete	×	С	ASTM C172, ASTM C31, ACI 26.4, 26.12	1908.10	
6.	Inspect concrete placement for proper application techniques	$\boxtimes$	С	ACI 26.5	1908.6, 1908.7, 1908.8	
7.	Verify maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques	×	Р	ACI 26.5.3- 26.5.5	1908.9	
8.	Inspect formwork for shape, location and dimensions of the concrete member being formed	×	Р	ACI 26.11.1.2(b)		
9.	Collect mill test reports for ASTM A615 rebar used by SFRS special moment frames, special structural walls or coupling beams	×	С	ACI 20.2.2.5	1704.5	

a. References to "ACI" in this table are to the ACI 318-14.

### Schedule of Special Inspection Services **Masonry – Level B**

	Inspection Task		Freq	Reference	Agent	
		Req'd		TMS 402a	TMS 602a	
1.	Test & verify slump flow & visual stability index as delivered to site for self-consolidating grout		С	Table (Tbl) 3.1.2	Art. 1.5B.1.b.3	
2.	Test & verify f'm & f'AAC prior to construction	×	С	Tbl 3.1.2	Art. 1.4B	
3.	Verify compliance with the approved submittals	×	Р	Tbl 3.1.2	Art. 1.5	
4.	As masonry construction begins, verify that the following are in compliance:					
	a. Proportions of site-prepared mortar	×	Р		Art. 2.1, 2.6A	
	b. Construction of mortar joints	⊠	Р		Art. 3.3B	
	c. Grade and size of prestressing tendons and anchorages	×	Р		Art. 2.4B, 2.4H	
	d. Location of reinforcement, connectors and prestressing tendons and anchorages	×	Р		Art. 3.4, 3.6A	
	e. Prestressing technique	×	Р		Art. 3.6B	
	f. Properties of thin-bed mortar at AAC masonry	⊠	C/P <sub>a</sub>		Art. 2.1C	
5.	Prior to grouting, verify that the following comply:					
	a. Grout space is clean, and cleanouts provided when required	×	Р		Art. 3.2D, 3.2F	
	b. Grade, type & size of reinforcement & anchor bolts, & prestressing tendons & anchorage	⊠	Р	Sec. 6.1	Art. 2.4, 3.4	
	c. Placement of reinforcement, connectors, and prestressing tendons and anchorage	×	Р	Sec. 6.1, 6.2.1, 6.2.6, 6.2.7	Art.3.2E, 3.4, 3.6A	
	d. Proportions of site-prepared grout and pre- stressing grout for bonded tendons		Р		Art. 2.6B, 2.4G.1.b	
	e. Construction and size of mortar joints	⊠	Р		Art. 3.3B	
6.	Verify during construction:					
	a. Size and location of structural elements	⊠	Р		Art. 3.3F	
	b. Type, size, and location of anchors, including other details of anchorage of masonry to structural members, frames, or other construction	⊠	Р	Sec. 1.2.1(e), 6.1.4.3, 6.2.1		
	c. Welding of reinforcement	⊠	С	Sec. 8.1.6.7.2, 9.3.3.4(c), 11.3.3.4(b)		
	d. Preparation, construction, and protection of masonry during cold weather (temperature < 40°F) or hot weather (temperature > 90°F)		Р		Art. 1.8C, 1.8D	
	e. Application & measurement of prestress force		С		Art. 3.6B	
	f. Verify placement of grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons		С		Art. 3.5, 3.6C	
	g. Placement of AAC masonry units and con- struction of thin-bed mortar joints		C/P <sub>b</sub>		Art. 3.3B.9, 3.3F.1.b	

7.	Observe preparation of grout specimens, mortar	×	Р	Art.
	specimens, and or prisms			1.4.B.2.a.3,
	-p			1.4.B.2.b.3,
				1.4.B.2.c.3,
				1.4.B.3,
				1.4.B.4

a. References to "TMS402" in this table are to the TMS402/ACI530/ASCE5-13. References to "TMS602" are to TMS602/ACI530.1/ASCE6-13.
b. AAC masonry shall be continuously inspected for the first 5000-square feet and periodically inspected afterwards.

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services **Soils**

Inspection Task		Task	Freq	Reference for Criteria		Agents
		Req'd		Standard	NCBC	
1.	Verify materials below shallow foun- dations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity	×	Р		1705.6	
2.	Verify excavations extend to proper depth and have reached the correct soil material	⊠	Р		1705.6	
3.	Perform classification and testing of compacted fill materials	⊠	Р		1705.6	
4.	Verify that materials used, densities, lift thickness and procedures used during placement and compaction of compacted fill are in accordance with the approved soils report and the construction documents	⊠	С		1705.6	
5.	Prior to placement of compacted fill, verify that the subgrade has been prepared in accordance with the approved soils report and the construction documents	×	Р		1705.6	

# Schedule of Special Inspection Services Fire-resistant Penetrations and Joints a

Inspection Task		Task	Freq	Reference for Criteria		Agent
		Req'd		Standard	NCBC	
1.	Inspect through-penetration firestop systems at fire walls, fire barriers, smoke barriers and fire partition walls in accordance with ASTM E2174	×	Р		1705.17.1, 714.3.1.2	
2.	Inspect penetration firestop systems at penetrations through membranes that are part of a horizontal assembly in accordance with ASTM E2174	×	Р		1705.17.1, 714.4.2	
3.	Inspect fire-resistant joint systems in accordance with ASTM 2393	×	Р		1705.17.2, 715.3, 715.4	

a. The inspection of fire-resistant penetrations and joints applies only to high-rise buildings or buildings assigned to Risk Category III or IV.

# FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS - STRUCTURAL

Project:	North Topsa	il Beach Fire Station #2			
Location:	North Topsa	il Beach, NC 28460			
Owner:	Alice Derian	ı			
Owner's Ad	dress:	aderian@northtopsailbe	achnc.gov		
Architect of	Record:	Ernest W. Olds, Architect	t		
Structural E	ngineer of Red	cord: Adam L. Sisk, PE			
Comments:					
Respectfully	submitted,				
Signature		Date		Licensed Professional Se	eal

# FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

AGENT'S FINAL REPORT

Project:	North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2
Agent:	
Special Ins	pector:
designated	of my information, knowledge and belief, the Special Inspections or testing required for this project, and for this Agent in the <i>Statement of Special Inspections</i> submitted for permit, have been performed and all discrepancies have been reported and resolved other than the following:
Comments	:
(Attach cor	ntinuation sheets if required to complete the description of corrections).
Interim rep final report	oorts submitted prior to this final report form a basis for and are to be considered an integral part of this i.
Respectfull	ly submitted,
Agent of th	ne Special Inspector
	Licensed Professional Seal
Signature	Date

# FABRICATOR'S CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

Each approved fabricator that is exempt from Special Inspection of shop fabrication and implementation procedures per section 1704.2 of the International Building Code must submit a *Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance* at the completion of fabrication.

Project:	North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2
Fabricator's	Name:
Address:	
Certification	or Approval Agency:
Certification	Number:
Date of Last	Audit or Approval:
Description	of structural members and assemblies that have been fabricated:
I hereby cert documents.	tify that items described above were fabricated in strict accordance with the approved construction
Signature	Date
Title	
Attach copie manual.	es of fabricator's certification or building code evaluation service report and fabricator's quality control

# CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Each contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a system or component designated in the Quality Assurance Plan must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

Project: North Topsail Beach Fire Station #2
Contractor's Name:
Address:
License No.:
Description of designated building systems and components included in the Statement of Responsibility:
Contractor's Acknowledgment of Special Requirements
I hereby acknowledge that I have received, read, and understand the Quality Assurance Plan and Special Inspectio program.
I hereby acknowledge that control will be exercised to obtain conformance with the construction documents approved by the Building Official.
Signature Date

# **Contractor's Provisions for Quality Control**

Procedures for exercising control within the contractor's organization, the method and frequency of reporting and the distribution of reports is attached to this Statement.

Identification and qualifications of the person(s) exercising such control and their position(s) in the organization are attached to this Statement.

#### SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
- 2. See civil drawings for specifications regarding asphalt and concrete paving.

#### 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.
  - 1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.

- 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
- 3. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
- E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
  - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
  - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
  - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
  - 4. Waste handling procedures.
  - 5. Other dust-control measures.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- C. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

## 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
  - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
  - 4. Coffee machine and supplies.
  - 5. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  - 6. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures".

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

## 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- D. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- E. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
  - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- F. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
  - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

- H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.
  - 1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
    - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine in each field office.
  - 2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
    - e. Architect's office.
    - f. Engineers' offices.
    - g. Owner's office.
    - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
  - 3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
- I. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications.

### 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and non-tracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
  - 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.

- 2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Section 312300 "Excavation."
- 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proof-rolling, compacting, and testing.
- 4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Section 321126 "Bituminous Concrete Paving."
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  - 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  - 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  - 3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."

### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing."
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- K. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

## 3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
  - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
  - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
  - 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  - 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  - 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  - 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  - 5. Do not install material that is wet.
  - 6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  - 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
  - 1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  - 2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

# 3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.

- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

## SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
- 2. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.

- 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
- 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
  - a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
  - 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

## 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

## B. Delivery and Handling:

- 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
- 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
- 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
- 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

### C. Storage:

- 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
- 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
- 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.

- 4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
- 5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
- 6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
- 7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
  - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.

6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

### B. Product Selection Procedures:

- 1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
- 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

### 3. Products:

- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.

### 4. Manufacturers:

- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
- 5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
  - 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

### 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
  - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  - 5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

#### SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 6. Progress cleaning.
  - 7. Starting and adjusting.
  - 8. Protection of installed construction.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
- 2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
- 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- D. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.

E. Final Property Survey: Submit 2 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1. Description of the Work.
  - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

#### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
  - 1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.

#### 3.5 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.

- 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
- 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
- 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final

paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.

- 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
- 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- G. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

## 3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

## 3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components as follows.
  - 1. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
  - 2. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
  - 3. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

## 3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

### SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Disposing of nonhazardous construction waste.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.
- 2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal off-site of construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: Experienced firm, with a record of successful waste management coordination of projects with similar requirements.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
  - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
  - 1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  - 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

## 3.2 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

## END OF SECTION 017419

#### SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
- 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
- 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

## 1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
  - 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
  - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.

- 10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  - 1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

## 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
  - 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Town of North Topsail Beach payment procedures, as defined the contract for construction.
  - 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  - 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  - 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  - 1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

# 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
  - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order.
  - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.

- c. Name of Architect.
- d. Name of Contractor.
- e. Page number.
- 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
  - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

### 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
  - 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
    - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - 1. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
    - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
    - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
      - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.

- p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
- q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
  - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
  - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
  - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
  - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

#### SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.

- Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
- b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- 2. One paper copy. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return one copy.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
  - Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

# 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
  - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  - 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  - 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  - 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  - 1. Type of emergency.

- 2. Emergency instructions.
- 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  - 1. Fire.
  - 2. Flood.
  - 3. Gas leak.
  - 4. Water leak.
  - 5. Power failure.
  - 6. Water outage.
  - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Instructions on stopping.
  - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

### 2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  - 3. Operating standards.
  - 4. Operating procedures.
  - 5. Operating logs.
  - 6. Wiring diagrams.
  - 7. Control diagrams.
  - 8. Piped system diagrams.
  - 9. Precautions against improper use.
  - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
  - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  - 4. Equipment function.

- 5. Operating characteristics.
- 6. Limiting conditions.
- 7. Performance curves.
- 8. Engineering data and tests.
- 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Startup procedures.
  - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
  - 5. Instructions on stopping.
  - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.

- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## 2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
  - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.

- 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
- 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

#### SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
- 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
- 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
  - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
      - 2) Submit record digital data files and one set(s) of plots.
      - 3) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.

# b. Final Submittal:

- 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and three set(s) of prints.
- 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- c. Final Submittal:

- 1) Submit record digital data files and three set(s) of record digital data file plots.
- 2) Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - k. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - 1. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - m. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.

- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
- 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
  - 1. Format: DWG, Version 2022, Microsoft Windows operating system, or annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  - 2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  - 3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  - 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
  - 1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  - 2. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  - 3. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

### 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

#### 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
  - 1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

#### SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.
- B. Unit Price for Instruction Time: Length of instruction time will be measured by actual time spent performing demonstration and training in required location. No payment will be made for time spent assembling educational materials, setting up, or cleaning up. See requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
  - 2. Any manufacturer-produced videos must be reviewed as a group with operational personnel and the Contractor in case questions arise. Do not simply turn into the owner.
- B. Qualification Data: For instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

# 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:

- a. Name of Project.
- b. Name and address of videographer.
- c. Name of Architect.
- d. Name of Construction Manager.
- e. Name of Contractor.
- f. Date of video recording.
- 2. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
- 3. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- B. Pre-instruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

# 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

### 1.7 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.

- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
    - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
    - d. Product maintenance manuals.
    - e. Project Record Documents.
    - f. Identification systems.
    - g. Warranties and bonds.
    - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  - 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Startup procedures.
    - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    - d. Regulation and control procedures.
    - e. Control sequences.
    - f. Safety procedures.
    - g. Instructions on stopping.
    - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
    - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
    - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
    - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
    - 1. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.

- 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
- 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

### 1.8 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

### 1.9 INSTRUCTION

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.

- 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Construction Manager, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- D. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

## 1.10 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full HD mode.
  - 1. Submit video recordings on CD-ROM or thumb drive.
  - 2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to Project Manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
  - 3. File Names: Utilize file names based on name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
  - 4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the equipment demonstration and training recording that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project Manual table of contents:
    - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
    - b. Business address.
    - c. Business phone number.
    - d. Point of contact.
    - e. Email address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
  - 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
    - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
    - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
    - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.

- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
  - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.
- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.
- G. Pre-produced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (not used)

END OF SECTION 017900

### SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

# PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
  - 1. Footings.
  - 2. Foundation walls.
  - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
  - 4. Suspended slabs.

#### B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 31 for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
- 2. Division 32 for concrete pavement and walks.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
- E. Samples: For waterstops and vapor retarder.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
  - 4. Curing compounds.
  - 5. Bonding agents.
  - 6. Adhesives.
  - 7. Vapor retarders.
  - 8. Semirigid joint filler.
  - 9. Joint-filler strips.
  - 10. Repair materials.
- D. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
  - 1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- E. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, "Structural Welding Code Reinforcing Steel."

- E. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 and Section 7, "Lightweight Concrete."
  - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- F. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
    - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
    - b. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician Grade II.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete subcontractor.
    - e. Special concrete finish subcontractor.
  - 2. Review testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.
  - 3. Review floor finishes to be installed and coordinate with curing methods to be used.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### 2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- B. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- C. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

## 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, plain, fabricated from asdrawn steel wire into flat sheets.

## 2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

#### 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II. Supplement with the following:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

### 2.5 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- C. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; CATEXOL CN-CI
    - b. BASF Construction Chemicals Building Systems; Rheocrete CNI
    - c. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; ARRMATECT, EUCON BCN, or EUCON CIA
    - d. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI
    - e. Sika Corporation; Sika CNI
- D. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Polyolefin macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm) long.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Tuf-Strand SF.
    - b. FORTA Corporation; FORTA FERRO.
    - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Strux 90/40.
    - d. Nycon, Inc.; XL.
    - e. Propex Concrete Systems Corp.; Fibermesh 650.
    - f. Sika Corporation; Sika Fiber MS.

### 2.6 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; MiraSTOP.
    - b. CETCO; Volclay Waterstop-RX.
    - c. Concrete Sealants Inc.; Conseal CS-231.
    - d. Greenstreak; Swellstop.
    - e. Henry Company, Sealants Division; Hydro-Flex.
    - f. JP Specialties, Inc.; Earth Shield Type 20.

## 2.7 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape. Maximum perm rating of 0.02.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15
    - b. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Florprufe 120
    - c. Insulation Solutions, Inc.; Viper VaporCheck II
    - d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Perminator 15 mil
    - e. Raven Industries Inc.; Vapor Block 15
    - f. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn 15 mil Green
    - g. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil Class A
  - 2. Provide manufacturer's compatible sealer system for penetrations.
- B. Granular Fill: Provide one of the following:
  - a. Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
  - b. Clean sands with less than 3 percent fines. Materials to be verified by a qualified Geotechnical Engineer.
- C. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8-inch sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.

### 2.8 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals Building Systems; Confilm
    - b. ChemMasters; SprayFilm
    - c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm
    - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74)
    - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar
    - f. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON
    - g. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE
    - h. Sika Corporation; SikaFilm
    - i. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid
    - j. Unitex; PRO-FILM
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB
    - b. BASF Construction Chemicals Building Systems; Kure-N-Seal WB
    - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20
    - d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Cure and Seal WB
    - e. Cresset Chemical Company; Crete-Trete 309-VOC Cure & Seal
    - f. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-18)
    - g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Aqua Cure VOX; Clearseal WB 150
    - h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB
    - i. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20
    - j. Symons by Dayton Superior; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E

#### 2.9 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

### 2.10 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

- 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

## 2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
  - 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
  - 4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

### 2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  - 2. Slump Limit: 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
- B. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

- 1. Minimum Compressive Strength typical interior slab: 3000 psi at 28 days.
- 2. Minimum Compressive Strength typical exterior slab: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
- 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- 4. Air Content: For exterior broom finished concrete only; 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- 5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
- C. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  - 2. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 3. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - 4. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 4.0 lb/cu. yd.

### 2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

# 2.14 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- B. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
- C. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- D. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- E. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

- F. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- G. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- H. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- I. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- J. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- K. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

### 3.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
  - 2. Seal around all penetrations with manufacturer's recommended system.

### 3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
  - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.

- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  - 3. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  - 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.

- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
  - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## 3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
  - 1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
  - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated to receive trowel finish.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
  - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
  - 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
    - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.

- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
  - 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

## 3.9 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with inplace construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
    - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
    - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

### 3.11 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.12 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and

loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

# 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

# B. Inspections:

- 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
- 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
- 3. Headed bolts and studs.
- 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
- 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
- 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
- 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Testing Frequency: Samples for strength tests of each class of concrete placed each day shall be taken not less than once a day, nor less than once for each 150 cu. yd. (114 cu. m) of concrete, nor less than once for each 5,000 sq. ft. of surface area for slabs or walls.
  - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - 5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - 6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - 7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

- 8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- 9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- 10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
- 11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

END OF SECTION 033000

### SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Concrete masonry units.
- 2. Mortar and grout.
- 3. Steel reinforcing bars.
- 4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
- 5. Ties and anchors.
- 6. Embedded flashing.
- 7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

### B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

1. Steel lintels in unit masonry.

# C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 044313.16 "Adhered Stone Masonry" for exterior wall cladding.
- 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for sheet metal flashing installed in masonry joints.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

### 1.4 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
  - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
  - 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

UNIT MASONRY 042000 - 1

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
  - 1. Pigmented mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
  - 2. Weep holes and cavity vents.
  - 3. Accessories embedded in masonry.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
  - 1. Submittal is for information only. Receipt of list does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
  - 1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include data on material properties.
    - b. For masonry units, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
  - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
  - 3. Mortar admixtures.
  - 4. Pre-blended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 6. Reinforcing bars.
  - 7. Joint reinforcement.
  - 8. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- C. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.
  - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- D. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- E. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

UNIT MASONRY 042000 - 2

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup as shown on Drawings.
    - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
    - b. Include metal studs, sheathing, sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment air barrier, veneer anchors, flashing, cavity drainage material, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
  - 2. Clean exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner as indicated.
  - 3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
  - 4. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
    - a. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained, and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver pre-blended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.

- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

# 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
  - 1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

# 2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.

### 2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  - 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Standards: ASTM C 90.
  - 1. Density Classification: Normal weight.
  - 2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
  - 3. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.

### 2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - 1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: Not permitted.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979/C 979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- G. Colored Cement Products: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime or masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
  - 1. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.

- 2. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
- 3. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
- H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
  - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- I. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- J. Cold-Weather Admixture: Non-chloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- K. Water: Potable.

### 2.6 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.

### 2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
  - 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
  - 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 4. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

### 2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual", Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and as follows:
  - 1. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge where indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
  - 2. Fabricate through-wall flashing with sealant stop unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by bending metal back on itself 3/4 inch at exterior face of wall and down into joint 1/4 inch to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.

- 3. Fabricate metal drip edges and sealant stops for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam sheds water.
- 4. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
- 5. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch and down into joint 1/4 inch to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
- 6. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel to shapes indicated.
- 7. Solder metal items at corners.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
      - 2) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
      - 3) Fiberweb, Clark Hammerbeam Corp.
      - 4) GCP Applied Technologies Inc. (formerly Grace Construction Products).
      - 5) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
      - 6) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 7) Polyguard Products, Inc.
      - 8) W. R. Meadows, Inc.
      - 9) Williams Products, Inc.
      - 10) Wire-Bond.
    - b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
- C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  - 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
  - 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge or flexible flashing with a metal drip edge.
  - 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use metal flashing or flexible flashing.
- D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

F. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: Stainless steel bars 1/8 inch by 1 inch.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Pre-molded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Cavity Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
      - 2) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
      - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 4) Wire-Bond.

### 2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.; a division of Sandell Construction Solutions.
    - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
    - c. PROSOCO, Inc.

## 2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.

- 2. Use portland cement-lime or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Pre-blended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a pre-blended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
  - 1. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product.
  - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of mortar cement by weight.
  - 3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
  - 4. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
    - a. Cast-stone trim units.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
  - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
  - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  - 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

### A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

- 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2-inch total.

### B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

### C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
- 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet masonry if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- G. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.

- 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
- 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

# A. Lay CMU as follows:

- 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
- 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
- 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
- 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing and concrete and masonry backup with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Fasten anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to concrete and masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener
  - 2. Embed connector sections and continuous wire in masonry joints.
  - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and horizontally. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 24 inches, around perimeter.
- B. Provide not less than 1-3/4" of airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing or insulation.
  - 1. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

## 3.7 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for inplane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form expansion joints in masonry as follows:
  - 1. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
  - 2. Build flanges of factory-fabricated, expansion-joint units into masonry.
  - 3. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
  - 4. Form open joint full depth of masonry wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 1/2 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.
  - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

### 3.8 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for masonry-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

# 3.9 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 8 inches, and 1-1/2 inches into the inner wythe.

- 3. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches; with upper edge tucked under air barrier, lapping at least 4 inches.
- 4. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
- 5. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
- 6. Install metal drip edges and sealant stops with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
- 7. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
- 8. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
- E. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
  - 1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
  - 2. Space weeps 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
- F. Place pea gravel in cavities as soon as practical to a height equal to height of first course above top of flashing, but not less than 2 inches, to maintain drainage.
  - 1. Fill cavities full height by placing pea gravel in cavities as masonry is laid, so that at any point, masonry does not extend more than 24 inches above top of pea gravel.
- G. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections.

# 3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Clean masonry by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method.
  - 4. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.

### 3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
  - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312300 "Excavation."
  - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042000

### SECTION 044313.16 - ADHERED MANUFACTURED STONE VENEER

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

1. Portland cement based manufactured stone veneer adhered to sheathing.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.
- B. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. For each stone type indicated. Include at least three Samples in each set and show the full range of color and other visual characteristics in completed Work.
  - 2. For each color of mortar required. Label Samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

## B. Material Test Reports:

- 1. Stone Test Reports: For each stone variety proposed for use on Project, by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with required physical properties, other than abrasion resistance, according to referenced ASTM standards. Base reports on testing done within previous three years.
- 2. Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Test Report: From sealant manufacturer, indicating that sealants will not stain or damage stone. Include interpretation of test results and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced stonemasons and stone fitters.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockups for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 60 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup construction and accessories.
    - a. Include stone coping at top of mockup.
    - b. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.

- c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit stone masonry above half of flashing).
- d. Include sheathing, weather barrier, and flashing in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
- 2. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
- 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

# 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained, and contamination avoided.
- C. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, in a dry location, or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

# 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining stone masonry face.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter, using coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace stone masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Advise installers of other work about specific requirements for placement of flashing and similar items to be built into stone masonry.

### 1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty coverage against defects in materials when installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain stone, from a single manufacturer with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of uniform quality for each cementitious component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED STONE

- A. Veneer Unit properties: Precast veneer units consisting of portland cement, lightweight aggregates, and mineral oxide pigments.
  - 1. Compressive Strength: ASTM C 192 and ASTM C 39, 5 sample average: greater than 1,800 psi.
  - 2. Shear Bond: ASTM C 482: 50 psi, minimum.
  - 3. Freeze-Thaw Test: ASTM C 67: Less than 3 percent weight loss and no disintegration.
  - 4. Thermal Resistance: ASTM C 177: 0.473 at 1.387 inches thick
  - 5. Weight per square foot: 2018 IBC, ASTM C1670, 15 pounds, saturated.
- B. Match Architect's samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.

## 2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Cement: Portland cement complying with ASTM C 1329.
- B. Lime: ASTM C 207.
- C. Sand: ASTM C 144, natural or manufactured sand.
- D. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, mineral oxide pigments.
- E. Water: Potable.

F. Pre-Packaged Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4.

### 2.4 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch thick.
  - 2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  - 3. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge where indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
- B. Flexible Flashing: For flashing unexposed to the exterior, use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated, polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.
  - 2. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy as follows:
    - a. Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch thick, with a 0.015-inch-thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive.
    - b. Self-Adhesive Sheet with Drip Edge: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch thick, with a 0.015-inch-thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive. Where flashing extends to masonry face, rubberized-asphalt coating is held back approximately 1-1/2 inches from edge.
    - c. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
  - 3. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D4637/D4637M, 0.040 inch thick.
- C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  - 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond wall face, use metal flashing.
  - 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge or flexible flashing with a metal drip edge.
  - 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use metal flashing or flexible flashing.
- D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flexible Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.
- B. Bonding Agent: Exterior integral bonding agent meeting ASTM C 932.
- C. Water Repellent: Water based silane or siloxane masonry water repellent.
- D. Weather Barrier: See Section 072726 Fluid Applied Membrane Waterproofing.

# 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate stone units in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated. Shape beds to fit supports.
- C. Gage backs of stones for adhered veneer if more than 81 sq. in. in area.
- D. Finish exposed stone faces and edges to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.

## 2.7 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Standard Installation Grouted Joints:
  - 1. Mix mortar in accordance with ASTM C 270,
  - 2. Polymer modified mortar complying with ANSI A118.4
  - 3. Add color pigment in grout joint mortar in accordance with pigment manufacturer's instructions not to exceed 10% by weight of cement.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates upon which work will be installed.
- B. Coordinate with responsible entity to perform corrective work on unsatisfactory substrates.
- C. Commencement of work by installer is acceptance of substrate.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Protect adjacent work from contact with mortar.
- B. Surface Preparation: Prepare substrate in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions for the type of substrate being covered.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and clean stone in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions for Standard Installation Grouted Joint installation as specified above.
- B. Apply repellent in accordance with repellent manufacturer's application instructions.

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Manufacturer's Field Service Representative shall make two periodic site visits review of on-going installation process but is not responsible for any errors or omissions that are not observed or are previously completed.

## 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective coverings from adjacent work.
- B. Cleaning Veneer Units:
  - 1. Wash with soft bristle brush and water/granulated detergent solution.
  - 2. Rinse immediately with clean water
- C. Removing Efflorescence:
  - 1. Allow veneer to dry thoroughly.
  - 2. Scrub with soft bristle brush and clean water.
  - 3. Rinse immediately with clean water; allow to dry.
  - 4. If efflorescence is still visible, contact manufacturer for assistance.

**END OF SECTION 044313.16** 

### SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Structural steel.
- 2. Grout.

### B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
- 2. Section 053100 "Steel Decking".
- 3. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel fabrications not defined as structural steel.
- 4. Section 055113 "Metal Pan Stairs."
- 5. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for surface-preparation and priming requirements.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

## 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
  - 2. Use LRFD; data are given at factored-load level.
- B. Construction: Steel Braced Frames

# 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Include embedment drawings.

- 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
- 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts.
- 5. Identify demand critical welds.
- 6. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
  - 1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
  - 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, fabricator, professional engineer and testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  - 2. Shop primers.
  - 3. Nonshrink grout.
- F. Source quality-control reports.

# 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
  - Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8.
     FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. AISC 303.
  - 2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.

- 3. AISC 360.
- 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

### 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Channels and Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Weight Class: Standard unless noted otherwise.
  - 2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.
- G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

## 2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
- C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
  - 1. Configuration: Straight.
  - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
  - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - 5. Finish: Plain.
- E. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - 4. Finish: Plain.
- F. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
  - 2. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - 3. Finish: Plain.

### 2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

## 2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
  - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
  - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
  - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
- B. The Fabricator shall be a designated AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD or the Fabricator at their expense shall engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports, this expense shall be added to the Non-Certified Fabricator's bid.
  - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- E. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
  - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
  - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
  - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
  - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

### 2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
  - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
  - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  - 3. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

## 2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  - 2. Galvanize all building columns, lintels and shelf angles.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

# 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Base Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate, where indicated.
  - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be

in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

- 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
- 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - 2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

END OF SECTION 051200

### SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING

### PART 1 GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. K-series steel joists.
- 2. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- 3. K-series steel joist substitutes.
- 4. LH- and DLH-series long-span steel joists.
- 5. Joist girders.
- 6. Joist accessories.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. SJI's "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.

# B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
- 2. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
- 3. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and professional engineer.
- B. Manufacturer certificates.
- C. Mill Certificates: For each type of bolt.
- D. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify field-welding procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
  - 1. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.
  - 2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live-load deflections no greater than the following:
  - 3. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
- B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

## 2.2 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
  - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- D. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

- E. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications.".
- F. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

### 2.3 LONG-SPAN STEEL JOISTS

- B. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements as follows:
  - 1. Joist Type: LH-series steel joists].
  - 2. End Arrangement: Underslung.
  - 3. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- D. Camber long-span steel joists according to SJI's "Specifications".

## 1.2 JOIST GIRDERS

- A. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements as follows:
  - 1. End Arrangement: Underslung.
  - 2. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel.
- B. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.
- C. Camber joist girders [according to SJI's "Specifications".

## 2.3 PRIMERS

A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

### 2.4 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Fabricate steel bearing plates from ASTM A 36/A 36M steel with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint.
- C. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- D. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- F. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.

## 2.5 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
- B. Apply one coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
- E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with Research Council on Structural Connection's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Visually inspect bolted connections.
- D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Perform additional testing to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

## 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
  - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 3.
  - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as primer used on adjacent surfaces.

END OF SECTION 052100

### SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof deck.
- 2. Non-Composite floor deck.
- 3. Composite floor deck.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight and lightweight structural concrete fill over steel deck.
- 2. Division 051200 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
- 3. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
  - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

STEEL DECKING 053100 - 1

E. Field quality-control reports.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel."

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- C. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

### 2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. <u>Manufacturers</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
  - 2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
  - 3. CMC Joist & Deck.
  - 4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
  - 5. Cordeck.
  - 6. DACS, Inc.
  - 7. Epic Metals Corporation.
  - 8. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.

STEEL DECKING 053100 - 2

- 9. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
- 10. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
- 11. Roof Deck, Inc.
- 12. Valley Joist; Subsidiary of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
- 13. Verco Manufacturing Co.
- 14. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.
- B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G90 (Z275) zinc coating.
  - 2. Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib.
  - 3. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
  - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0358 inches.
  - 5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
  - 6. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

#### 2.3 NON-COMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
  - 2. Canam United States: Canam Group Inc.
  - 3. CMC Joist & Deck.
  - 4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
  - 5. Cordeck.
  - 6. DACS, Inc.
  - 7. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
  - 8. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
  - 9. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
  - 10. Roof Deck, Inc.
  - 11. Valley Joist; Subsidiary of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
  - 12. Verco Manufacturing Co.
  - 13. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.
- B. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) zinc coating.
  - 2. Profile Depth: 15/16 inch (24 mm).
  - 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm).
  - 4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
  - 5. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

## 2.4 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
  - 2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
  - 3. CMC Joist & Deck.
  - 4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
  - 5. Cordeck.
  - 6. DACS, Inc.
  - 7. Epic Metals Corporation.
  - 8. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
  - 9. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
  - 10. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
  - 11. Roof Deck, Inc.
  - 12. Verco Manufacturing Co.
  - 13. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.
- B. Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G90 (Z275) zinc coating.
  - 2. Profile Depth: 2 inches (51 mm).
  - 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0358 inch (1.06 mm).
  - 4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven stainless steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, stainless steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile indicated.

- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.
- I. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- (76-mm-) wide flanges and level recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- J. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to light gauge roof trusses or rafters with self-tapping TEK stainless steel screws as noted on plan.
- B. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel beams and steel bar joists with powder actuated fasteners as noted on plan.
- C. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 36 inches (914 mm), or as noted on plans and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, stainless steel screws.
- D. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum or butted at Contractor's option.
- E. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart with at least one fastener at each corner.
  - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and mechanically fasten.
- F. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
  - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

## 3.4 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by welding a shear connector through the deck or by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm), nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches (305 mm) apart, but not more than 18 inches (457 mm) apart or as indicated on plans or brace sections.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches (914 mm), and as follows:

- 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped or butted at Contractor's option.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install piercing hanger tabs at 14 inches (355 mm) apart in both directions, within 9 inches (228 mm) of walls at ends, and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from walls at sides unless otherwise indicated.

# 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

#### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 053100

#### SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
- 2. Soffit framing.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
- 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Design Loads: As indicated on structural drawings.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - a. Exterior Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height.
    - b. Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
    - c. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
  - 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
  - 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - a. Upward and downward movement of 3/4 inch (19 mm) at non-load bearing walls only.

- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing General Provisions."
  - 1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Header Design."
  - 2. Design exterior wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Steel sheet.
  - 2. Expansion anchors.
  - 3. Power-actuated anchors.
  - 4. Mechanical fasteners.
  - 5. Vertical deflection clips.
  - 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
  - 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- D. Research Reports: For non-standard cold-formed steel framing, from ICC-ES.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed

for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel."
- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing General Provisions."
  - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Truss Design."
  - 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Header Design."
- H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. <u>Manufacturers</u>: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. <u>AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc.</u>
  - 2. California Expanded Metal Products Company.
  - 3. ClarkWestern Building Systems, Inc.
  - 4. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
  - 5. Craco Mfg., Inc.
  - 6. Custom Stud Inc.
  - 7. Design Shapes in Steel.
  - 8. <u>Dietrich Metal Framing</u>; a Worthington Industries Company.
  - 9. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
  - 10. <u>MarinoWARE</u>.

- 11. Nuconsteel; a Nucor Company.
- 12. Olmar Supply, Inc.
- 13. Quail Run Building Materials, Inc.
- 14. SCAFCO Corporation.
- 15. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
- 16. State Building Products, Inc.
- 17. Steel Construction Systems.
- 18. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
- 19. Steel Structural Systems.
- 20. Steeler, Inc.
- 21. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
- 22. Telling Industries, LLC.
- 23. United Metal Products, Inc.
- 24. <u>United Steel Manufacturing</u>.
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
  - 1. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
  - 2. Headers: AISI S212.
  - 3. Lateral Design: AISI S213.
- C. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.
- D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

# 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G60 (Z180).
- C. Steel Sheet for Connection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G60 (Z180).

## 2.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.87 mm).
  - 2. Flange Width: As required by design.
  - 3. Section Properties: As required by design.
- B. Steel Track: Sigma Track by The Steel Network or approved equal, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 16 gauge minimum or match steel studs.
  - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/2 inches.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.87 mm).
  - 2. Flange Width: As required by design..
  - 3. Section Properties: As required by design.
- D. Steel Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.87 mm).
  - 2. Top Flange Width: As required by design.
  - 3. Section Properties: As required by design.

# 2.4 SOFFIT FRAMING

- A. Exterior Soffit Frame: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm).
  - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm), minimum.
  - 3. Section Properties: As required by design.

## 2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
  - 1. Supplementary framing.
  - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
  - 3. Web stiffeners.
  - 4. Anchor clips.

- 5. End clips.
- 6. Foundation clips.
- 7. Gusset plates.
- 8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
- 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
- 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
- 11. Backer plates.

## 2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, stainless steel, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
  - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

#### 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.

E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
  - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
  - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
  - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
  - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
  - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

## 3.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
  - 1. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/16 inch between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches (406 mm).
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
  - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
  - 2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
  - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced 48 inches (1220 mm). Fasten at each stud intersection.
  - 1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches (150 mm) deep.

- 2. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
- 3. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

# 3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

#### SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.
- 2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
- 3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
- 4. Metal ladders.
- 5. Bollards.

### B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
- 2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
- 3. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing."

# 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
- 2. Railing brackets.
- 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Metal ladders.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings and ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

# 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings and ladders.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

- 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
  - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
  - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
  - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- 2. Infill of Guards:
  - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
  - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.
- C. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

## 2.3 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
  - 1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
- B. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

## 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
  - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
  - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.

- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
  - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches long at not more than 8 inches o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Non-shrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, non-staining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

### 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated, coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

# 2.7 FABRICATION, RAILINGS

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:
  - 1. By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
- J. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.

- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- O. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless-steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- P. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from stainless-steel tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
  - 1. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
- Q. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

#### 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

### 2.9 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  - 1. Space siderails 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - 3. Rungs: 1-inch-diameter steel bars.
  - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.

- 6. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
- 7. Prime exterior ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

#### 2.10 BOLLARDS

A. Fabricate from 4.5-inch diameter steel pipe, ASTM 500B grade steel, primed finish.

#### 2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

#### 2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 3. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
  - 1. Coat, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint, concealed surfaces of aluminum that are in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- F. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

#### 3.2 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

# 3.3 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material.
- D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - 1. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
- E. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

### 3.4 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends.
- C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.

### 3.5 INSTALLING BOLLARDS

- A. Direct embed to provide 48-inch bollard height. Fill pipe with concrete see section 033000.
- B. Install one-piece HDPE plastic bollard cover, color: yellow, wall thickness: 0.25 inches minimum.

# 3.6 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

## 3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

# 3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055000

#### SECTION 055113 - METAL PAN STAIRS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
- 2. Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
- 3. Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill for stair treads and platforms.
- 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe and tube railings.

### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal pan stairs and the following:
  - 1. Prefilled metal-pan-stair treads.
  - 2. Abrasive nosings.
  - 3. Paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of nosing.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For stairs and railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel."

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs and railings.
- B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - 1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft.
  - 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in.
  - 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
  - 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.
- C. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 2. Infill of Guards:
    - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
    - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- D. Seismic Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Component Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.

### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
- E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30, unless another grade is required by design loads.
- F. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 33, unless another grade is required by design loads.

# 2.3 ABRASIVE NOSINGS

- A. Extruded Units: Aluminum units with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - 1. Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
- B. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
- C. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.
- D. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units set into concrete.

#### 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Provide mechanically deposited or hot-dip, zinc-coated anchor bolts for stairs indicated to be galvanized.

- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Non-shrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, non-staining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- F. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
- H. Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, 6 by 6 inches, W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
  - 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- F. Weld connections to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed.
- G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

### 2.7 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," Commercial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Stair Framing:
  - 1. Fabricate stringers of steel plates or channels.
    - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel stringers.
  - 2. Construct platforms of steel plate or channel headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements.
  - 3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers.
  - 4. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 0.067 inch.
  - 1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold-rolled steel sheet.
  - 2. Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet, where indicated.
  - 3. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subtreads where they are concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.
  - 4. Attach risers and subtreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.

- 5. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
- 6. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
- 7. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subtreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.

### 2.8 STAIR RAILINGS

A. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications".

### 2.9 FINISHES

- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- B. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - 2. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 INSTALLING METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

- F. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
- G. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.
- H. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

### 3.2 INSTALLING RAILINGS

- A. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
  - 1. Anchor posts to steel by welding to steel supporting members.
  - 2. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements.
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055113

#### SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - 2. Plywood backing panels.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

ROUGH CARPENTRY 061000 - 1

- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - 3. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 4. Powder-actuated fasteners.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

ROUGH CARPENTRY 061000 - 2

- 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
- 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  - Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Cants.
  - 5. Furring.

ROUGH CARPENTRY 061000 - 3

- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content of any species.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

#### 2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

#### 2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

# 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.

ROUGH CARPENTRY 061000 - 4

- B. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

# 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- C. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- D. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
- F. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
  - 1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable.
  - 2. Use finishing nails, unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

ROUGH CARPENTRY 061000 - 5

# 3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

## 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

ROUGH CARPENTRY 061000 - 6

#### SECTION 064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.
- 2. Plastic-laminate-faced shelving.
- 3. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets unless concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets and concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
- 2. Section 123661 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops".

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
  - 1. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for installed in architectural plastic-laminate cabinets.

# C. Samples for Verification:

- 1. Plastic laminates for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.
- 2. Lumber and Panel Products with Transparent Finish: Not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
- 3. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.

# 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful inservice performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If cabinets must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that cabinets can be supported and installed as indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

A. Type of Construction: Frameless.

- B. Cabinet, Door, and Drawer Front Interface Style: Flush overlay.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Abet Laminati, Inc.
    - b. Formica Corporation.
    - c. Lamin-Art, Inc.
    - d. Panolam Industries International, Inc.
    - e. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
- D. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
  - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
  - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
  - 4. Edges: Grade VGS.
- E. Materials for Semi-exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
    - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge banding, 0.12-inch thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
    - b. For semi-exposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
  - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermoset decorative panels with PVC or polyester edge banding.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- F. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.
- G. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to sub-front with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- H. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Match Architect's sample.

# 2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED SHELVING

- A. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Abet Laminati, Inc.
    - b. Formica Corporation.
    - c. Lamin-Art, Inc.
    - d. Panolam Industries International, Inc.
    - e. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
- B. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
  - 2. Edges: Grade VGS.

#### 2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Recycled Content of Medium-Density Fiberboard and Particleboard: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
  - 2. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 4. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
  - 5. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 6. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for test methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

### 2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.

- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
  - 1. Grade 1 and Grade 2: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel with polymer rollers.
  - 2. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
  - 3. For drawers not more than 3 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 2.
  - 4. For drawers more than 3 inches high but not more than 6 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1.
  - 5. For drawers more than 6 inches high or more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
  - 6. For computer keyboard shelves, provide Grade 1.
  - 7. For trash bins not more than 20 inches high and 16 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
- G. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- H. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
  - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- I. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive.

#### 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams

to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing cabinets, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- B. Install cabinets level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- C. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish.
- D. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
  - 1. Use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- E. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - 2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.
- F. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.
  - 1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

# 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Clean cabinets on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116

#### SECTION 066500 - EXTERIOR SYNTHETIC TRIM

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior trim composed of PVC materials.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, and blocking required for installing trim and concealed within other construction before trim installation.
  - 2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for finishing synthetic trim.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including installation instructions.
- B. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Synthetic trim for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.

# 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful inservice performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

# 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage and Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store and handle materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Keep materials in protective covering until installation.
  - 3. Store materials in clean, dry area.
  - 4. Store exterior synthetic trim on flat, level surface.

- 5. Keep exterior synthetic trim covered and free of dirt and debris.
- 6. Protect materials and finish during storage, handling, and installation to prevent damage.

# 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace trim that fails due to defects in manufacturing within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, deterioration, delamination, and excessive swelling from moisture.
- B. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products manufactured by Versatex Building Products., 400 Steel Street, Aliquippa, PA 15001. (724) 857-1111, <a href="www.versatex.com">www.versatex.com</a>, or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers.
  - 1. AZEK Company.
  - 2. Certain Teed.
  - 3. Royal Building Products.

# 2.2 EXTERIOR SYNTHETIC TRIM

# A. Composition:

- 1. Free Foam Cellular PVC.
- 2. Post-Consumer Recycled Content: Minimum 10 percent, by weight

# B. Physical Properties:

- 1. Density, ASTM D 792: 055 gm/cm<sup>3</sup>.
- 2. Water Absorption, ASTM D 570: Less than 0.50 percent.

# C. Mechanical Properties:

- 1. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 638: 3582 psi.
- 2. Tensile Modulus, ASTM D638: 107,000 psi.
- 3. Flexural Strength, ASTM D 790: 5179 psi.
- 4. Flexural Modulus, ASTM D 790: 215,600 psi.
- 5. Modulus of Elasticity, ASTM D 638: 209,500 psi.
- 6. Elongation, ASTM D 638: 9.0 percent.
- 7. Nail Withdrawal, ASTM D 1761: 398 lbf/in.

# D. Thermal Properties:

- 1. Coefficient of Linear Expansion, ASTM D 696: 3.25 c 10<sup>-5</sup> in/in/degree F.
- 2. Flame Spread, ASTM E 84: 20.
- 3. Burning Rate: Failed to Ignite when tested in accordance with ASTM D 635.

- E. Trim Sizes: see Drawings.
- F. Finish: Smooth.
- G. Manufacturing Tolerances:
  - 1. Variation in component length: minus 0.00 / plus 1.00.
  - 2. Variation in component width: plus or minus 1/32 inch.
  - 3. Variation in component thickness: plus or minus 1/32 inch.
  - 4. Variation in component edge cut: plus or minus 2 degrees.
  - 5. Variation in Density plus or minus 0.02 grams per cubic centimeter

#### 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. Type: Power driven nails, Finish: Stainless steel; Size: 12 gauge.
- B. Nail Hole Filler: Cortex plug system by Fasten Master.
- C. Adhesives: PVC cement or cellular PVC adhesives including PVC Trim Welder, IPS Weld-On 705 (white), or Zevo PVC Trim adhesive.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive exterior synthetic trim.
- B. Notify Architect of conditions that would adversely affect installation or subsequent use.
- C. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install exterior synthetic trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the Drawings.

#### B. Cutting:

1. Simulated wood trim can be cut using standard woodworking saws. Conventional carbide-tipped blades designed for cutting wood are preferred. Avoid using fine-tooth metal-cutting blades.

# C. Drilling:

- 1. Simulated wood trim can be drilled using standard woodworking drill bits. Do not use drill bits made for rigid PVC.
- 2. Avoid frictional heat build-up.
- D. Milling and Moulding:

- 1. Simulated wood trim can be milled or moulded using standard milling or moulding machines found in millwork shops.
- 2. Rake angle 20 to 30 degrees. 25 degrees is recommended.
- 3. Cutting speed to be optimized with the number of knives and feed rate.

### E. Routing:

- 1. Simulated wood trim can be routed with standard routing tools and carbide tipped router bits.
- 2. Machinery that allows for multiple cutting speeds will allow you to optimize the process obtaining a smoother finished part.

# F. Edge Finishing:

1. Traditional sanding, grinding, or filing tools used for woodworking are preferred.

#### G. Nail Location:

- 1. For trimboard applications use two fasteners per framing member.
- 2. Use additional fasteners (3/4 inch preferred) for trimboard 8 inches and wider.
- 3. Install fasteners a maximum of 2 inches from the end of each board.

# H. Expansion and Contraction:

- 1. Simulated wood trim expands and contracts with changes in temperature. Properly fastening along the entire length is required to minimize expansion and contraction.
- 2. Allow 3/16-inch space per 18-foot run of trim for expansion and contraction.
- 3. Bond joints between pieces of simulated wood trim to eliminate separation.
- 4. Allow expansion and contraction space at the ends of long runs.

#### I. Cleaning:

- 1. Clean simulated wood trim with mild detergent and water.
- 2. Products with pumice, such as Soft Scrub, may be applied with a nylon brush.
- 3. For more stubborn stains use a mild household cleaner and degreaser like Clorox Cleanup, Clorox Outdoors, denatured alcohol, bleach, Mr. Clean Magic Eraser or Corte Clean with nylon brush.

# J. Painting:

- 1. Be sure surface to be painted is clean, dry, and free of dirt, lose or peeling paint, mildew, chalk, grease, and any other surface contaminants before paint application.
- 2. Finish nail holes with nail hole filler or a UV resistant acrylic caulk.

# 3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed exterior synthetic trim to ensure that, except for normal weathering, trim will be without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 066500

#### SECTION 071326 - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Blindside sheet waterproofing.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:
  - 1. 8-by-8-inch square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.

# 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Research Reports: For sheet waterproofing, showing compliance with stated performance requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

# 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to project site in original, factory-sealed, unopened containers bearing manufacturer's name and label intact and legible with following information.
  - 1. Name of material.
  - 2. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
  - 3. Material safety data sheet.

B. Store materials in protected and well-ventilated area. Protect from damage from sunlight, weather, excessive temperatures, and construction operations. Remove damaged material from the site and dispose of in accordance with local applicable regulations.

# 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply membrane when surface temperature is below or inclement weather conditions conflict with manufacturer's published requirements.
- B. Coordinate waterproofing work with other trades. The applicator shall have sole right of access to the specified areas for the time needed to complete the installation.
- C. Warn personnel against breathing vapors and contact of material with skin or eyes. Wear applicable protective clothing and respiratory protection gear.
- D. Keep flammable products away from spark or flame. Do not allow the use of spark producing equipment during application until all vapors have dissipated. Post "NO SMOKING" signs.
- E. Maintain work area in a neat and orderly condition, removing empty containers, rags, and rubbish daily from the site.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty:
  - 1. Waterproofing Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement waterproofing material for waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
    - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BLINDSIDE SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AVM Industries, Inc.
  - 2. CETCO is a subsidiary of Minerals Technologies Inc.
  - 3. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
  - 4. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
  - 5. Henry Company; a Carlisle company.
  - 6. Polyglass U.S.A., Inc.
  - 7. Polyguard Products, Inc.
  - 8. Soprema, Inc.
  - 9. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Basis of Design Product: CCW MiraDRI 860/861 Sheet Membrane Waterproofing as manufactured by Carlisle Coatings and Waterproofing Incorporated.

- C. Blindside Sheet Waterproofing: Self-adhesive membrane of not less than 60 mils thickness, consisting of 56 mils of rubberized asphalt membrane laminated to a 4-mil cross-laminated polyethylene film with the following physical properties:
  - 1. Thickness: 60 mils, ASTM D 3767
  - 2. Tensile Strength (Membrane): 325 psi, ASTM D 412
  - 3. Tensile Strength (Film): 5000 psi, ASTM D 882
  - 4. Elongation: 350% minimum, ASTM D 412
  - 5. Permeance: 0.05 Perm maximum, ASTM E 96
  - 6. Flexibility, 180° bend over 1 in. mandrel at -45°F: Unaffected, ASTM D 1970
  - 7. Crack Cycling at -25°F (100 cycles): Unaffected, ASTM C 836
  - 8. Peel Strength: 10.0 lb/in, ASTM D 903
  - 9. Lap Adhesion: 19.0 lb/in, ASTM D 1876
  - 10. Puncture Resistance: 60 lb (min), ASTM E 154
  - 11. Soil Burial 16 weeks: No Effect, GSA-PBS 07121
  - 12. Water Absorption: 0.1% by wt., ASTM D 570
  - 13. Hydrostatic Head: 230 ft., ASTM D 5385
- D. For application temperatures between 15°F and 60°F, use CCW 861-ULT Sheet Membrane and CCW-702, CCW-702LV, or CCW-715. For application temperatures above 40°F use CCW MiraDRI 860/861sheet membrane and CCW-702, CCW-702LV, CCW-702WB, CCW-715, CCW-AWP, or Cav-Grip.

#### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Surface Primer: Shall be CCW-702, CCW-702LV, CCW-715, CCW-702WB, CCW-AWP or Cav-Grip.
- B. Mastic: Shall be CCW-704 Mastic.
- C. Sealants: Shall be CCW-703 Vertical Grade Liquiseal Membrane, CCW-LM-800XL, CCW-201 two-component Polyurethane Sealant or approved sealant by CCW.
- D. Backer Rod: Shall be closed-cell polyethylene foam rod.
- E. Protection Course: Shall be CCW-Protection Board-H or HS, CCW-300HV for horizontal surfaces or CCW-Protection Board-V or CCW-200V for vertical surfaces.
- F. Drainage Composite: Shall be CCW MiraDRAIN as recommended by the manufacturer for each condition.
- G. Swellable Sealant: Shall be MiraSTOP SS for use in non-moving joints to create watertight concrete joints and as an adhesive for CCW MiraSTOP waterstop strips.
- H. Pre-formed Bentonite hydrophilic waterstop strip: Shall be CCW MiraSTOP BW for use in non-moving joints to create watertight concrete joints.
- I. Pre-formed non-Bentonite hydrophilic waterstop strip: Shall be CCW MiraSTOP NBW for use in non-moving joints to create watertight concrete joints.

- J. Injectable waterstop (grout tube): Shall be MiraSTOP IW for use as an injectable waterstop for use in non-moving joints to create watertight concrete joints.
- K. Chemical grout: Shall be MiraSTOP CG-F and for use with the MiraSTOP IW.
- L. Miscellaneous products: accessory products approved by Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Before any waterproofing work is started the waterproofing applicator shall thoroughly examine all surfaces for any deficiencies or unsatisfactory conditions detrimental to the proper completion of the work. Should any deficiencies exist, the architect, owner, or general contractor shall be notified in writing.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Refer to manufacturer's literature for requirements for preparation of substrates. Surfaces shall be structurally sound and free of voids, spalled areas, loose aggregate and sharp protrusions. Remove contaminants such as grease, oil and wax from exposed surfaces. Remove dust, dirt, loose stone and debris. Use repair materials and methods which are acceptable to manufacturer of sheet membrane waterproofing.

#### B. Cast-In-Place Concrete Substrates:

- 1. Do not proceed with installation until concrete has properly cured and dried (minimum 7 days for normal structural concrete and minimum 14 days for lightweight structural concrete).
- 2. Concrete shall be cured by water curing method. Any curing compounds must be of the pure sodium silicate type or clear resin-based materials without waxes, oils or pigments and be approved by the Carlisle representative.
- 3. Form release agents must not transfer to the concrete. Remove forms as soon as possible from below horizontal slabs to prevent entrapment of excess moisture. Excess moisture may lead to blistering of the membrane.
- 4. Concrete shall be sloped for proper drainage.
- 5. Voids, rock pockets and excessively rough surfaces shall be repaired with approved non-shrink grout or ground to match the unrepaired areas. Fill form tie rod holes with concrete and finish flush with surrounding surface.
- 6. Two-stage drains shall have a minimum 3 inch flange and be installed with the flange flush and level with the concrete surface.
- 7. Surfaces at cold joints shall be on the same plane. Grind irregular construction joints to suitable flush surface.
- C. Masonry Substrates: Apply CCW MiraDRI 860/861 waterproofing over concrete block with smooth trowel-cut mortar joints or rough surfaces prepared with a parge coat. Allow the parge coat to dry before priming and installing the CCW MiraDRI 860/861 waterproofing membrane.

# 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Refer to manufacturer's literature for recommendations on installation, including but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Apply primer/contact adhesive at rate recommended by manufacturer. Recoat areas which were not waterproofed the same day or if contaminated by dust. Mask and protect adjoining exposed finish surfaces to protect those surfaces from excessive application of primer.
  - 2. Do not install membrane until primer/contact adhesive is completely dry. Dry time will vary with weather conditions.
  - 3. Seal installation at the end of the day with troweled bead of CCW-LM-800XL or CCW-703V Liquiseal.
  - 4. Apply protection board and/or MiraDRAIN and other related materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.4 INTEGRITY TESTING

- A. Test is required for all expanded warranties beyond the standard material warranty of horizontal applications.
- B. The test can be done with Electronic Vector Mapping or flood testing. Flood testing requires 2" minimum head of water for a period of 24 hours minimum.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Vertical Application: Install CCW MiraDRAIN HC Drainage System as the first course of drainage composite immediately after membrane has been installed on vertical surfaces. Install CCW MiraDRAIN Drainage Composite (consult CCW for recommendation), CCW-Protection Board-V or CCW- 200V on remainder. Stop drainage composite 6" below final grade level.
- B. Horizontal Application: Install CCW MiraDRAIN Drainage Composite (consult CCW for recommendation) or CCW- Protection Board-H or HS or CCW 300HV immediately after flood testing on horizontal surfaces. If flood testing is delayed, install a temporary covering to protect the CCW MiraDRI 860/861membrane from damage by other trades.

# 3.6 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING

- A. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- C. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071326

#### SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Glass-fiber blanket.
- 2. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
- 3. Continuous insulation composite panels for exterior walls.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 075419 "Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing" for roof insulation.
- 2. Section 072726 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers" for air barriers used with composite panels.
- 3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

# 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, R-13 Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - d. Owens Corning.
- 2. See wall types and wall sections for locations.

### 2.2 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. See wall types and wall sections for locations.

#### 2.3 CONTINUOUS INSULATION COMPOSITE PANELS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS

- A. Board Insulation Bonded to Plywood: Panel composed of closed cell polyisocyanurate foam core bonded to a coated glass facer on one side and fire treated plywood on the other.
  - 1. Foam core: Grade 2 (20 psi).
  - 2. Fire Treated Plywood Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 3. Panel Size: 4 feet by 8 feet.
  - 4. Thickness / R Value: based on ASTM C 518 at 75 degrees F (23.9 degrees C)
    - a. Provide thickness indicated on the Drawings.
    - b. R-value: 7.5 minimum.
  - 5. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Hunter Panels, Xci Ply or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Insulfoam.
    - b. Isolofoam.
    - c. Laminators, Inc.

# 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: as approved by insulation manufacturer, and acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
- B. Air barrier: as approved by insulation manufacturer and specified in Section 072726 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers."

- C. Joint Sealants: as approved by insulation manufacturer and specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- D. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E84.
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:

- 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.
- 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

# 3.4 INSTALLATION OF COMPOSITE PANELS

- A. Fasten composite insulation to the structural base wall. Coordinate with the cladding or wall finish manufacturer for the attachment requirements over insulation panels. Contact manufacturer for guidance when determining fastening pattern.
- B. Install air barriers as specified in Section 072726.
- C. Composite Panels are not intended to be left exposed for extended periods of time. During the time between the installation of the panel and application of the exterior cladding it is recommended that the air barrier be installed as soon as possible.
- D. Protect panels from excess moisture and UV. All unfaced foam exposed directly to daylight can be taped with a compatible waterproof tape and the edges of the boards can be buttered with a compatible sealant.
- E. Install exterior cladding as recommended by the cladding manufacturer and as specified in other sections of this specification.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

#### SECTION 072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fluid-applied, vapor permeable, air barrier membranes.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for composite wall panels and wall joint-and-penetration treatments.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data; and tested physical and performance properties of products.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: See Section 042000 for information regarding the construction of mockups.

# 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

# 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air-barrier manufacturer.
  - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
  - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

# 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor-retarding air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

# 2.3 VAPOR-PERMEABLE MEMBRANE AIR-BARRIER (WATER RESISTIVE MEMBRANE)

- A. Fluid-Applied, Air and Vapor Barrier: single-component, moisture cure Silyl Terminated Polyether (STPE) water-resistive air barrier.
  - 1. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Henry Company Air-Bloc All Weather STPE® or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies Inc. (formerly Grace Construction Products).
    - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - d. Rubber Polymer Corporation, Inc.
    - e. W. R. Meadows, Inc.

#### 2. Physical and Performance Properties:

- a. Water Vapor Permeance (ASTM E96 Method B): 19 perms at 20 mils.
- b. Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies (ASTM E2357): Pass.
- c. Air Permeance (ASTM E2178): 0.003 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup>.
- d. Elongation (ASTM D412): 350%.
- e. Tensile Strength (ASTM D412): 100 psi.
- f. Minimum Application Temperature: 10 degrees F.
- g. Water Penetration Resistance Around Nails (ASTM D1970): Pass.
- h. Maximum VOC: 25 g/l method 24.

i. IBC Section 1402, vertical and lateral flame propagation: meets NFPA 285 Exception #2 Per ASTM E1354 and ASTM E84.

# 2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. General: Accessory materials recommended by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and compatible with primary air-barrier material.
- B. Liquid-applied flashing:
  - 1. Moisture-cure one component elastomeric liquid applied flashing using an STPE (Silyl-Terminated Polyether) polymer, having the following typical properties:
    - a. Basis of Design Product: Henry Air-Bloc LF® Liquid Applied Flashing
    - b. Color: Blue

# C. Self-Adhered flashing:

- 1. Vapor impermeable, self-adhered water resistive air and vapor barrier consisting of an SBS rubberized asphalt compound, integrally laminated to a blue engineered thermoplastic film, having the following typical properties:
  - a. Basis of Design Product: Henry Blueskin® SA Self-Adhered Water Resistive Air Barrier
  - b. Color: Blue

# D. Primers for Self-Adhered Flashing:

- 1. Polymer emulsion-based primer for self-adhered membranes, and having the following typical properties:
  - a. Basis of Design Product: Henry Aquatac<sup>TM</sup> Primer
  - b. Color: Aqua.
  - c. Water based: Maximum VOC: 50 g/l

### E. Sealants:

- 1. Moisture cure, medium modulus polymer modified sealing compound, having the following typical properties:
  - a. Basis of Design Product: Henry 925 BES Sealant
  - b. Complies with Fed. Spec. TT-S-00230C, Type II, Class A.
  - c. Complies with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35.

# F. Thru-Wall Flashing:

- 1. Vapor impermeable, self-adhered water resistive air and vapor barrier consisting of an SBS rubberized asphalt compound, integrally laminated to a yellow engineered thermoplastic film, having the following typical properties:
  - a. Basis of Design Product: Henry Blueskin TWF Self-Adhered Thru-Wall Flashing
  - b. Color: Yellow

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. It is the installing Subcontractor's responsibility to verify the substrate is in accordance with Air Barrier Manufacturer requirements and as specified in this Section prior to installation of air barrier. Commencement of the Work or any parts thereof, indicates installer acceptance of the substrate.
  - 1. Acceptable substrates include exterior-grade gypsum sheathing, plywood, OSB, precast or cast-in-place concrete, CMU, primed steel, aluminum mill finish, anodized aluminum, and galvanized metal.
  - 2. Verify surfaces are sound, clean and free of frost, oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants.
  - 3. Substrate must be continuous and secure.
  - 4. Sheathing fasteners must be installed into solid backing and set flush with sheathing.
  - 5. Masonry joints must be struck flush. Allow fresh CMU mortar joints to cure for a minimum of thirty-six (36) hours.
  - 6. Tie holes/voids in poured concrete to be flush and smooth shall be filled. Allow new concrete to cure a minimum of thirty-six (36) hours after forms are removed.
  - 7. Top and backside of substrate walls must be protected against bulk water during and after application of air barrier.
  - 8. Curing compounds must be resin based without oil, wax or pigments. Substrates must be free of form release agents.
- B. Notify contractor in writing of any conditions that are not acceptable.
- C. Do not apply air barrier assembly components until substrate and environmental conditions are in accordance with Air Barrier Manufacturer's published literature.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Verify surfaces are in accordance with the product specific technical data sheet and as stated in this specification.

### B. Protection:

1. Protect top and backside of substrate walls against bulk water during and after application of air barrier.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION

# A. Environmental Requirements:

- 1. Do not perform Work during rain or inclement weather.
- 2. Do not perform Work on frost covered or wet substrates; can be applied to damp surfaces.
- 3. Do not perform Work when ambient (air) and substrate temperatures are below 10 °F.
- B. Refer to Air Barrier Manufacturer detail drawings for installation procedures including, but not limited to, the following:

- 1. Changes in substrate
- 2. Control joints
- 3. Crack treatment
- 4. Inside corners
- 5. Outside corners
- 6. Penetrations
- 7. Rough openings
- 8. Sheathing Joints
- C. Moving Joints: Contact manufacturer.
- D. Contact manufacturer to coordinate transition of air barrier to adjacent areas including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Roofing
  - 2. Waterproofing
  - 3. Fastener penetrations
- E. Thru-Wall Flashing: Coordinate with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing".
- F. Primary Air Barrier
  - 1. Install air barrier assembly in accordance with Air Barrier Manufacturer product specific TDS, details, guide specification, and technical bulletins to create a monolithic air and watertight application without sags, runs or voids.
  - 2. Lap air barrier onto flashing 1 inch minimum.
  - 3. Application Rate:
    - a. Application rates and cured dry film thickness are approximate and may vary depending on texture and porosity of surface.
    - b. Wet film thickness (WFT): 20 mils
    - c. Dry film thickness (DFT): 20 mils

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Final Observation and Verification:
  - 1. General Contractor and Air Barrier Manufacturer to complete final observation of air barrier assembly as required by warranty.

# 3.5 CLEANING

- A. As the Work proceeds, and upon completion, promptly clean up and remove from the premises all rubbish and surplus materials resulting from the foregoing Work.
- B. Clean soiled surfaces, spatters, and damage to adjacent areas caused by Work of this Section.
- C. Check area to ensure cleanliness and remove debris, equipment, and excess material from the site.

**END OF SECTION 072726** 

#### SECTION 074213.53 - METAL SOFFIT PANELS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes metal soffit panels.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

# B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
- 2. Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Selection: For each type, color, texture, and pattern of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

# 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Exposure Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 3. Wind loads: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- B. Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Component Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Seismic Design Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. V-Groove-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Perforated panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced between panel edges; with a V-groove joint between panels.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "E-375" soffit manufactured by Englert, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. ATAS International, Inc.
    - b. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
    - d. Fabral.
    - e. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
    - f. McElroy Metal, Inc.
    - g. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  - 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with

ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

- a. Nominal Thickness: 0.022 inch or 24 gauge.
- b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
- c. Color and Pattern: Match Architect's selection as noted: Bone White.
- 3. Panel Coverage: 12 inches.4. Panel Height: 3/8 inches.

# 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant types recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
  - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weather-tight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
  - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

# 2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and

- structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

# 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strip-pable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

# C. Steel Panels and Accessories:

- 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

#### 3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
  - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
  - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
  - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  - 7. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

# B. Fasteners:

- 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.

- 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
- 3. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
- E. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- F. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
  - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling, and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.
  - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

# 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 074213.53** 

#### SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fiber-cement siding.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
  - 2. Section 072726 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers" for weather-resistive barriers.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. 12-inch-long-by-actual-width Sample of siding for each type, color, texture, and pattern required.

# 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of fiber-cement siding.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fiber-cement siding required, from ICC-ES.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of product, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups for fiber-cement siding including accessories.
    - a. Size: 48 inches long by 72 inches high.
    - b. Include outside corner on one end of mockup.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's 50-year warranty against manufactured defects in fiber cement panels.
- B. Provide manufacturer's 15-year warranty against manufactured defects in panel finish.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
- B. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Beaded Smooth lap siding, as manufactured by James Hardie Building Products, Inc., or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - 2. GAF.
  - 3. MaxiTile, Inc.
  - 4. Nichiha Fiber Cement.
  - 5. Norandex Building Materials Distribution, Inc.

## C. Basis of Design Products:

- 1. Hardie ® Plank Lap Siding
- 2. Hardie ® Panel Vertical Siding

# D. Characteristics – Lap Siding

- 1. Thickness: Not less than 0.30 inch.
- 2. Width: 8-1/4 inches.
- 3. Exposure: 7-inches.
- 4. Texture: Select Cedar Mill ®.
- 5. Finish: Factory pre-finished.
  - a. Color: Summer White.

# E. Characteristics – Vertical Siding with Battens

- 1. Thickness: Not less than 0.30 inch.
- 2. Width: 48 inches.
- 3. Texture: Smooth.
- 4. Finish: Factory pre-finished.
  - a. Color: Summer White.
- 5. Trim Boards: Smooth Batten Boards.
  - a. Thickness: 0.75 inch.
  - b. Width: 2-1/2 inch.
  - c. Spacing: 16 inches on center.
  - d. Color: Match siding.

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

#### A. Fasteners:

- 1. Use stainless steel fasteners.
- 2. See manufacturer's instructions for appropriate fasteners for construction method used.
- B. Flashing: Provide stainless-steel flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement siding and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install products in accordance with the latest installation guidelines of the manufacturer and all applicable building codes and other laws, rules, regulations and ordinances. Review all manufacturer installation, maintenance instructions, and other applicable documents before installation.

## B. Panel Cutting

- 1. Always cut fiber cement panels outside or in a well-ventilated area. Do not cut the products in an enclosed area.
- 2. Always wear safety glasses and NIOSH/OSHA approved respirator whenever cutting, drilling, sawing, sanding or abrading the products. Refer to manufacturer SDS for more information.
- 3. Use a dust-reducing circular saw with a diamond-tipped or carbide-tipped blade.
  - a. Shears (electric or pneumatic) or jig saw can be used for complicated cuttings, such as service openings, curves, radii and scrollwork.
- 4. Silica Dust Warning: Fiber cement products may contain some amounts of crystalline silica, a naturally occurring, potentially hazardous mineral when airborne in dust form. Consult product SDS or visit https://www.osha.gov/dsg/topics/silicacrystalline/.
- C. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

# 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

**END OF SECTION 074646** 

## SECTION 075419 - POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Adhered polyvinyl-chloride (PVC) roofing system.
- 2. Roof insulation.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
- 3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to work of this Section.

### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.

9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including:
  - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - 3. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roofing, fastening spacing, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing.
  - 4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Sheet roofing of color required.
  - 2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 1. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
- C. Product Test Reports: For components of roofing system, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

# 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, fasteners, roofing accessories, and other components of roofing system.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation, fasteners for roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or manufacturers approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.

- 2. Impact Resistance: Roofing system shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746 or ASTM D 4272.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the uplift pressures as indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Exposure Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- D. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI): Three-year-aged SRI not less than 64 or initial SRI not less than 82 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Energy Star Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

#### 2.3 PVC ROOFING

- A. PVC Sheet: ASTM D 4434/D 4434M, Type III, fabric reinforced.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
    - b. Cooley Engineered Membranes.
    - c. Custom Seal Roofing.
    - d. Duro-Last Roofing, Inc.
    - e. Flex Membrane International Corp.
    - f. GAF Materials Corporation.
    - g. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
    - h. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - i. Mule-Hide Products Co., Inc.
    - j. Versico Incorporated.
  - 2. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
  - 3. Exposed Face Color: White.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
  - 1. Adhesives and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard sheet flashing of same material, type, reinforcement, thickness, and color as PVC sheet.

- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- E. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, pre-punched.
- F. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roofing to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- G. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

#### 2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by PVC roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - c. Firestone Building Products.
    - d. Hunter Panels.
    - e. Rmax, Inc.

### 2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
  - 1. Full-spread spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
  - 2. Verify adhesives and sealants comply with the following limits for VOC content:
    - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.

- c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
- d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
- e. Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
- f. PVC Welding Compounds: 510 g/L.
- g. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
- h. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
- i. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
- j. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
- k. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- 3. <u>Verify adhesives and sealants comply</u> with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

#### 2.7 WALKWAYS

A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

### 3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast.

## 3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components, so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  - 1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- G. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - 1. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  - 2. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.5 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing and allow to relax before retaining.
  - 1. Install sheet according to ASTM D 5036.
- B. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roofing. Do not apply to splice area of roofing.
- E. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.

- F. Apply roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet.
  - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
  - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that do not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roofing in place with clamping ring.

### 3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings.

## 3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Flood Testing: Flood test each roofing area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing roofing and flashing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with water.
  - 1. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches with a minimum depth of 1 inch and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches. Maintain 2 inches of clearance from top of base flashing.
  - 2. Flood each area for 24 hours.
  - 3. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.

- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
- D. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

### 3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075419

#### SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Manufactured through-wall flashing with receiver.
- 2. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
- 3. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
- 4. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 5. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
- 6. Formed equipment support flashing.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.

### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
  - 3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
  - 4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
  - 5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
  - 6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.

- 7. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
- 8. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
- 9. Include details of special conditions.
- 10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.
  - 1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
  - 2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  - 3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
  - 4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.7 OUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

- 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
  - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
  - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
  - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
- 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Structural Performance: Manufacture and install roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following:
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Exposure Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 3. Wind Loads: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- D. Seismic Performance: Sheet metal flashing and trim shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Component Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Seismic Design Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces Insert temperature change.

#### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.

- 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Design is to match adjacent materials.
- 3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil
- C. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
  - 1. Non-patinated Exposed Finish: Mill.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Finish: 2D (dull, cold rolled).

## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Laminated or reinforced, woven polyethylene or polypropylene, synthetic roofing underlayment; bitumen free; slip resistant; suitable for high temperatures over 220 deg F and complying with physical requirements of ASTM D 226/D 226M for Type I and Type II felts.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Atlas Roofing Corporation; Summit.
    - b. Engineered Coated Products; Nova-Seal II.
    - c. Kirsch Building Products, LLC; Sharkskin Comp.
    - d. SDP Advanced Polymer Products Inc; Palisade.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Carlisle Residential, a division of Carlisle Construction Materials; WIP 300HT.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.-Conn.; Grace Ice and Water Shield HT.

- c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
- d. Kirsch Building Products, LLC; Sharkskin Ultra SA.
- e. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
- f. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Specialty Tile & Metal Underlayment.
- g. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Deck Guard HT.
- h. Protecto Wrap Company; Protecto Jiffy Seal Ice & Water Guard HT.
- i. SDP Advanced Polymer Products Inc; Palisade SA-HT.
- 2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg For higher.
- 3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg For lower.
- D. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

## C. Solder:

- 1. For Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead with maximum lead content of 0.2 percent.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inchwide and 1/8 inch thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

#### 2.5 MANUFACTURED SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Through-Wall, Ribbed, Sheet Metal Flashing: Manufacture through-wall sheet metal flashing for embedment in masonry, with ribs at 3-inchintervals along length of flashing to provide integral mortar bond.
  - 1. Copper: 10-oz. minimum for fully concealed flashing; 16 oz. elsewhere.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Cheney Flashing Company; Cheney Flashing Dovetail.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; STF Sawtooth Flashing.
      - 3) Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.; Keystone Three-Way Interlocking Thruwall Flashing.
      - 4) Sandell Manufacturing; Pre-Formed Metal Flashing.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Cheney Flashing Company; Cheney Flashing Dovetail.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; STF Sawtooth Flashing.
      - 3) Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.; Keystone Three-Way Interlocking Thruwall Flashing.
      - 4) Sandell Manufacturing; Pre-Formed Metal Flashing.
- B. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - b. Fry Reglet Corporation.
    - c. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - d. Hickman, W. P. Company.
    - e. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.

- f. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
- g. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
- h. Sandell Manufacturing.
- 2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.019 inch thick.
- 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
- 4. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
- 5. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating.

## 2.6 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Products Company.
    - b. ATAS International, Inc.
    - c. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Castle Metal Products.
    - e. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - f. Drexel Metals.
    - g. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - h. Merchant & Evans Inc.
    - i. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - j. Perimeter Systems; a division of SAF.
    - k. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  - 2. Formed Aluminum Sheet Coping Caps: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 3. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  - 4. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on or face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, fabricated from coping-cap material.
    - a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.
    - b. Face-Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized-steel sheet.

### 2.7 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. Architectural Products Company.
- 2. ATAS International, Inc.
- 3. Berger Building Products, Inc.
- 4. Castle Metal Products.
- 5. Cheney Flashing Company.
- 6. CopperCraft by FABRAL.
- 7. Drexel Metals.
- 8. Hickman Company, W. P.
- 9. Merchant & Evans Inc.
- 10. Metal-Era, Inc.
- 11. Perimeter Systems; a division of SAF.
- B. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
  - 1. Aluminum Sheet: 0.040 inch thick.
  - 2. Gutter Profile: Style A according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  - 3. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  - 4. Gutter Supports: Manufacturer's standard supports as selected by Architect with finish matching the gutters.
  - 5. Gutter Accessories: Continuous snap-in plastic leaf guard.
- C. Downspouts: Plain rectangular complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
- D. Aluminum Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.

### 2.8 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.
- G. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

### 2.9 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long, but not exceeding 12-foot- long sections. Furnish with 6-inch- wide, joint cover plates.
  - 1. Joint Style: Overlapped, 4 inches wide.
  - 2. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
    - a. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
- C. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.

# 2.10 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch- long, but not exceeding 12-foot- long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch- high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft.

2. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, according to manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  - 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.

- 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
- 5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
- 6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressuretreated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
  - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
  - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.

- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
- C. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- D. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches. Secure in waterproof manner by means of interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

## 3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

### 3.6 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

## 3.7 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

#### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering. Clean off excess sealants.

- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- C. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200

#### SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof curbs.
- 2. Equipment supports.
- 3. Preformed flashing sleeves.

### B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
- 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for manufactured, shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.
  - Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and fieldassembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For roof curbs and equipment supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof-mounted items to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
  - 2. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind restraints. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
  - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
  - 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
  - 4. Required clearances.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design roof curbs and equipment supports to comply with wind

performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

C. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.

### 2.2 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

- A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches high, with removable metal hood and perforated metal collar.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - b. Menzies Metal Products.
    - c. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - 2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
  - 3. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - b. Menzies Metal Products.
    - c. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - d. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - 2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
  - 3. Height: 13 inches 19 inches Insert dimension.
  - 4. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

### 2.3 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.
  - 1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Underlayment:

- 1. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
- 2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil-thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
- 3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
- 4. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
- 5. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
  - b. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - c. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- G. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- H. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586/D 4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

### 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REOUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- E. Roof-Hatch Installation:
  - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
  - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  - 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.

- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

#### SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
- 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
- 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

# 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

### 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

### 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
    - b. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.

- c. Construction Solutions.
- d. Grabber Construction Products.
- e. Hilti, Inc.
- f. HOLDRITE.
- g. NUCO Inc.
- h. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
- i. RectorSeal.
- j. Specified Technologies, Inc.
- k. STC Architectural Products.
- 1. Tremco, Inc.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  - 2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
  - 3. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.30-inch wg.
  - 1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at and no more than 50-cfm cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  - 1. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
  - 2. Substrate primers.
  - 3. Collars.
  - 4. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- B. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- C. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- D. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

#### 2.4 MIXING

A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
  - 1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

## 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out

and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 078413

#### SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Silicone joint sealants.
- 2. Urethane joint sealants.
- 3. Latex joint sealants.
- 4. Acoustical joint sealants.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.

- 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use NT.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
  - b. GE Advanced Materials Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
  - c. Pecora Corporation; 890.
  - d. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C995.
  - e. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 1.
- B. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; 898.

### 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP1.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 900.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
    - d. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex 1a.
    - e. Tremco Incorporated; Dymonic.
- B. Immersible, Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP1.
    - b. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex 1a.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 116.

### 2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 600.

- c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
- d. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

# 2.5 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
    - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

#### 2.6 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or another type, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

### 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

# 3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

## 3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Perimeter joints at frames of doors, windows and storefronts.
  - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Class 100/50.
  - 3. Urethane Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, Class 25.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior concrete slabs.
  - 2. Urethane Joint Sealant: Immersible, single-component, nonsag, Class 25.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings.
    - c. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and storefronts.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Latex.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Sealant Location:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
  - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Class.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Translucent.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Location: Acoustical joints where indicated.

**END OF SECTION 079200** 

### SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes interior and exterior hollow-metal doors and frames both glazed and flush.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 087111 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
  - 2. Division 09 Sections "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting" for field painting hollow metal doors and frames.
  - 3. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door type.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 7. Details of accessories.
  - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
  - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For each type of hollow-metal door and frame assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Amweld International, LLC.
  - 2. Apex Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 4. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 5. Gensteel Doors Inc.
  - 6. Hollow Metal Inc.
  - 7. North American Door Corp.
  - 8. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
  - 9. Premier Products, Inc.
  - 10. Republic Doors and Frames.
  - 11. Security Metal Products Corp.
  - 12. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

- B. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 3 for basic protection.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet of grade.

### 2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2.
  - 1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
  - 2. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
    - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
    - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 4. Exposed Finish: Prime.
- C. Safety Glass: Provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201, for Category II materials, unless those of Category I are expressly indicated and permitted.

## 2.4 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct exterior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2.
  - 1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
  - 2. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches
    - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, with minimum A40 coating. Provide embossed panels where indicated on Drawings.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.

e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.

### 3. Frames:

- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
- b. Construction: Full profile welded.
- 4. Exposed Finish: Prime.
- C. Safety Glass: Provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201, for Category II materials, unless those of Category I are expressly indicated and permitted.

### 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

#### A. Jamb Anchors:

- 1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
- 2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
- 3. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, and as follows:
  - 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
  - 2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

### 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.

- For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smokedeveloped indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

#### 2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

#### B. Hollow-Metal Doors:

- 1. Steel-Stiffened Door Cores: Provide minimum thickness 0.026-inch, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than 6 inches apart. Spot weld to face sheets no more than 5 inches o.c. Fill spaces between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
- 2. Fire Door Cores: As required to provide fire-protection ratings indicated.
- 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Provide beveled or square edges at manufacturer's discretion.
- 4. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with inverted closures of same material as face sheets.
- 5. Bottom Edge Closures: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
- 6. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
- C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.

- 1. Sidelight Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
- 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
- 4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
- 5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
  - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
    - 1) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
    - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
  - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
    - 1) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
    - 2) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
  - c. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.
- 6. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
  - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
  - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
  - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  - 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.
- F. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with mitered hairline joints.
  - 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.

- 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
- 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
- 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
- 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.

# 2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
    - a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.

- b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
- d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
- e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
- f. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
- g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
- 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
  - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
- 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
- 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
- 5. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
  - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors:
    - a. Between Door and Frame Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
    - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch to 1/4 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
    - c. At Bottom of Door: 3/4 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
    - d. Between Door Face and Stop: 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
  - 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors and gaskets according to NFPA 105.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

#### SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
- 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
- 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
- 2. Section 087111 "Door Hardware" for installation of hardware.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
  - 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
  - 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 3. Requirements for veneer matching.
  - 4. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
  - 5. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.

# C. Samples for Verification:

- 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish.
- 2. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches, with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
  - a. Provide Samples for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
  - b. Provide Samples for each color, texture, and pattern of plastic laminate required.
  - c. Finish veneer-faced door Samples with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.

FLUSH WOOD DOORS 081416 - 1

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
    - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
  - 2. Ampco.
  - 3. Chappell Door Co.
  - 4. Eggers Industries.
  - 5. General Veneer Manufacturing Co.
  - 6. Graham Wood Doors; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 7. Haley Brothers, Inc.
  - 8. Ipik Door Company.
  - 9. Lambton Doors.
  - 10. Marlite.

- 11. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
- 12. Mohawk Doors; a Masonite company.
- 13. Oshkosh Door Company.
- 14. Poncraft Door Company.
- 15. Vancouver Door Company.
- 16. VT Industries, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

# 2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  - Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
  - 2. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - 3. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

### B. Particleboard-Core Doors:

1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2, made with binder containing no ureaformaldehyde.

### 2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
  - 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
  - 2. Species: Select maple.
  - 3. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
  - 4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
  - 5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
  - 6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening.
  - 7. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridordoor faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
  - 8. Core: Particleboard.
  - 9. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering.
  - 10. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.

### 2.4 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.

FLUSH WOOD DOORS

- 2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.
- B. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed for paint finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.

### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
  - 1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
- B. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

### 2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  - 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
  - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Effect: Filled finish.
  - 5. Sheen: Semigloss.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for firerated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
  - 1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
    - b. 2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
  - 2. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

#### SECTION 081743 - FIBERGLASS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

1. Pultruded fiberglass doors installed in pultruded fiberglass frames.

# B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 081113 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data.

1. Submit manufacturer's product data sheets, catalog pages illustrating the products, description of materials, components, fabrication, finishes, installation instructions, and applicable test reports.

# B. Shop Drawings.

1. Submit manufacturer's shop drawings, including elevations, sections, and details indicating dimensions, tolerances, materials, fabrication, doors, panels, framing, hardware schedule, and finish.

## C. Samples.

- 1. Submit manufacturer's door sample composed of door face sheet, core, framing and finish.
- 2. Submit manufacturer's sample of standard colors for door face and frame.

# D. Testing and Evaluation Reports.

1. Submit testing reports and evaluations provided by manufacturer conducted by and accredited independent testing agency certifying doors and frames comply with specified performance requirements.

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

### A. Operation and Maintenance Manual.

- 1. Submit manufacturer's maintenance and cleaning instructions for doors and frames, including maintenance and operating instructions for hardware.
- 2. Warranty Documentation.
  - a. Submit manufacturer's standard warranty.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications:
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened, containers and packaging.
  - B. Labels clearly identifying opening, door mark, and manufacturer.
  - C. Store materials in a clean, dry area, indoors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - D. Protect materials and finish from damage during handling and installation.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warrant doors, frames, and factory installed hardware against failure in materials and workmanship, including excessive deflection, faulty operation, defects in hardware installation, and deterioration of finish or construction in excess of normal weathering.
- B. Standard Period:
  - 1. Ten years starting on date of shipment.
- C. Limited Lifetime:
  - 1. Covers failure of corner joinery, core deterioration, and delamination or bubbling of door skin and corrosion of all-fiberglass products while the door is in its specified application in its original installation.
- D. Finish: Painted frames: 3 years.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPOSITE FIBERGLASS DOOR

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ceco Doors.
  - 2. Cline Doors.
  - 3. Corrim Company.
  - 4. Oshkosh Dorr Co.
  - 5. Special-Lite, Inc.

#### 2.2 DOORS

- A. Basis of Design Model: Special-Lite, AF-100.
- B. Construction.

- 1. Door Thickness: 1-3/4".
- 2. Pultruded as one monolithic panel with integral stiles.
- 3. Stiles: Seamless 9/16" thick solid FRP.
- 4. Top Rail: 6" pultruded tube profile designed to fit flush and be chemically welded inside of door cavity.
- 5. Bottom Rail: Standard pultruded inverted U channel designed to fit flush and be chemically welded inside the door which allows doors to be field trimmed.
- 6. Core: Polyurethane foam; Minimum 6 pcf density.
- 7. Face Sheet: Smooth, pultruded FRP integral to construction of door. Door to be pultruded as one monolithic panel.
- 8. Hardware: Pre-machine doors in accordance with templates from specified hardware manufacturers. Surface mounted closures will be reinforced for but not prepped or installed at factory.
- 9. Reinforcements: No metallic reinforcements will be allowed.

#### 2.3 FRAMES

A. Basis of Design Model: Special-Lite, AF-150.

#### B. Frames:

- 1. Jamb Depth: 5-3/4".
- 2. Perimeter Frame Members: 3/16" thick pultruded fiberglass open throat with return.
- 3. Integral Door Stops: 5/8" x 2-1/4".
- 4. Frame Assembly: Chemically welded.
- 5. Frame Member to Member Connections: Corners mitered with 2" x 2" x 1/4" pultruded FRP angle reinforcement with interlocking pultruded FRP brackets.
- 6. Reinforcements: 1/4" thick pultruded FRP chemically welded to frame at all hinge, strike, and closer locations.
- 7. Hardware:
  - a. Pre-machine and reinforce frame members for hardware in accordance with manufacturer's standards and door hardware schedule.
  - b. Surface mounted closures will be reinforced for but not prepped or installed at factory.

#### 8. Anchors:

a. Masonry: Concealed existing masonry anchor or fiberglass masonry "T" anchor.

## 2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pultruded Fiberglass Skin.
  - 1. Surface Burning, ASTM-E84: Flame Spread  $\leq$  25, Smoke Developed  $\leq$  450.
  - 2. Tensile Strength, ASTM-D638: 12,300 psi.
  - 3. Percent Fiberglass: Minimum 50%.
- B. Pultruded Structural Shapes.
  - 1. Tensile Strength, ASTM-D638: Minimum 30,000 psi.

- 2. Compressive Strength, ASTM-D695: Minimum 30,000 psi.
- 3. Flexural Strength, ASTM-D790: Minimum 30,000 psi.
- 4. Flexural Modulus, ASTM-D790: Minimum 1.6 x 106 psi.
- 5. Short Beam Shear, ASTM-D2344: Minimum 4,500 psi.
- 6. Impact, Notched, ASTM-D256: Minimum 25 ft-lb/in.
- 7. Thermal Expansion, ASTM-D696: Maximum 8.0 x 10-6 psi.
- 8. Surface Burning, ASTM-E84: Flame Spread  $\leq$  25, Smoke Developed  $\leq$  450.

# C. Stiles & Rails.

1. Fastener Withdrawal, ASTM-D1761: 894 lbs.

#### D. Door Core.

- 1. Surface Burning, ASTM-E84: Flame Spread  $\leq$  25, Smoke Developed  $\leq$  450.
- 2. Density, ASTM-D1622: 6.0 pcf.
- 3. Compressive Strength, ASTM-D1621: 139 psi.
- 4. Compressive Modulus = 4,527 psi.
- 5. Shear Strength, ASTM-C273: 84 psi.
- 6. Shear Modulus, ASTM-C273: 788 psi.
- 7. Tensile Modulus, ASTM-D1623: 136 psi.
- 8. Flexural Strength, ASTM-C203: 204 psi.
- 9. Flexural Modulus, ASTM-C203: 4,767 psi.
- 10. K-Factor, ASTM-C518: 0.16 Btu·in/hr·ft<sup>2</sup>.°F.
- 11. R-Factor, ASTM-C518: 6.25 hr·ft<sup>2</sup>.°F/Btu.
- 12. Water Absorption, ASTM-C272: < 0.7% by volume.

## E. Door Panel.

1. Thermal Transmittance, ASTM-C1363-11: U-Factor = 0.13 Btu/hr·ft²·°F, R-Value = 7.42 hr·ft²·°F/Btu.

## F. Door and Frame Assembly.

- 1. Physical Endurance, AAMA 920-11: 2,000,000 Cycles, No Damage.
- 2. Thermal Transmittance, NFRC 100: U-Factor = 0.23 Btu/hr·ft².°F.
- 3. Air Leakage, NFRC 400, ASTM-E283: 0.06 cfm/sq ft @ 6.24 psf.
- 4. STC and OITC, ASTM-E90: STC = 30, OITC = 28.
- 5. Structural Performance, ASTM E-330: ± 180 psf design pressure, pass.
- 6. Impact and Cycle Test, ASTM-E1886: 9 lbs. missile @ 50 fps, minimum 2 impacts, no rips, tears, or penetrations; ± 100 psf design pressure, pass.
- 7. Forced Entry, AAMA 1304: 300lb Pull Test, pass.
- 8. Blast Test, ASTM-F1642: 6.9 psi @ 48 psi-msec, no hazard, GSA performance condition 2.

### 2.5 MATERIALS

### A. Fiberglass.

1. Face Sheet: fiberglass reinforced polyester (FRP).

## B. Fasteners.

- 1. All exposed fasteners will have a finish to match material being fastened.
- 2. Use Type 410 stainless steel or other non-corrosive metal.
- 3. Must be compatible with items being fastened.

#### 2.6 FABRICATION

# A. Factory Assembly.

- 1. Door and frame components from the same manufacturer.
- 2. Required size for door and frame units, shall be as indicated on the drawings.
- 3. Complete cutting, fitting, forming, drilling, and grinding of metal before assembly.
- 4. All cut edges to be free of burs.
- 5. Electrical arc welding of doors or frames is not acceptable.
- 6. Maintain continuity of line and accurate relation of planes and angles.
- 7. Secure attachments and support at mechanical joints with hairline fit at contact surfaces.

## B. Shop Fabrication.

- 1. All shop fabrication to be completed in accordance with manufactures process work instructions.
- 2. Quality control to be performed before leaving each department.

## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Door: Two-component acrylic urethane enamel gloss topcoat.
  - a. Color, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Frame: Two-component acrylic urethane enamel gloss topcoat.
  - a. Color, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

# 2.8 ACCESSORIES

### A. Hardware.

- 1. Pre-machine doors in accordance with templates from specified hardware manufactures and hardware schedule.
- 2. See Section 087111 "Door Hardware" for scheduled products.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive doors.
- B. Notify architect of conditions that would adversely affect installation or subsequent use.
- C. Do no proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Ensure openings to receive frames are plumb, level, square, and in tolerance.

## 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install doors plumb, level, square, true to line, and without warp or rack.
- C. Anchor frames securely in place.
- D. Separate aluminum from other metal surfaces with bituminous coatings or other means approved by architect.
- E. Set thresholds in bed of mastic and back seal.
- F. Install exterior doors to be weathertight in closed position.
- G. Repair minor damages to finish in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as approved by architect.
- H. Remove and replace damaged components that cannot be successfully repaired as determined by architect.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacture's Field Services.
  - 1. Manufacturer's representative shall provide technical assistance and guidance for installation of doors.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust doors, hinges, and locksets for smooth operation without binding.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean doors promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that would damage finish.

#### 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed doors to ensure that, except for normal weathering, doors will be without damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion.

### END OF SECTION 081743

#### SECTION 083513 - FOLDING DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Section includes electrically operated folding fire apparatus bay doors.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles and finishes for folding doors.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and installation details.
  - 2. Include clearances required for operation, operating and control mechanisms, and accessory items.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.
  - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories to verify color and finish selection.

# 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each fire-rated folding door, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fire-rated folding doors, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For folding doors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer of folding doors.

# 1.8 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Loads

- 1. Doors shall be designed to withstand external or internal horizontal wind loads as indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- 2. The maximum allowable deflection shall not exceed 1/120 of the span.
- 3. Fiber stresses in main members shall be limited to 27,000 pounds per square inch.
- B. Steel frames shall be designed in accordance with the AISC "Steel Construction Manual".
- C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Provide glazed sectional doors that pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests according to ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3.
  - 1. Large Missile Test: For overhead coiling doors located within 30 feet of grade.
- D. Seismic Performance: Sectional doors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Component Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Seismic Design Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Tube: ASTM A513 and ASTM A500/A500M
- B. Steel Sheets: Steel sheets of commercial quality, complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M hotrolled steel sheet.
- C. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard components.
- D. Fasteners: Zinc-coated steel.

### 2.2 FOLDING DOORS

- A. Description: Electrically operated folding-door assembly, automatic or self-closing, and complete with hardware, seals, track, closing devices, releasing devices, controls, and accessories necessary for intended operation.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Four-Fold FF700 as manufactured by Door Engineering and Manufacturing or an equal product by an approved manufacturer.

- B. Construction: Door framing shall be 11-gauge structural steel tube with 14-gauge galvannealed sheet steel on the exterior and interior faces. Sheeting shall be formed on the vertical edges with no visible welds on the interior or exterior panel faces. All frames and framing members shall be true to dimension and square in all directions, and no door shall be bowed, warped, or out of line, in the vertical or horizontal plane of the door opening by more than 1/8 inch in 20 feet. Exposed welds and welds which interfere with the installation of various parts shall be ground smooth and flush.
- C. Surface Mounted Tube Frame: Supply pre-hung tube frame system constructed of TS6x6x0.25, designed to anchor to masonry wall construction or weld to steel structure. All hinges, track supports and operator supports shall be factory attached.

# D. Factory finish:

- 1. All exposed steel shall be finished with manufacturer's standard epoxy primer and polyurethane top coat. Architect to select color from manufacturer's standard color chart.
- E. Operating Hardware: Hardware shall include guide tracks and brackets, trolleys, center guides, not less than three pairs of jamb and fold hinges per opening, and all bolts, nuts, fasteners, etc. necessary for complete installation and operation. Jamb hinges shall be dual shear and have two thrust bearings and two needle bearings. Jamb hinges shall be gusseted. Fold hinges shall be dual shear with two thrust bearings. All bearings shall be completely concealed within the hinge barrel and include grease zerks. All hinge pins shall be minimum 3/4" diameter hardened steel. All trolleys shall be equipped with three (3) 2" diameter cam followers. Track shall be constructed from structural angle L3x3x0.5.
- F. Weatherstripping: Material shall be adjustable and readily replaceable and provide a substantially weather-tight installation. Weatherstripping at center shall be 1/16" cloth inserted neoprene and include no exposed fasteners on the exterior face of the panel. Weatherstripping at sill shall include two 1/16" cloth inserted neoprene sweeps with an aluminum retainer. The retainer shall be attached to the door with adhesive.
  - 1. Perimeter Weatherstripping: Provide jamb and head weatherstripping of 1/16" cloth-inserted neoprene bulb (or closed cell neoprene).
- G. Vision Panels: Provide 9/16" laminated, impact resistant safety glass vision panels of the size, shape and location as noted on the drawings.

### 2.3 OPERATOR

- A. Each door set shall be operated by an overhead mounted electro-mechanical drive unit designed for high cycle operation. Operator consists of an electric motor, gear reducer, and rotating drive arm. The door shall be operated with connecting rods attached to the rotating drive arm on the operator and to control arms attached to the jamb door section and to the door lintel. The connecting rods shall be positive drive, keeping the door under firm control at all times. The connecting rods shall be fitted with spherical bearings and control arms shall be equipped with oil impregnated bronze bearings on polished shafts.
- B. Operator shall be instantly reversible, open and close rapidly and start and stop gradually. Operator shall be adjustable to allow door to fully clear the opening. Operator shall

- automatically lock the door in the closed position. Operator shall be equipped with disengaging mechanism to convert to freewheeling mode for manual operation.
- C. Operator shall include a formed hood enclosing the motor, gearboxes and limit switches.
- D. Electric motor shall be of sufficient size to operate doors under normal operating conditions at no more than 75 percent of rated capacity. The motor shall be wound for three phase 208/230 VAC, 60 Hertz operation.
- E. Electric Controls: Controls shall be furnished by the door manufacturer and shall be complete for each door and built in accordance with the latest NEMA standards. Incoming electrical shall be: 208/230VAC 3-phase.
  - 1. Controls shall include a programmable logic controller with digital message display. Controller shall include programmable close timers and programmable inputs/outputs
  - 2. Motor starters shall be magnetic reversing, factory wired with overload and under voltage protection, and equipped with mechanical interlocks. All control components shall be enclosed in one enclosure with a wiring diagram placed on the inside of the cover.
  - 3. Enclosures shall be NEMA 4 with disconnect switch.
  - 4. Pushbuttons (interior) for each door shall have one momentary pressure three-button push-button station marked "OPEN", "CLOSE" and "STOP". Push button enclosure shall be NEMA 4.
  - 5. Limit switches shall be provided to stop the travel of the door in its fully open or fully closed position. Provide cremone bolt limit switch to be used for HVAC or exhaust removal system.
  - 6. Safety edges: Provide electric safety edges on leading edge of all doors to reverse door upon contact with obstruction.
  - 7. Photo eyes: Provide (1) exterior, jamb mounted, thru-beam type photo eyes, NEMA 4 rated.
  - 8. (Option) Radio controls: Provide one (1) radio receiver and (1) single button remotes per door. Remotes to open and close doors with single button.
- F. Wiring: Door manufacturer shall supply controls and components only. Electrical contractor shall install controls and furnish and install conduits and wiring for jobsite power and control wiring.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

A. For folding doors supported by or anchored to permanent construction, advise installers of specific requirements for placement of anchorage devices. Furnish installers of other work with templates and drawings indicating locations of anchorage devices and similar items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors in strict accordance with the approved drawings by qualified door erection crews. All door openings shall be completely prepared by the general contractor prior to the installation of the doors. Permanent or temporary electric wiring shall be brought to the door opening before installation is started and shall be completed so as not to delay the inspection test.
- B. Doors shall be set plumb, level, and square, and with all parts properly fastened and mounted. All moving parts shall be tested and adjusted and left in good operating condition.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust units to ensure smooth, quiet operation without warping or binding. Adjust hardware to function smoothly. Confirm that latches engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Clean surfaces and repaint abraded or damaged finished surfaces to match factory-applied finish.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-rated folding doors.

END OF SECTION 083513

#### SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior and interior storefront framing.
- 2. Storefront framing for punched openings.
- 3. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

### B. Related Sections:

1. Section 088000 "Glazing."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
  - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
    - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
    - b. Anchorage.
    - c. Expansion provisions.
    - d. Glazing.
    - e. Flashing and drainage.
  - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams.

Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

# 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.
- B. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

# 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - e. Failure of operating components.

- 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Glass breakage.
    - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to the Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2 Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Exposure Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - 3. Wind loads: Provide storefront system; include anchorage, capable of withstanding wind load design pressures as indicated on Structural Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding 1/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite

- or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
- 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
  - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch clearance between framing members and operable units.
- E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
  - 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
    - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
  - 2. Entrance Doors:
    - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
    - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
  - 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- G. Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Seismic Design Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- H. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to AAMA 1503 as follows:
  - 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.47 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.35.
  - 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a condensation resistance rating of no less than 70.
- I. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet of grade.
- J. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kawneer North America, Trifab® VG 451T framing system or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Arcadia, Inc.
  - 2. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
  - 3. CMI Architectural.
  - 4. Commercial Architectural Products, Inc.
  - 5. EFCO Corporation.
  - 6. Leed Himmel Industries, Inc.
  - 7. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope.
  - 8. Pittco Architectural Metals, Inc.
  - 9. TRACO.
  - 10. Tubelite.
  - 11. United States Aluminum.
  - 12. YKK AP America Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing spandrel panels and accessories, from single manufacturer.

#### 2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
  - 4. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
  - 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
    - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
    - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
    - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
    - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  - 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

- a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
- c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

#### 2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
  - 1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated, and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
    - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
  - 2. Door Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2-inch nominal width.
  - 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
    - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

#### 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. General: Provide entrance door hardware for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and products equivalent in function and comparable in quality to named products.
  - 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
  - 3. Opening-Force Requirements:
    - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
    - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.
- C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:
  - 1. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- D. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
  - 1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.

- E. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- F. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
- G. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- H. Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
  - 1. Keying: Master key system. Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include notation "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
- I. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- J. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- K. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to comply with field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- L. Concealed Overhead Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- M. Surface-Mounted Holders: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- N. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- O. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
  - 1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
- P. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- Q. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- R. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch.
- 2.6 GLAZING
  - A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- 2.7 ACCESSORIES
  - A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

- 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
- 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- 3. When using exposed fasteners, use countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

#### 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
  - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
  - 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.

- 2. At exterior doors provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

#### 2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. General:

- 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Do not install damaged components.
- 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

# B. Metal Protection:

- 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
- 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
  - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
  - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

#### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
  - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  - 3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
    - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
  - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

END OF SECTION 084113

#### SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware
- 2. Electronic access control system components

#### B. Section excludes:

- 1. Windows
- 2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
- 3. Signage
- 4. Toilet accessories
- 5. Overhead doors

# C. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
- 2. Division 06 Section "Interior Finish Carpentry"
- 3. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
- 4. Division 08 Sections for metal doors and frames, flush wood doors, aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- 5. Division 09 sections for touchup, finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.
- 6. Division 26 "Electrical" sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
- 7. Division 28 "Electronic Safety and Security" sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

#### A. UL, LLC

- 1. UL 10B Fire Test of Door Assemblies
- 2. UL 10C Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
- 3. UL 1784 Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies

#### B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute

- 1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
- 2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
- 3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
- 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware

#### C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association

- 1. NFPA 70 National Electric Code
- 2. NFPA 80 2016 Edition Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
- 3. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code
- 4. NFPA 105 Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
- 5. NFPA 252 Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

#### D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

- 1. ANSI A117.1 2017 Edition Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
- 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 Standards for Hardware and Specialties
- 3. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 Recommended Practices for Keying Systems
- 4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors
- 5. ANSI/SDI A250.8 Standard Steel Doors and Frames

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

#### A. General:

- 1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
- 2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
  - a. Comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, "EXAMINATION" article, herein.
  - b. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
  - c. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.

#### B. Action Submittals:

- 1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
- 2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
  - b. Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
  - c. Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
  - d. Point-to-point wiring.
  - e. Risers.
- 3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
  - a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of

key coordination requirements.

#### 4. Door Hardware Schedule:

- a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
- b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
- c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
  - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
  - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
  - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
  - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
  - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
  - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
  - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
  - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.

#### 5. Key Schedule:

- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
- b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
- c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
- d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
- e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
- f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

#### C. Informational Submittals:

- 1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
- 2. Provide Product Data:
  - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated

- doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
- b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.

#### D. Closeout Submittals:

- 1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
  - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
  - b. Catalog pages for each product.
  - c. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as installed.
  - d. Final keying schedule
  - e. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
  - f. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.
- 2. Welding certificates.

# E. Inspection and Testing:

- 1. Submit written reports to the Owner and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) of the results of functional testing and inspection for:
  - a. Fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
  - b. Required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

# A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

- 1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with a minimum of 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project. Supplier to be recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturer of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in the Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff, a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
- 2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
- 3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
  - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
  - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
  - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
  - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified

hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.

4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

#### B. Certifications:

#### 1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:

- a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by UL LLC, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.

#### 2. Electrified Door Hardware

a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

# 3. Accessibility Requirements:

a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article 087100, 1.02.D3 herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route. This project must comply with all Federal Americans with Disability Act regulations and all Local Accessibility Regulations.

#### C. Pre-Installation Meetings

# 1. Keying Conference

- a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
  - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
  - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
  - 3) Requirements for key control system.
  - 4) Requirements for access control.
  - 5) Address for delivery of keys.

#### 2. Pre-installation Conference

- a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
- c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
- d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
- e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.

#### 3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:

a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- C. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.
    - a. Mechanical Warranty

- 1) Locks 3 years
- 2) Closers -30 years
- b. Electrical Warranty
  - 1) Locks 1 year

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

#### A. Fabrication

- 1. Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. provide screws according to manufacturer's recognized installation standards for application intended.
- 2. Finish exposed screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
- 3. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible for hardware units exposed when door is closed. Coordinate with "Metal Doors and Frames", "Flush Wood Doors", "Stile and Rail Wood Doors" to ensure proper reinforcements. Advise the Architect where visible fasteners, such as thru bolts, are required.
- B. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
  - 1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

#### C. Cable and Connectors:

- 1. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
- 2. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices.
- 3. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

#### 2.3 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Ives 5BB series
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Hager BB1191/1279 series
    - b. Stanley FBB series

# B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide stainless steel hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
- 2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
- 3. Provide hinge weights and sizes as specified in hardware sets.
- 4. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
- 5. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
- 6. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
  - a. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
  - b. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
  - c. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
  - d. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
- 7. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

#### 2.4 FLUSH BOLTS

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives

- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns
  - b. DCI

## B. Requirements:

1. Provide automatic, constant latching, and manual flush bolts with forged bronze or stainless-steel face plates, extruded brass levers, and with wrought brass guides and strikes. Provide 12 inch (305 mm) steel or brass rods at doors up to 90 inches (2286 mm) in height. For doors over 90 inches (2286 mm) in height increase top rods by 6 inches (152 mm) for each additional 6 inches (152 mm) of door height. Provide dust-proof strikes at each bottom flush bolt.

#### 2.5 MORTISE LOCKS

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Schlage L9000 series
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Sargent 8200 series
    - b. Corbin-Russwin ML2000 series

#### B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide mortise locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
- 2. Indicators: Where specified, provide indicator window measuring a minimum 2-inch x 1/2 inch with 180-degree visibility. Provide messages color-coded with full text and/or symbols, as scheduled, for easy visibility.
- 3. Provide locks manufactured from heavy gauge steel, containing components of steel with a zinc dichromate plating for corrosion resistance.
- 4. Provide lock case that is multi-function and field reversible for handing without opening case. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
- 5. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset with full 3/4 inch (19 mm) throw stainless steel mechanical anti-friction latchbolt. Provide deadbolt with full 1-inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of stainless steel.
- 6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
- 7. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Where scheduled, provide switches and sensors integrated into the locks and latches. Provide motor based electrified locksets that comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Universal input voltage single chassis accepts 12 or 24VDC to allow for changes in the field without changing lock chassis.
  - b. Fail Safe/Fail Secure changing mode between electrically locked (fail safe) and electrically unlocked (fail secure) is field selectable without opening the lock case
  - c. Low maximum current draw maximum 0.4 amps to allow for multiple locks on a single power supply.

- d. Low holding current maximum 0.01 amps to produce minimal heat, eliminate "hot levers" in electrically locked applications, and to provide reliable operation in wood doors that provide minimal ventilation and air flow.
- e. Connections provide quick-connect Molex system standard.
- 8. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
  - a. Lever Design: Longitude x 'N' full escutcheon (LONN).

#### 2.6 SLIDING DOOR LOCKS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Accurate
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. FSB
    - b. KN Crowder
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide mortise sliding door locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset.
  - 2. Provide manufacturer's standard strike.

#### 2.7 POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Schlage/Von Duprin PS900 series
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Dynalock 5000 series
    - b. Security Door Controls 600 series
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide power supplies approved by manufacturer of supplied electrified hardware.
  - 2. Provide appropriate quantity of power supplies necessary for proper operation of electrified locking components as recommended by manufacturer of electrified locking components with consideration for each electrified component using power supply, location of power supply, and approved wiring diagrams. Locate power supplies as directed by Architect.
  - 3. Provide regulated and filtered 24 VDC power supply, and UL class 2 listed.
  - 4. Provide power supplies with the following features:

- a. 12/24 VDC Output, field selectable.
- b. Class 2 Rated power limited output.
- c. Universal 120-240 VAC input.
- d. Low voltage DC, regulated and filtered.
- e. Polarized connector for distribution boards.
- f. Fused primary input.
- g. AC input and DC output monitoring circuit w/LED indicators.
- h. Cover mounted AC Input indication.
- i. Tested and certified to meet UL294.
- j. NEMA 1 enclosure.
- k. Hinged cover w/lock down screws.
- 1. High voltage protective cover.

#### 2.8 CYLINDERS

#### A. Manufacturers and Products:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Schlage Everest 29 T
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. Medeco Keymark
  - b. Assa Maximum+

# B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide cylinders/cores compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset; manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
- 2. Provide cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
  - a. Conventional Patented Restricted: cylinder with interchangeable core with patented, restricted keyway.
- 3. Patent Protection: Cylinders/cores requiring use of restricted, patented keys, patent protected.
- 4. Nickel silver bottom pins.

#### 2.9 KEYING

# A. Scheduled System:

- 1. New factory registered system:
  - a. Provide a factory registered keying system, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

# B. Requirements:

- 1. Construction Keying:
  - a. Replaceable Construction Cores.
    - 1) Provide temporary construction cores replaceable by permanent cores, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
      - a) 3 construction control keys
      - b) 12 construction change (day) keys.
    - 2) Owner or Owner's Representative will replace temporary construction cores with permanent cores.

# 2. Permanent Keying:

- a. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
  - 1) Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
- b. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
- c. Provide keys with the following features:
  - 1) Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
  - 2) Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s).

#### d. Identification:

- 1) Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
- 2) Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
- 3) Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
- 4) Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
- 5) Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
- e. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
  - 1) Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
  - 2) Permanent Control Keys: 3.
  - 3) Master Keys: 6.

#### 2.10 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Telkee
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. HPC
  - b. Lund

#### B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide key control system, including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of number of locks required for Project.
  - a. Provide complete cross index system set up by hardware supplier, and place keys on markers and hooks in cabinet as determined by final key schedule.
  - b. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.

#### 2.11 DOOR CLOSERS

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. LCN 4040XP series x SRI
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Corbin-Russwin DC8000 series
    - b. Sargent 281 series

#### B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
- 2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
- 3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter piston with 5/8-inch (16 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal. QR code with a direct link to maintenance instructions.
- 4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
- 5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards. Provide snap-on cover clip, with plastic covers, that secures cover to spring tube.
- 6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck. Provide graphically labelled instructions on the closer body adjacent to each adjustment valve. Provide positive stop on reg valve that

- prevents reg screw from being backed out.
- 7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
- 8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
- 9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Special rust inhibitor (SRI) powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117.
- 10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

#### 2.12 DOOR TRIM

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Trimco
  - b. Burns

# B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, pulls, and hands-free reversible door pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

#### 2.13 PROTECTION PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Ives
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Burns
    - b. Trimco

# B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
- 2. Provide protection plates with countersunk screw holes.
- 3. Sizes plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
- 4. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

# 2.14 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
  - a. Glynn-Johnson
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Rixson
  - b. ABH

## B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
- 2. Provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

#### 2.15 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Ives
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Trimco
    - b. Burns
- B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:
  - 1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button of thumbturn.
  - 2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
  - 3. Where wall or overhead stop cannot be used, provide floor stop.
  - 4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

# 2.16 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Zero International
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. National Guard
- b. Reese

# B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
- 2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- 3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
- 4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

#### 2.17 SILENCERS

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Steelcraft
  - b. Republic

# B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
- 2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
- 3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

#### 2.18 ROLLER LATCHES

## A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns
  - b. Trimco

# B. Requirements:

1. Provide roller latches with 4-7/8 inches (124 mm) strike at single doors to fit ANSI frame prep. If dummy levers are used in conjunction with roller latch mount roller latch at a

- height as to not interfere with proper mounting and height of dummy lever.
- 2. Provide roller latches with 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) full lip strike at pair doors. Mount roller in top rail of each leaf per manufacturer's template.

#### 2.19 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Schlage
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. GE-Interlogix
    - b. Sentrol
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide recessed or surface mounted type door position switches as specified.
  - 2. Coordinate door and frame preparations with door and frame suppliers. If switches are being used with magnetic locking device, provide minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) between switch and magnetic locking device.

#### 2.20 LATCH PROTECTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Ives
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Burns
    - b. Trimco
- B. Provide stainless steel latch protectors of type required to function with specified lock.

#### 2.21 COAT HOOKS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Ives
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Burns
    - b. Trimco
- B. Provide coat hooks as specified.

#### 2.22 FINISHES

- A. Finish: Standard: Designations used in the Hardware Sets and elsewhere indicate hardware finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18, including coordination with traditional U.S. finishes indicated by certain manufacturers for their products.
- B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  - 3. Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A
  - 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware: DHI TDH-007-20
- B. Install door hardware in accordance with NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and provide post-install inspection, testing as specified in section 1.03.E unless otherwise required to comply with governing regulations.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- D. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- E. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- F. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

- G. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- H. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- I. Lock Cylinders:
  - 1. Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
  - 2. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying section.
  - 3. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- J. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL and Division 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections for:
  - 1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
  - 2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.
  - 3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
  - 4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.
  - 5. Connections to panel interface modules, controllers, and gateways.
  - 6. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.
- K. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- L. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- M. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.
- N. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- O. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- P. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- Q. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- R. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

# 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating

and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

- 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 3.5 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.
- C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- D. Hardware Sets:

#### HARDWARE GROUP NO. 01

Prove each RU door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
	NOTE	HARDWARE BY DOOR SUPPLIER		

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 02

Provide each PDP door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	POCKET DR FRAME	TYPE C (2-0 TO 3-0 & 6-8 TO 7-0)		KNC
2	EA	POCKET DOOR PULL	2000 x S2002B x S2002B	626	ACC

EA

EA

EA

FSIC CORE

OH STOP

SILENCER

1

1

3

HARD	) WARE	GROUP NO. 03			
		GGL door(s) with the following:			
QTY		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	L9010 LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
				5111	1.2
HARD	)WARE	GROUP NO. 04			
		GGL door(s) with the following:			
QTY		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	L9010 LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
3	L/ X	SIBERCER	SKOT	GICI	IVE
НАВГ	WARE	GROUP NO. 05			
		SGL door(s) with the following:			
QTY	io odom k	DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 LONN 09-544 L283-722	630	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	SINGLE HOOK	507B	626	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
3	LA	SILLIVELK	SKOT	OKI	IVL
HARF	WARF	GROUP NO. 06			
		SGL door(s) with the following:			
<u>QTY</u>	ic cacii s	DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	OFFICE/ENTRY LOCK	L9050T LONN 09-544	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	COAT AND HAT HOOK	507	626	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
3	LA	SILLIVELK	SKOT	OKI	IVL
HARF	)WARF	GROUP NO. 07			
		SGL door(s) with the following:			
QTY	Juon k	DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	L9070T LONN	630	SCH
1	EA.	CLASSROOM LOCK	22 020 EV20 E	636	SCII

DOOR HARDWARE 087100 - 21

90S

SR64

23-030 EV29 T

626

630

GRY

SCH

GLY

IVE

D	DD	1	(~\	:41-	41	£-11
Provide each	РK	aoor	SI	with	ıne	ionowing:

QTY		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
2	EA	ROLLER LATCH	RL32	626	IVE
2	EA	HALF DUMMY TRIM	L0170 LONN	630	SCH
2	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY
2	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 09

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

QTY		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<b>FINISH</b>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
2	EA	MANUAL FLUSH BOLT	FB457 12"	626	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
2	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY
1	EA	MEETING STILE	383AA	AA	ZER
2	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 10

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	L9010 LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 11

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	L9010 LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 LONN 09-544 L283-722	630	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER
1	EA	SINGLE HOOK	507B	626	IVE

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 13

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

		` /	$\sim$			
<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>		CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE		5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK		L9040 LONN 09-544 L283-722	630	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP		90S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER		4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE		8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	SINGLE HOOK		507B	626	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER		SR64	GRY	IVE

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 14

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA SRI TBSRT	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 15

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

		(-)			
<b>QTY</b>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG1	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	SET	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	EXIT LOCK	L9025 LONN	630	SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG1	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	SET	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 17

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	DBL CYL STORE W/DB	L9466T LONN	630	SCH
2	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG1	630	IVE
1	EA	OH STOP	100S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH SRI	689	LCN
1	SET	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 18

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 6" X 16"	630	IVE
1	EA	PULL PLATE	8303 10" 4" X 16"	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOORS NORMALLY CLOSED AND UNLOCKED. PUSH/PULL OPERATION.

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	630	IVE
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092TEU LONN RX CON 12/24 VDC	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER
1	EA	DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-XX-P LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
			FOR USE WITH DOOR		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

CARD READER BY OTHERS

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS BY KEY, OR VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. INSIDE LEVER ALWAYS FREE FOR EGRESS. OPERATING INSIDE LEVER SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH FOR REQUEST TO EXIT (REX).

#### HARDWARE GROUP NO. 20

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	630	IVE
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092TEU LONN RX CON 12/24 VDC	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA SRI	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-XX-P LENGTH AS REQUIRED FOR USE WITH DOOR		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

CARD READER BY OTHERS

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS BY KEY, OR VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. INSIDE LEVER ALWAYS FREE FOR EGRESS. OPERATING INSIDE LEVER SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH FOR REQUEST TO EXIT (REX).

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	630	IVE
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092TEU LONN RX CON 12/24 VDC	630	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG1	630	IVE
1	EA	OH STOP	100S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA SRI	689	LCN
1	SET	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-XX-P LENGTH AS REQUIRED FOR USE WITH DOOR		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

CARD READER BY OTHERS

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS BY KEY, OR VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. INSIDE LEVER ALWAYS FREE FOR EGRESS. OPERATING INSIDE LEVER SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH FOR REQUEST TO EXIT (REX).

# HARDWARE GROUP NO. 22

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

			` '			
Q'	<u>TY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	CATALOG NUMBER	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3		EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1		EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092TEU LONN RX CON 12/24 VDC	630	SCH
1		EA	FSIC CORE	23-030 EV29 T	626	SCH
1		EA	OH STOP	100S	630	GLY
1		EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA SRI	689	LCN
1		EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1		EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1		EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1		EA	WIRE HARNESS	CON-XX-P LENGTH AS REQUIRED FOR USE WITH DOOR		SCH
1		EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1		EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1		SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE
1				CARD READER BY OTHERS		
1				SEALS BY DOOR SUPPLIER		

END OF SECTION 087100

#### SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section includes:

- 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, storefront framing and mirrors.
- 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for verification purposes of 12-inch square samples of each type of glass indicated except for clear monolithic glass products, and 12 inch long samples of each color required (except black) for each type of sealant or gasket exposed to view. Install sealant or gasket sample between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.
- C. Product certificates signed by glazing materials manufacturers certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.
- D. Compatibility and adhesion test reports from sealant manufacturer indicating that glazing materials were tested for compatibility and adhesion with glazing sealants. Include sealant manufacturer's interpretation of test results relative to sealant performance and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

GLAZING 088000 - 1

- E. Compatibility test report from manufacturer of insulating glass edge sealant indicating that glass edge sealants were tested for compatibility with other glazing materials including sealants, glazing tape, gaskets, setting blocks, and edge blocks.
- F. Product test reports for each type of glazing sealant and gasket indicated, evidencing compliance with requirements specified.
- G. Maintenance data for glass and other glazing materials to include in Operating and Maintenance Manual specified in Division 1.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.
- C. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- D. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- E. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. General: Warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to

GLAZING 088000 - 2

and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

- 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than 5 years after date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Mirrors: Deterioration of mirrors is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to mirror breakage or to maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.
- C. Manufacturer's Warranty on Laminated Glass: Submit written warranty signed by insulating glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for those laminated glass units that deteriorate as defined in the "Definitions" article, f.o.b. point of manufacture, freight allowed Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below. Warranty covers only deterioration due to normal conditions of use and not to handling, installing, and cleaning practices contrary to glass manufacturer's published instructions.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than 5 years after date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
  - 1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.
- C. Mirror Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Gardner Glass, Inc.
  - 2. General Glass International.
  - 3. Glasswerks LA, Inc.
  - 4. Guardian Glass; SunGuard.
  - 5. Lenoir Mirror Company.
  - 6. Trulite Glass & Aluminum Solutions, LLC.
  - 7. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.
  - 8. Walker Glass Co., Ltd.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

GLAZING 088000 - 3

- 1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - b. Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - c. Exposure Category: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
  - d. Wind loads: Provide storefront system; include anchorage, capable of withstanding wind load design pressures as indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glazing framing members and glazing components.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall conform to basic-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on the Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on the Project.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  - 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  - 4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - 5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
  - 6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

## 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
  - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- B. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, Kind HS heat-treated float glass, or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened, glass is indicated, provide Kind HS heat-treated float glass or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance

Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass.

- C. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
  - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  - 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  - 4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - 5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
  - 6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

## 2.4 PRIMARY FLOAT GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent glass, flat), Class as indicated below, and Quality q3 (glazing select).
  - 1. Class 1 (clear) unless otherwise indicated, all interior windows and interior sheet of insulated exterior windows.
  - 2. Class 2 (tinted, heat-absorbing, and light-reducing) at exterior surface sheets.
- B. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Primary Tinted Float Glass Class 2: 1/4" thickness
    - a. Tint: Equivalent to PPG Solargray.
    - b. Visible Light Transmittance: 44%.
    - c. Shading Coefficient: .67.
    - d. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: 6%
    - e. U-Value Winter: 1.02.
    - f. U-Value Summer: 0.93.
    - g. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.58.
- C. Refer to requirements for sealed insulating glass units for performance characteristics of assembled units composed of tinted glass, coated or uncoated, relative to visible light transmittance, U-values, shading coefficient, and visible reflectance.

#### 2.5 HEAT-TREATED FLOAT GLASS

- A. Uncoated, Tinted, Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition C (uncoated glass), Type I (transparent glass, flat), Class 2 (tinted heat-absorbing and light-reducing), Quality q3 (glazing select), with tint color and performance characteristics for 6.0-mm-thick (0.23-inchthick) glass matching those indicated for annealed primary tinted float glass; kind as indicated below:
  - 1. Kind FT (fully tempered) where indicated.

- B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering heat-treated glass products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following companies.
  - 1. Advanced Glass Systems Corp.
  - 2. Guardian Industries Corp.
  - 3. PPG Industries, Inc.
  - 4. LOF, Libbey-Owens-Ford Co.
  - 5. Viracon, Inc.

#### 2.6 INSULATING GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Sealed Insulating Glass Units: Preassembled units consisting of organically sealed lites of glass separated by dehydrated air spaces complying with ASTM E 774 and with other requirements indicated, including those in Insulating Glass Product Data Sheet at the end of this Section.
  - 1. For properties of individual glass lites making up units, refer to requirements specified elsewhere in this Section applicable to types, classes, kinds, and conditions of glass products comprising lites of insulating glass units.
  - 2. Provide heat-treated, coated float glass of kind indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, Kind HS (heat strengthened) where recommended by manufacturer to comply with system performance requirements specified and Kind FT (fully tempered) where safety glass is designated or required.
  - 3. Performance characteristics designated for coated insulating glass are nominal values based on manufacturer's published test data for units with lites 6.0 mm (0.23 inch) thick and nominal 1/2-inch dehydrated space between lites, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. U-values are expressed as Btu/hour x sq.ft. x deg F.

# B. Construction Characteristics:

- 1. Air Space Width: Nominal 1/2 inch measured perpendicularly from surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
- 2. Gas Filling: Fill air space with argon.
- 3. Sealing System: Dual seal, primary and secondary sealants: manufacturer's standard sealants.
- 4. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard.
- 5. Desiccant: Either molecular sieve or silica gel or blend of both.
- 6. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.
- 7. Color of Spacer: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

# C. Glass Specifications (storefronts):

- 1. Insulating glazing on this project shall be Low 'E' coated, tinted outdoor lite, with argon filled cavity. Insulating glazing product shall be equal to PPG Solarban 70XL + Solargray.
- 2. Thickness of Each Lite: 6.0 mm (0.23 inch).
- 3. Low E coated Indoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass with coating on #2 surface.
- 4. Outdoor Lite: Class 2 (tinted, heat-absorbing and light-reducing) float glass with tint color: PPG Solarban 70XL or equivalent.
- 5. Performance of Insulated Glass: (performance values published are manufacturer's recommended values for insulated glass.)

- a. Visible light transmission: 34%.
- b. Shading coefficient: 0.23.
- c. U-value: 0.28 winter, 0.36 summer.
- d. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.20.

#### 2.7 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
  - 1. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
  - 2. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
  - 3. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
  - 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.

#### 2.8 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRRORS

- A. Mirrors, General: ASTM C 1503.
- B. Annealed Monolithic Glass Mirrors: Mirror Glazing Quality, ultraclear (low-iron) float glass with a minimum 91 percent visible light transmission.
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.
- C. Tempered Glass Mirrors: Mirror Glazing Quality for blemish requirements and complying with ASTM C 1048 for Kind FT, Condition A, tempered float glass before silver coating is applied; clear.
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.
- D. Safety Glazing Products: For tempered mirrors, provide products that comply with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

## 2.9 MIRROR HARDWARE

- A. Aluminum J-Channels: Aluminum extrusions with a return deep enough to produce a glazing channel to accommodate mirrors of thickness indicated and in lengths required to cover edges of mirrors in a single piece.
  - 1. Bottom Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 3/8 and 7/8 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.04 inch.
  - 2. Top Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 5/8 and 1 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.04 inch.
  - 3. Finish: Clear bright anodized.
- B. Fasteners: Fabricated of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal and matching it in finished color and texture where fasteners are exposed.
- C. Anchors and Inserts: Provide devices as required for mirror hardware installation. Provide toothed or lead-shield, expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Provide galvanized anchors and inserts for applications on inside face of exterior walls and where indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

## 2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

## 2.10 FABRICATION OF MIRRORS

- A. Fabricate mirrors in the shop to greatest extent possible.
- B. Fabricate cutouts for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.
- C. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat high-polished.
  - 1. Seal edges of mirrors with edge sealer after edge treatment to prevent chemical or atmospheric penetration of glass coating.
- D. Film-Backed Safety Mirrors: Apply film backing with adhesive coating over mirror backing paint, as recommended in writing by film-backing manufacturer, to produce a surface free of bubbles, blisters, and other imperfections.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.

- 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

## 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

# 3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

#### 3.5 MIRROR INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
  - 1. GANA Publications: "Glazing Manual" and "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."
- B. Provide a minimum airspace of 1/8 inch between back of mirrors and mounting surface for air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
- C. Install mirrors with mastic and mirror hardware. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.

#### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.

- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088000

#### SECTION 089119 - FIXED LOUVERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.
- 2. Blank-off panels for louvers

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).
- C. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- D. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 550.
- E. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
  - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
  - 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.
- C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.

B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code Aluminum."

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of baked enamel, powder coat, or organic finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed and operable louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of the building.
  - 1. Wind Loads:
    - a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on the Structural Drawings.

- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet of grade pass enhanced protection, when tested in accordance with AMCA 540.
- D. Seismic Performance:
  - 1. As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
- E. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
- F. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

## 2.3 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

- A. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade, Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:
  - 1. Manufacturers/Model: Refer to design drawings schedule for further information.
  - 2. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
  - 3. AMCA Rating: AMCA 550 (Water Penetration) / AMCA 540 (Impact Resistance).

#### 2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
  - 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
  - 2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with stainless steel machine screws, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
  - 1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
  - 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
  - 3. Type: Rewirable frames with a driven spline or insert.
- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
  - 1. Bird Screening, Aluminum: 5/8-inch-square mesh, 0.040-inch wire.

## 2.5 BLANK-OFF PANELS

- A. Uninsulated Blank-Off Panels: Metal sheet attached to back of louver.
  - 1. Aluminum sheet for aluminum louvers, not less than 0.050-inch nominal thickness.
  - 2. Panel Finish: Same finish applied to louvers.
  - 3. Attach blank-off panels with clips.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  - 1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
  - 3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

#### 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
  - 1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

#### 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
  - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 089119

#### SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
- 2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs; floor joists; roof rafters and ceiling joists; and roof trusses.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. Seismic Performance: Non-structural metal framing systems shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  - 2. Seismic Component Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.

## 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0195 inch
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide the following:
  - 1. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products from the available manufactures that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dietrich Metal Framing
    - b. MBA Building Supplies
    - c. Steel Network Inc. (The)
    - d. Superior Metal Trim
    - e. Telling Industries
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products from the available manufactures that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fire Trak Corp.
    - b. Grace Construction Products
    - c. Metal-Lite, Inc.
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
- F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
  - 2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

# 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:

- Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet.
- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inchwide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.015 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

# 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
  - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

#### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.

- 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
  - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
- 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
- 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
- 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.

## E. Direct Furring:

- 1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

#### 3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
  - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
  - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.

- 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
- 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
- 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
- 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
- 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
- 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.
- F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

#### SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Tile backing panels.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls and soffits.
- 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

# 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

#### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. American Gypsum.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - 4. Lafarge North America Inc.
  - 5. National Gypsum Company.
  - 6. PABCO Gypsum.
  - 7. Temple-Inland.
  - 8. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- E. Moisture-and-Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: 5/8 inch and Type X where indicated.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc Tile Backer.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensShield Tile Backer.
  - 2. Core: 1/2-inch, regular type.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; FiberCement BackerBoard.
    - c. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
    - d. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
    - e. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.; Hardiebacker.
    - f. National Gypsum Company, Permabase Cement Board.
    - g. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, or paper-faced galvanized steel sheet.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. Bullnose bead.
    - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - f. Expansion (control) joint.
    - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

# B. Joint Tape:

- 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
- 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  - 1. As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

#### 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL
  - A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
  - B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
  - C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
  - D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
  - E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
  - F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
    - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
    - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
    - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
  - G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
  - H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
  - I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
  - J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

## 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
  - 4. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.

# B. Single-Layer Application:

- 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end ioints.
  - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
- 3. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

# C. Multilayer Application:

- 1. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
- 2. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

#### 3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

#### 3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.

- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

## 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
  - 3. Level 3: Not Used.
  - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  - 5. Level 5: Not Used.
- E. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Fiber cement soffits: Paint.

# 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

#### SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Porcelain tile.
- 2. Waterproof membrane for thinset applications.
- 3. Stone thresholds.
- 4. Metal edge strips.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
- 2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for cementitious backer units.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### A. Installer Qualifications:

- 1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
- 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.

- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
  - 1. Stone thresholds.
  - 2. Cementitious backer units.
  - 3. Metal edge strips.

# 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Marazzi Tile, Inc.
  - 2. American Olean Corporation.
  - 3. Architectural Systems, Inc.
  - 4. Architessa
  - 5. Crossville, Inc.
  - 6. Dal-Tile Corporation Florida Tile, Inc.
  - 7. Florim USA.
  - 8. Interceramic.
  - 9. Iris US.
  - 10. Porcelanite.
  - 11. Seneca Tiles, Inc.
  - 12. TileBar Porcelain.

# 2.4 TILE PRODUCTS, TYPES

- A. Porcelain Ceramic Floor Tile Type (PFT-1): American Olean, Historic Bridge, glazed porcelain tile.
  - 1. Face Size: 6 by 36 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/16 inches.

- 3. Face: Plain with non-rectified edges.
- 4. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
- 5. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: TBD.
- 6. Grout Color: TBD.
- B. Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile Type (WT-1): Dal-Tile, Artigiano series, glazed ceramic tile.
  - 1. Face Size: 3 by 12 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/16-inches.
  - 3. Face: Irregular edges.
  - 4. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  - 5. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: TBD.
  - 6. Grout Color: TBD.

## 2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

#### 2.6 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
  - 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503/C 503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 12 according to ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241/C 241M and with honed finish.
  - 1. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

#### 2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ardex Americas.
  - 2. Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.
  - 3. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company.
  - 4. Bostik, Inc.
  - 5. C-Cure.
  - 6. Custom Building Products.
  - 7. Jamo Inc.
  - 8. Laticrete International, Inc.
  - 9. MAPEI Corporation.
  - 10. Merkrete Systems; Parex USA, Inc.

- 11. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
- 12. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
- 13. TEC; H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.
- C. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
- D. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

#### 2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ardex Americas.
  - 2. Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.
  - 3. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company.
  - 4. Bostik, Inc.
  - 5. C-Cure.
  - 6. Custom Building Products.
  - 7. Jamo Inc.
  - 8. Laticrete International, Inc.
  - 9. MAPEI Corporation.
  - 10. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
  - 11. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
  - 12. TEC: H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.
- C. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Blanke Corporation.
    - b. Ceramic Tool Company, Inc.

- c. Schluter Systems L.P.
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- E. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company; Grout Sealer.
    - b. Custom Building Products; Surfaceguard Sealer.
    - c. Jamo Inc.; Surfaceguard Sealer.
    - d. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.; Grout Sealer.
    - e. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; SL-15, Invisible Seal.
    - f. TEC, H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.; Grout Guard Plus Penetrating Grout Sealer.

#### 2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.

- 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
- 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tilesetting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

#### 3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
  - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
    - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize

the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.

- 1. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
- 2. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
  - 1. Porcelain Tile: 1/8 inch.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
  - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- L. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to grout joints in tile floors according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

## 3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION

A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use modified dry-set mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.5 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproofing to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

- 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
- 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

#### 3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
  - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F113; thinset mortar.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
    - b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Metal Studs:
  - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W243; thinset mortar on gypsum board.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
    - b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.
  - 2. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W244C or TCNA W244F; thinset mortar on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
    - b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.
- C. Shower Receptor and Wall Installations:
  - 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA B415; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane over cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
    - b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.

END OF SECTION 093013

### SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- B. Related Documents
  - 1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Acoustical Panel: Set of 6-inch- square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
  - 2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch-long Samples of each type, finish, and color.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system, from ICC-ES.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Acoustical ceiling shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

## 2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.
- D. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

# 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: (ACT-1) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ultima <sup>TM</sup> Tegular #1911 as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 2. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
  - 3. Tectum Inc.
  - 4. USG Interiors, Inc.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:

- 1. Type and Form: Type IV, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2.
- 2. Pattern: E (lightly textured).
- 3. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A.

### C. Characteristics:

- 1. Color: White.
- 2. LR: Not less than 0.90.
- 3. NRC: Not less than 0.70.
- 4. CAC: Not less than 35.
- 5. Edge/Joint Detail: SLB.
- 6. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
- 7. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- D. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

# 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
  - 3. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch diameter wire.
- D. Seismic Braces and Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic braces and clips designed and spaced to secure grid and acoustical panels in place.

## 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Prelude® XL HRC as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 2. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
  - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.

- B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 (Z90) coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  - 2. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 3. Cap Material: Steel cold-rolled sheet.
  - 4. Cap Finish: Painted white.

### 2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
    - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
  - 2. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:
    - a. Henkel Corporation; OSI Pro-Series SC-175 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; AIS-919.
    - c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.
- B. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.
  - 2. Concealed Joints: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant.
  - 3. Acoustical sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements as indicated on the Structural Drawings, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  - 6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  - 10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- D. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
  - 1. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
  - 2. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

3. Install clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

#### SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Resilient base.
- 2. Resilient molding accessories.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE (RB-1 & RB-2)

- A. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johnsonite Ecolibrium or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. AB; American Biltrite.
  - 2. Allstate Rubber Corp.
  - 3. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Burke Mercer Flooring Products, Division of Burke Industries Inc.
  - 5. Flexco.
  - 6. Mondo Rubber International, Inc.
  - 7. Nora Systems, Inc.
  - 8. Roppe Corporation, USA.
  - 9. VPI, LLC, Floor Products Division.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 2. Style: B, Cove.
- C. Characteristics:
  - 1. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
  - 2. Height: 4 inches.
  - 3. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
  - 4. Outside Corners: Job formed.
  - 5. Inside Corners: Job formed.
  - 6. Colors: to be selected by Owner/Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

### 2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

# F. Job-Formed Corners:

- 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
  - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
- 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
  - a. Miter corners to minimize open joints.

# 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 096513

#### SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid vinyl floor tile.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
- D. Product Schedule: For floor tile.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 85 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 85 deg F.
- C. Maintain humidity within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 40% or more than 60%, in spaces to receive floor tile.
- D. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- E. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- F. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient tile flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

### 2.2 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE

- A. Basis of Design Products (LVT-1): Mohawk, Large and Local: C0128; Color: TBD.
  - 1. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
    - a. Class: Class III, printed film vinyl tile.
    - b. Type: B, embossed surface.
  - 2. Thickness: 4.5 mm.
  - 3. Size: 9.25 inches by 59 inches.
- B. Basis of Design Products (LVT-2): Mohawk, Large and Local: C0128; Color: TBD.
  - 1. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
    - a. Class: Class III, printed film vinyl tile.
    - b. Type: B, embossed surface.
  - 2. Thickness: 4.5 mm.
  - 3. Size: 9.25 inches by 59 inches.

### 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:
    - a. Vinyl Composition Tile Adhesives: 50 g/L or less.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products as recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION FOR TILE

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to floor tile manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 5 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.

- b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level.
- c. Three tests should be conducted for areas up to 1,000 sq. ft. and one additional test should be conducted for each additional 1,000 sq. ft. of flooring.
- 5. Adhesive Bond Testing: An adhesive bond test should be performed using the actual flooring materials and adhesive to be installed. The test areas should be a minimum of 36" x 36" and remain in place for at least 72 hours and then evaluated for bond strength to the concrete.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.3 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Check the walls and ensure wall is square to the opposite wall in order to create a straight square-starting row. Never expose scribe or cut ends; they should be covered by molding.
  - 1. Installation should start the corner of the room and work your way out. The perimeter needs to be secured for all installations to lock remainder of the floor in place.
  - 2. Glue the whole perimeter using a pressure sensitive spray adhesive. Spray-Lock 6500 is recommended.
  - 3. Create at least a 10" perimeter in width for planks, including all walkway entrances and under heavy appliance and furniture. Leave an expansion space from the wall of at least 1/8" covered by molding.
  - 4. Once the starting perimeter row is in place, lay plank down and adjust all side and end seams tight and square to each other. Remove and reposition plank as needed.
  - 5. Avoid walking on planks as much as possible until all the perimeter planks are in place to lock in the installation.
  - 6. For planks, stagger the rows with different size planks so the ends of the planks do not line up in a straight uniform line. No starting row piece or end piece should be less than 6".
  - 7. For cutting around irregular objects, make pattern out of heavy paper to fit around the object, then place and trace the pattern upon the plank.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.

- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
- E. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

### SECTION 096566 - RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid rubber sheet flooring.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for wall base and accessories installed with flooring.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, and pattern of flooring indicated, 6-inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified sheet vinyl flooring Installer.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sheet Flooring: Furnish full-width rolls of not less than 10 linear feet for each 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of flooring installed.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storing.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration. Store rolls upright.

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Adhesively Applied Products:
  - 1. Maintain temperatures during installation within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 85 deg F, in spaces to receive flooring 48 hours before installation, during installation, and 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. After post-installation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 85 deg F.
  - 3. Close spaces to traffic during flooring installation.
  - 4. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after flooring installation unless manufacturer recommends longer period in writing.
- B. Install flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RUBBER SHEET FLOORING (RBF-1)
  - A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ecosufaces "ECOnights", solid color rubber floor tiles or comparable product by one of the following:
    - 1. Aacer Flooring, LLC.
    - 2. Action Floor Systems, LLC.
    - 3. Amarco Products.
    - 4. American Floor Products Company, Inc.
    - 5. ECORE International
    - 6. Flexco.
    - 7. Horner Flooring Company, Inc.
    - 8. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
    - 9. Mondo America Inc.
    - 10. Nora Systems, Inc.
    - 11. Robbins Sports Surfaces.
    - 12. Roppe Corporation.
    - 13. Sport Court; Subsidiary of Connor Sport Court International.
    - 14. Surface America Incorporated.
    - 15. ECOsurfaces; Spartan Surface.
  - B. Description: Rubber athletic flooring provided as tiled goods for adhered installation.
  - C. Traffic-Surface Texture: Smooth.
  - D. Size: 23-inches by 23-inches.
  - E. Thickness: 0.31-inches.
  - F. Color and Pattern: TBD.

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compound: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation approved by flooring manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended in writing by manufacturer for substrate and conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure adhesion of flooring but not less than the following:
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Alkalinity Testing: Perform pH testing according to ASTM F 710. Proceed with installation only if pH readings are not less than 7.0 and not greater than 8.5.
  - 3. Moisture Testing:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
      - 1) Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than two tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended in writing by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.

- D. Use trowelable leveling and patching compound to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- E. Move flooring and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation unless manufacturer recommends a longer period in writing.
  - 1. Do not install flooring until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
- F. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by flooring immediately before installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, and dust.
- G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.3 FLOORING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Scribe, cut, and fit flooring to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, equipment anchors, floor outlets, and other interruptions of floor surface.
- C. Extend flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating subfloor markings on flooring. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

# 3.4 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Lay out tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  - 1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated.
- B. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
- C. Tile Matching: Match tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in same sequence as manufactured and packaged if so numbered.
  - 1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated.
- D. Adhered Floor Tile: Adhere products to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to comply with adhesive and flooring manufacturers' written instructions, including those for trowel notching, adhesive mixing, and adhesive open and working times.
  - 1. Provide completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing flooring installation:

- 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from flooring surfaces.
- 2. Sweep and vacuum flooring thoroughly.
- 3. Damp-mop flooring to remove marks and soil after time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Protect flooring from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 1. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over flooring. Protect flooring with plywood or hardboard panels to prevent damage from storing or moving objects over flooring.

END OF SECTION 096566

#### SECTION 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

1. High-performance resinous flooring systems.

#### B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for concrete slab surfaces.
- 2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed at joints in resinous flooring systems.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review manufacturer's written instructions for substrate preparation and environmental conditions affecting resinous flooring installation.
  - 2. Review manufacturer's written instructions for installing resinous flooring systems.
  - 3. Review protection measures for adjacent construction and installed flooring, floor drainage requirements, curbs, base details, and so forth.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each resinous flooring system required, 6 inches square, applied to a rigid backing by Installer for this Project.
- C. Product Schedule: For resinous flooring. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

# 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.
- B. Material Certificates: For each resinous flooring component, from manufacturer.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each resinous flooring system.

RESINOUS FLOORING 096723 - 1

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of flooring systems required for this Project.
  - 1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, from single source from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Flammability: Self-extinguishing in accordance with ASTM D635.

# 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dur-A-Flex, Inc. Shop Floor system or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Arizona Polymer Flooring, Inc.
  - 2. Crown Polymers Corp.
  - 3. Delta Polymers, Inc.

RESINOUS FLOORING 096723 - 2

- 4. Dudick Inc.
- 5. Duraflex, Inc.
- 6. Key Resin Company.
- 7. Neogard; Hempel Group.
- 8. Northern Industries, Inc.
- 9. Sauereisen.
- 10. Sherwin-Williams High Performance Flooring.
- 11. Stonhard, Inc.
- 12. Tnemec Company, Inc.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

A. VOC Content of Liquid-Applied Flooring Components: Mot more than 100 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

### 2.4 HIGH-PERFORMANCE RESINOUS FLOORING

- A. Resinous Flooring: Abrasion, impact and chemical-resistant, high-performance-aggregate-filled, resin-based, monolithic floor surfacing designed to produce a seamless floor.
- B. System Characteristics:
  - 1. Color:
    - a. Field: EXP-1: TBDb. Striping: EXP-2: TBD
  - 2. Pattern: TBD.
  - 3. Wearing Surface: Textured for slip resistance.
  - 4. Overall Thickness: 1/8-inch.
- C. Membrane Coat (Elast-O-Coat):
  - 1. Resin: Epoxy.
  - 2. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
  - 3. Application Method: Notched squeegee.
    - a. Coverage: 80 sf/gal.
    - b. Thickness of Coats: 20 mils.
    - c. Number of Coats: One.
- D. Broadcast and Grout Coats (Dur-A-Glaze Shop Floor).
  - 1. Resin: Epoxy.
  - 2. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
  - 3. Type: Pigmented.
  - 4. Application Method: "V" notched squeegee and back rolled.
    - a. Coverage: 90 100sf/gal.
    - b. Number of Coats: Two.

- 5. Aggregates: Manufacturer's standard quartz.
  - a. Coverage: 0.5 lbs/sf.
- 6. Grout Coat: "V" notched squeegee and back rolled.
- 7. Type: Pigmented.
  - a. Coverage: 90 100sf/gal.
  - b. Number of Coats: One.
- E. Top Coat (Armor Top):
  - 1. Resin: Urethane.
  - 2. Formulation Description: 95 percent solids.
  - 3. Type: Pigmented.
  - 4. Finish: Gloss.
  - 5. Application Method: Roller applied.
    - a. Coverage: 500sf/gal.
    - b. Thickness of Coat: 3 mils.
    - c. Number of Coats: One.
- F. System Physical Properties: Provide resinous flooring system with the following minimum physical property requirements when tested according to test methods indicated:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: 17,500 psi per ASTM D 695.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 4,000 psi per ASTM D 638.
  - 3. Flexural Strength: 6,250 psi per ASTM D 790.
  - 4. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 6.2 x 10<sup>5</sup> psi per ASTM D 790.
  - 5. Water Absorption: 0.04% per MIL D-570.
  - 6. Impact Resistance: Pass per MIL D-3134.
  - 7. Abrasion Resistance: 24 mg maximum weight loss per ASTM D 4060.
  - 8. Flammability: Self-extinguishing per ASTM D 635.
  - 9. Hardness: Greater than 4H per ASTM D 3363.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: Type recommended by manufacturer for substrate and body coats indicated.
- B. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry substrate for resinous flooring application.

**RESINOUS FLOORING** 

- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
  - 1. Roughen concrete substrates as follows:
    - a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
    - b. Comply with ASTM C 811 requirements unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
    - c. Prepare substrate to Concrete Surface Profile 3 or 4 per International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI).
  - 2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application of resinous flooring only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb. of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab area in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform plastic sheet test, ASTM D 4263. Proceed with application only after testing indicates absence of moisture in substrates.
    - c. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
  - 4. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Verify that concrete substrates have pH within acceptable range. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
  - 1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
  - 2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.

RESINOUS FLOORING 096723 - 5

- 3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply troweled or screeded body coats in thickness indicated for flooring system. Hand or power trowel and grout to fill voids. When cured, remove trowel marks and roughness using method recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

# 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Core Sampling: At the direction of Owner and at locations designated by Owner, take one core sample per 1000 sq. ft. of resinous flooring, or portion of, to verify thickness. For each sample that fails to comply with requirements, take two additional samples. Repair damage caused by coring and correct deficiencies.
- B. Material Sampling: Owner may at any time (and any number of times) during resinous flooring application require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Owner will engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor
  - 2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's product data.
  - 3. If test results show applied materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect resinous flooring from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096723

RESINOUS FLOORING

#### SECTION 098316 - SPRAYED ACOUSTIC INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Spray-applied cellulose insulation.
- 2. Accessories.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data:

- 1. Spray-applied cellulose insulation.
- 2. Accessories.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

# 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SPRAYED ACOUSTIC INSULATION

- A. Spray Insulation: Tested in accordance with ASTM E1042 by a NVLAP accredited testing laboratory.
  - 1. Characteristics:
    - a. Bond strength shall be greater than 150 psf per ASTM E 736.
    - b. Product shall be Class 1 Class A per ASTM E 84/UL 723.
    - c. Non-corrosive per ASTM C 1149.
    - d. Bond Deflection per ASTM E 759: 6-inch deflection in 10-ft Span No Spalling or Delamination.
    - e. R-Value to be 3.70 per inch per ASTM C 518.
    - f. Comply with 2018 IBC Section 803.12 stability requirements for interior finishes.
    - g. Meet ASTM C 1149.

B. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with the requirements provide products manufactured by or equal to International Cellulose Corporation, K-13 Spray-On-Systems.

# 2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Adhesive: Material recommended by insulation manufacturer where required for adhesion of insulation to substrates.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and report unsatisfactory conditions in writing. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
- B. Verify surfaces to receive spray insulation to determine if priming/sealing is required to insure bonding and/or to prevent discoloration caused by migratory stains.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide masking, drop cloths or other satisfactory coverings for materials/surfaces that are not to receive insulation to protect from over-spray.
- B. Coordinate installation of the sprayed cellulose fiber with work of other trades.
- C. Prime surfaces as required by manufacturer's instructions or as determined by examination.
- D. Prime all gypsum board surfaces with high quality, commercial, gypsum board primer

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install spray applied insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Install spray applied insulation to achieve an average NRC of 1.5" Thickness.
- C. Cure insulation with continuous natural or mechanical ventilation.
- D. Continuous ventilation must be maintained until the material has properly cured.
- E. Remove and dispose of over-spray.

### END OF SECTION 072119

### SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
  - 1. Steel.
  - 2. Galvanized metal.
  - 3. Concrete masonry units.
  - 4. Exterior cement board.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exterior: any surfaces exposed to weather on the exterior surface of the building or any interior surface within Apparatus Bay
- B. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

- B. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Sample for each color required.
- C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 3. VOC content.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide equivalent products by one of the following:
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. Duron, Inc.
  - 3. ICI Paints.
  - 4. M.A.B. Paints
  - 5. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
  - 6. Sherwin-Williams Company
  - 7. Vista Paint.

### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:

- 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Provide materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Colors and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

- A. Block Filler, Latex, Interior/Exterior: MPI #4.
  - 1. Basis of Design: PrepRite Block Filler by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.

### 2.4 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive Primer: MPI #79.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Kem-Bond HS by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
- B. Primer, Galvanized, Water Based: MPI #134.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Pro-Cryl Universal Primer by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

### 2.5 ALKYD BASED PAINTS

- A. Alkyd, Exterior Semi-Gloss (Gloss Level 5): MPI #94.
  - 1. Basis of Design: DTM by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E1.

### 2.6 WATER-BASED PAINTS

- A. Latex, Exterior Semi-Gloss (Gloss Level 5): MPI #11.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Emerald or A100 series by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

## 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. Steel Substrates:

- 1. Alkyd System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive for metal, MPI #79.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.

#### B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

- 1. Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

# C. CMU Substrates:

- 1. Latex over Alkali-Resistant Primer System:
  - a. Block Filler: Latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
- D. Exterior Synthetic Trim Board Substrates:
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

END OF SECTION 099113

### SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - 2. Steel
  - 3. Galvanized metal.
  - 4. Gypsum board.

## B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

INTERIOR PAINTING 099123 - 1

- 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
- 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
- 3. VOC content.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures, less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide equivalent products by one of the following:
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. Duron, Inc.
  - 3. ICI Paints.
  - 4. M.A.B. Paints
  - 5. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
  - 6. Sherwin-Williams Company
  - 7. Vista Paint.

### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

INTERIOR PAINTING 099123 - 2

- C. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, verify 90 percent of paints and coatings comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

- A. Block Filler, Latex, Interior/Exterior: MPI #4.
  - 1. Basis of Design: PrepRite Block Filler by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.

### 2.4 PRIMERS/SEALERS

- A. Primer Sealer, Latex, Interior: MPI #50.
  - 1. Basis of Design: ProMar 200 Zero by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
- B. Primer, Alkali Resistant, Water Based: MPI #3.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Pro-Cryl Universal Primer by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
- C. Primer, Galvanized, Water Based: MPI #134.
  - 1. Basis of Design: PrepRite ProBlock by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.

### 2.5 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based: MPI #107.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Pro-Cry Universal Primer by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E2.

### 2.6 WATER-BASED PAINTS

- A. Latex, Interior, (Gloss Level 2): MPI #44.
  - 1. Basis of Design: ProMar 400 Zero by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
- B. Latex, Interior, Semi-Gloss, (Gloss Level 5): MPI #54.
  - 1. Basis of Design: ProMar 400 by Sherwin-Williams Company.
  - 2. VOC Content: E Range of E3.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Masonry (CMU): 12 percent.
  - 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

## 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Equipment, excluding panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having paintable jacket material.
  - 2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, excluding panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having paintable jacket material.

3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. CMU Substrates:

- 1. Latex System:
  - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.

#### B. Steel Substrates:

- 1. Latex over Primer System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based: MPI #107.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.

### C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

- 1. Latex over Waterborne Primer System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.
- D. Gypsum Board Substrates Gloss Level 2:
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, (Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
- E. Gypsum Board Substrates Gloss Level 5:
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss, (Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.

END OF SECTION 099123

# SECTION 101100 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Visual display board assemblies.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, finishes, and accessories for visual display units.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for surface-burning characteristics of tackboards.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

# 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver factory-fabricated visual display units completely assembled in one piece. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured unit size, or if unit size is impracticable to ship in one piece, provide two or more pieces with joints in locations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
  - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
- 2. Warranty Period: 50 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings from an applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

### 2.2 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARD ASSEMBLY

- A. Basis of Design: A-1 Visual Systems Series 100. Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. AARCO Products, Inc.
  - 2. ADP Lemco, Inc.
  - 3. Architectural School Products Ltd.
  - 4. Aristocrat Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Aywon.
  - 6. Bangor Cork Company, Inc.
  - 7. Best-Rite Manufacturing; a brand division of MooreCo, Inc.
  - 8. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.
  - 9. Egan Visual Inc.
  - 10. EverWhite; a division of Glenroy, Inc.
  - 11. Ghent Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 12. Marsh Industries, Inc.; Visual Products Group.
  - 13. Newline Products, Inc.
  - 14. Peter Pepper Products, Inc.
  - 15. Platinum Visual Systems; a division of ABC School Equipment, Inc.
- B. Visual Display Board Assembly: Factory fabricated.
  - 1. Assembly: markerboard.
  - 2. Corners: Square.
  - 3. Width: 60-inches.
  - 4. Height: 48-inches.
  - 5. Mounting Method: Direct to wall.
- C. Markerboard Panel: Porcelain-enamel-faced markerboard panel on core indicated.
  - 1. Color: White.

- D. Aluminum Frames: Fabricated from not less than 0.062-inch- thick, extruded aluminum; standard size and shape.
  - 1. Aluminum Finish: Clear anodic finish.

### 2.3 MARKERBOARD PANELS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Markerboard Panels: Balanced, high-pressure, factory-laminated markerboard assembly of three-ply construction, consisting of moisture-barrier backing, core material, and porcelain-enamel face sheet with high-gloss finish. Laminate panels under heat and pressure with manufacturer's standard, flexible waterproof adhesive.
  - 1. Face Sheet Thickness: 0.021-inch uncoated base metal thickness.
  - 2. Particleboard Core: 3/8 inch thick; with 0.015-inch- thick, aluminum sheet or 0.013-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet backing.
  - 3. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard moisture-resistant thermoplastic type.

#### 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: PEI-1002, with face sheet manufacturer's standard two- or three-coat process.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-1, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063.
- D. Adhesives for Field Application: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive for use with specific type of panels, sheets, or assemblies; and for substrate application as recommended in writing by visual display unit manufacturer.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

# 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine walls and partitions for proper preparation and backing for visual display units.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances, such as dirt, mold, and mildew, that could impair the performance of and affect the smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.
- C. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display units and wall surfaces.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Factory-Fabricated Visual Display Board Assemblies: Attach concealed clips, hangers, and grounds to wall surfaces and to visual display board assemblies with fasteners at not more than 16 inches o.c. Secure tops and bottoms of boards to walls.
- C. Visual Display Board Assembly Mounting Heights: Install visual display units at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below.
  - 1. Mounting Height: 36 inches above finished floor to bottom edge.

## 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean visual display units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one removable cleaning instructions label to visual display unit in each room.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Cover and protect visual display units after installation and cleaning.

#### **END OF SECTION 101100**

#### SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cutout dimensional characters.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, and layout for each sign to scale.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
  - 2. Include color chart from manufacturer's standard line.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Signs and supporting elements shall withstand the effects of gravity and other loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cutout Characters: Characters with uniform faces; square-cut, smooth, eased edges; precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A.R.K. Ramos.
    - b. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
    - c. APCO Graphics, Inc.
    - d. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
    - e. Cosco.
    - f. Diskey Architectural Signage Inc.
    - g. Gemini Incorporated.
    - h. InPro Corporation (IPC).
    - i. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.
    - i. Metal Arts.
    - k. Metallic Arts.
    - 1. Southwell Company (The).
    - m. Steel Art Company.
  - 2. Character Material: Sheet or plate aluminum.
  - 3. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Thickness: 0.25 inch.
  - 5. Finishes:
    - a. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard to match the following.

- 1) Color 1: Contractor to provide full range of color options for approval.
- 2) Color 2: Contractor to provide full range of color options for approval.
- b. Overcoat: Manufacturer's standard baked-on clear coating.
- 6. Mounting: Projecting studs.
- 7. Typeface: Custom typefaces as indicated on Drawings.

### 2.3 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

#### 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  - 2. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
    - a. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  - 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  - 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  - 5. Internally brace dimensional characters for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners.
  - 6. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
  - 7. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

# 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
  - 3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

### B. Mounting Methods:

- 1. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
  - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place spacers on study, place sign in position, and push until

- spacers are pinched between sign and substrate, embedding the stud ends in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
- b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place spacers on studs, place sign in position with spacers pinched between sign and substrate and install washers and nuts on stud ends projecting through opposite side of surface and tighten.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 101419** 

#### SECTION 101423.13 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Accessible: In accordance with the applicable accessibility standard.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.
- B. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at full scale.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample.
  - 2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
  - 3. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in Project.
- D. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tools: Two set(s) of specialty tools for assembling signs and replacing variable sign components.

# 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

# 2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign system with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
  - b. Advance Corporation.
  - c. Allen Industries Architectural Signage.
  - d. APCO Graphics, Inc.
  - e. ASE, Inc.
  - f. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
  - g. Best Sign Systems, Inc.
  - h. Clarke Systems.
  - i. Cosco.
  - j. Diskey Architectural Signage Inc.
  - k. InPro Corporation (IPC).
  - 1. Mohawk Sign Systems.
  - m. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
  - n. Poblocki Sign Company, LLC.
- 2. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Sandblasted polymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
  - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of sign 0.125 inch.
  - b. Subsurface Graphics: Reverse halftone or dot-screen image.
  - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
  - a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.
- 4. Frame: Horizontal retainers.
  - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - b. Frame Depth: Convex-curved frame to receive removable face sheet and changeable subsurface graphics.
  - c. Profile: Square.
  - d. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.
  - e. Finish and Color: Clear anodized.
- 5. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard method for substrates indicated with concealed anchors.
- 6. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and variable content as scheduled. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

## 2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- D. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.

### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  - 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  - 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.

### 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.

### C. Mounting Methods:

- 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
  - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
  - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on study projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
- 2. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in sign as template. Countersink holes in sign if required. Place sign in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.
- 3. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
- 4. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position and push to engage tape adhesive.
- 5. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply sign component of two-part tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage; push to engage tape adhesive. Keep tape strips 0.250 inch away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges when sign is initially installed or reinstalled. Apply substrate component of tape to substrate in locations aligning with tape on back of sign; push and rub well to fully engage tape adhesive to substrate.
- 6. Magnetic Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support

weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position.

# 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 101423.13** 

### SECTION 102113.19 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 3. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
  - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.
- D. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

### 2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Accurate Partitions Corporation.
  - 2. All American Metal Corp.
  - 3. American Sanitary Partition Corporation.
  - 4. Ampco, Inc.
  - 5. Bradley Corporation; Mills Partitions.
  - 6. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
  - 7. Global Steel Products Corp.
  - 8. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
  - 9. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
  - 10. Marlite.
  - 11. Metpar Corp.
  - 12. Partition Systems Incorporated of South Carolina; Columbia Partitions.
  - 13. Scranton Products.
  - 14. Weis-Robart Partitions, Inc.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.
- D. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.
  - 1. Color and Pattern: One color and pattern in each room as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- F. Brackets (Fittings):
  - 1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets, clear-anodized aluminum or stainless steel.

### 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories.
  - 1. Material: Clear-anodized aluminum or stainless steel.
  - 2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
  - 3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard recessed latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
  - 4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
  - 5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
  - 6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

#### 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.

- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
    - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 2 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

# 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

**END OF SECTION 102113.19** 

## SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
- 2. Public-use shower room accessories.
- 3. Private-use bathroom accessories.
- 4. Underlayatory guards.
- 5. Custodial accessories.

#### B. Owner-Furnished Products:

- 1. Paper towel dispensers
- 2. Waste receptacles.
- 3. Soap dispensers.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
  - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
  - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
  - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
  - 2. Identify products using designations indicated.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- I. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

# 2.2 WASHROOM, SHOWER AND CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc. as indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. AJW Architectural Products.
  - 2. American Specialties, Inc.
  - 3. Bradley Corporation.
  - 4. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
  - 5. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
  - 6. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser drawing designation A:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #B-2888
  - 2. Description: Twin roll dispenser.
  - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
  - 4. Capacity: Designed for two standard core tissue rolls.
- C. Surface Mounted Soap Dispenser drawing designation B:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #B-4112
  - 2. Description: Soap dispenser.
  - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
  - 4. Capacity: 40 fl. oz.
  - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- D. Grab Bars drawing designation C, D, E:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Brobrick #B-6806.99 x 18
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Brobrick #B-6806.99 x 36
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Brobrick #B-6806.99 x 42
  - 4. Description: 1 ½ inch diameter, non-slip grip, concealed mounting flange.
  - 5. Size: 18 inches long.
  - 6. Size: 36 inches long.
  - 7. Size: 42 inches long.
  - 8. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- E. Mirror Units refer to section 088000 "Glazing".
- F. Sanitary Napkin Disposal drawing designation F:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #B-270
  - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
  - 3. Door or Cover: Self-closing disposal-opening cover.
  - 4. Receptacle: Removable
  - 5. Capacity: 1 gal.
  - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- G. Underlayatory Guard drawing designation H:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Truebro by IPS Corporation; LavShield 2018 or equal.
- 2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.
- H. Paper Towel Dispenser drawing designation K:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #B-4262
  - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
  - 3. Capacity: 400 C-fold or 525 multifold towels.
  - 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- I. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder drawing designation N:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: See Plumbing.
- J. Folding Shower Seat drawing designation L.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #5181.
  - 2. Description: Reversible folding shower seat with self-locking mechanism.
  - 3. Seat: 33" wide, projects 22 5/16", support 400-lb.
  - 4. Material and Finish: 1/2" thick solid phenolic seat, ivory. Type 304 stainless steel frame and mounting brackets.
  - 5. Coordinate with plumbing supplier. Certain manufacturers provide shower seat integral with one-piece shower units.
- K. Shower Curtain Rod/Curtain/Hooks drawing designation M:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #B-6107 rod.
  - 2. Description: Heavy-duty rod, Type 304 stainless steel, satin finish. 18-gauge, 1 1/4" diameter. Flanges 2 1/2" square.
  - 3. Mounting: Exposed fasteners.
  - 4. Provide vinyl shower curtain (#B 204-2) and stainless-steel curtain hooks (#B 204-1).
  - 5. Coordinate with plumbing supplier. Certain manufacturers provide shower rods integral with one-piece shower units.
- L. Robe Hook drawing designation Q.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick #672.
  - 2. Description: Double, projecting robe hook.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Bright polished stainless steel.

# 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

# 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 102800

#### SECTION 104413 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- 2. Fire protection cabinets for portable fire extinguishers.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FMG.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire protection cabinets.
  - 1. Fire Protection Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Size: 6 by 6 inches square.
- D. Product Schedule: For fire protection cabinets. Coordinate final fire protection cabinet schedule with fire extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Maintenance Data: For fire protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- B. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
  - 1. Sheet: ASTM B 209.
  - 2. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Transparent Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), 6 mm thick, with Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

## 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS (FE)

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire protection cabinet indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Amerex Corporation.
    - b. Ansul Incorporated; Tyco International Ltd.
    - c. Badger Fire Protection; a Kidde company.
    - d. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
    - e. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
    - f. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
    - g. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division; Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
    - h. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - i. Moon-American.
    - j. Pem All Fire Extinguisher Corp.; a division of PEM Systems, Inc.
    - k. Potter Roemer LLC.
    - 1. Pyro-Chem; Tyco Safety Products.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container FE-1 UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container. Provide at FE or FEC.

C. Wet-Chemical Type FE-2: UL-rated 2-A:1-B:C:K, 1.6-gal. nominal capacity, with potassium acetate-based chemical in stainless-steel container, with pressure indicating gage. Provide at FE-K.

### 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Amerex Corporation.
    - b. Ansul Incorporated; Tyco International Ltd.
    - c. Badger Fire Protection; a Kidde company.
    - d. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
    - e. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
    - f. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
    - g. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - h. Potter Roemer LLC.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
  - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

## 2.4 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET (FEC)

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide J.L. Industries Ambassador Series No. 1017 at semirecessed locations, or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers:
    - a. Fire End & Croker Corporation
    - b. J. L. Industries, Inc., a division of Activar Construction Products Group
    - c. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division, Subsidiary of Kidde PLC
    - d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
    - e. Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.
    - f. Moon-American
    - g. Potter Roemer LLC
    - h. Watrous Division, American Specialties, Inc.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Steel sheet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping

surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend). Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for recessed cabinets but are of sufficient depth to accommodate semirecessed cabinet installation.

- 1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.
- F. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- G. Door Style: V vertical duo with pull.
- H. Door Glazing: Acrylic sheet.
  - 1. Acrylic Sheet Color: Clear transparent acrylic sheet.
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1. Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.
  - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

### J. Accessories:

- 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
- 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
  - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."

# 2.5 CABINET FABRICATION

- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Finish fire protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 2.7 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning".
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: white, gloss.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 FIRE EXTINGUISHER EXECUTION

### A. Examination

- 1. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - a. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### B. Installation

1. General: Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.2 CABINET EXECUTION

# A. Examination

- 1. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## B. Preparation

1. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

## C. Installation

- 1. Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
- 3. Identification: Apply decals at locations indicated.

## D. Adjusting and Cleaning

- 1. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- 2. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- 3. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- 4. Touch up marred finishes or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- 5. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

### SECTION 105113 - METAL LOCKERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Knocked-down lockers.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of metal locker.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal locker and bench.
- B. Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show locker trim and accessories.
  - 3. Include locker identification system and numbering sequence.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver metal lockers until spaces to receive them are clean, dry, and ready for their installation.

### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of recessed openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of work specified in other Sections to ensure that metal lockers can be supported and installed as indicated.

### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures.
    - b. Faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.
  - 2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Knocked-Down Metal Lockers: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LOCKER MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain metal lockers, and accessories from single source from single locker manufacturer.

# 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Requirements: For lockers indicated to be accessible, comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC A117.1.

### 2.3 KNOCKED-DOWN LOCKERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Art Metal Products; Heavy Duty Ventilated (HDV), Double Tier or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Art Metal Products.
  - 2. ASI Storage Solutions Inc.
  - 3. DeBourgh Mfg. Co.
  - 4. General Storage Systems Ltd.
  - 5. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
  - 6. List Industries Inc.
  - 7. Lyon Workspace Products, LLC.
  - 8. Olympus Lockers & Storage Products, Inc.
  - 9. Penco Products, Inc
  - 10. Republic Storage Systems Company.
  - 11. Shanahan's Limited.
- B. Size: 12" wide x 18" deep x 72" tall

- C. Doors: One piece; fabricated from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; formed into channel shape with double bend at vertical edges and with right-angle single bend at horizontal edges.
  - 1. Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard reinforcing angles, channels, or stiffeners for doors more than 15 inches wide; welded to inner face of doors.
  - 2. Stiffeners: Manufacturer's standard full-height stiffener fabricated from 0.048-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to inner face of doors.
  - 3. Sound-Dampening Panels: Manufacturer's standard, designed to stiffen doors and reduce sound levels when doors are closed, of die-formed metal with full perimeter flange and sound-dampening material; welded to inner face of doors.
  - 4. Door Style: Vented panel as follows:
    - a. Diamond perforated.
- D. Body: Assembled by riveting or bolting body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:
  - 1. Tops, Bottoms, and Intermediate Dividers: 0.024-inch nominal thickness, with single bend at sides.
  - 2. Backs and Sides: 0.024-inch nominal thickness, with full-height, double-flanged connections.
  - 3. Shelves: 0.024-inchnominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.
- E. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral, full-height door strikes on vertical main frames.
- F. Hinges: Welded to door and attached to door frame with no fewer than two factory-installed rivets per hinge that are completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.
  - 1. Knuckle Hinges: Steel, full loop, five or seven knuckles, tight pin; minimum 2 inches high. Provide no fewer than three hinges for each door more than 42 inches high.
- G. Recessed Door Handle and Latch: Finger-lift latch control designed for use with either built-in combination locks or padlocks; positive automatic latching, chromium plated; pry and vandal resistant.
  - 1. Latch Hooks: Equip doors 48 inches and higher with three latch hooks and doors less than 48 inches high with two latch hooks; fabricated from 0.105-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded or riveted to full-height door strikes; with resilient silencer on each latch hook.
  - 2. Latching Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard, rattle-free latching mechanism and moving components isolated to prevent metal-to-metal contact, and incorporating a prelocking device that allows locker door to be locked while door is open and then closed without unlocking or damaging lock or latching mechanism.
- H. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch high.

- I. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type hooks, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.
- J. Legs: 6 inches high; formed by extending vertical frame members, or fabricated from 0.075-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to bottom of locker.
  - 1. Closed Front and End Bases: Fabricated from 0.036-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- K. Filler Panels: Fabricated from manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.036-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.

## L. Materials:

- 1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
- M. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.4 LOCKS

A. Combination Padlocks: Provided by Owner.

### 2.5 LOCKER FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate metal lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with metal faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.
  - 1. Form body panels, doors, shelves, and accessories from one-piece steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide fasteners, filler plates, supports, clips, and closures as required for complete installation.
- B. Fabricate each metal locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments. Factory weld frame members of each metal locker together to form a rigid, one-piece assembly.
- C. Equipment: Provide each locker with an identification plate and the following equipment:
  - 1. One double-prong ceiling hook and two single-prong wall hooks.
- D. Knocked-Down Construction: Fabricate metal lockers using nuts, bolts, screws, or rivets for nominal assembly at Project site.
- E. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
  - 1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches above the floor.
  - 2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches above the floor.
- F. Continuous Base: Formed into channel or zee profile for stiffness, and fabricated in lengths as long as practical to enclose base and base ends of metal lockers; finished to match lockers.

G. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.

## 2.6 LOCKER ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.
- B. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.
  - 1. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, floors, and support bases, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 LOCKER INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
  - 1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
  - 2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top.
- B. Knocked-Down Lockers: Assemble with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on door faces or face frames.

# C. Equipment:

- 1. Attach hooks with at least two fasteners.
- 2. Attach door locks on doors using security-type fasteners.
- 3. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two aluminum rivets
  - b. Attach plates to upper shelf of each open-front metal locker, centered, with a least two aluminum rivets.
- D. Trim: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.
  - 1. Attach recess trim to recessed metal lockers with concealed clips.

2. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners. Locate filler panels where indicated on Drawings.

# 3.3 LOCKER ADJUSTING

A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors and latches to operate easily without binding.

## 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect metal lockers and benches from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.
- B. Touch up marred finishes, or replace metal lockers or benches that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 105113

### SECTION 105613 - METAL STORAGE SHELVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Four-post metal storage shelving.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for metal storage shelving.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design metal storage shelving, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Seismic Performance: Metal storage shelving shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Seismic Component Importance Factor: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 513, Type 2.

## 2.3 FOUR-POST METAL STORAGE SHELVING

A. Open Four-Post Metal Storage Shelving: Factory-formed, field-assembled, freestanding system, designed for shelves to span between and be supported by corner posts, with shelves adjustable over the height of shelving unit. Fabricate initial shelving unit with a post at each corner. Fabricate additional shelving units similarly, so each unit is independent. Provide fixed top and bottom shelves, adjustable intermediate shelves, and accessories indicated.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Adjustable Shelving Products; a division of Karp Associates, Inc.
  - b. Borroughs Corporation.
  - c. Edsal.
  - d. Equipto.
  - e. Hallowell; Division of List Industries, Inc.
  - f. Hodge; a division of Durham Mfg. Co., Inc.
  - g. Jeter Systems Corporation.
  - h. Lyon Workspace Products, LLC.
  - i. Montel Aetnastak Inc.
  - j. Penco Products, Inc.
  - k. Richards-Wilcox, Inc.
  - 1. Rousseau Metal Inc.
  - m. Safco Products; a division of LDI.
  - n. Schaefer Systems International, Inc.
  - o. Shelf Esteem Inc.
  - p. Spacesaver Corporation.
  - q. Tennsco.
  - r. Unicor; Federal Prison Industries, Inc.
  - s. Western Pacific Storage Systems.
- 2. Load-Carrying Capacity per Shelf: 700 lb.
- 3. Posts: Fabricated from hot-rolled steel; in T- post shape; with perforations at 1-1/2 inches o.c. to receive shelf-to-post connectors.
- 4. Bracing: Manufacturer's standard, diagonal cross bracing at back; as required for stability, load-carrying capacity of shelves, and number of shelves.
- 5. Solid-Type Shelves: Fabricated from steel sheet as follows:
  - a. Steel-Sheet Thickness, Nominal: 0.030 inch.
  - b. Fabricate fronts and backs of shelves with box-formed edges, with corners lapped and welded.
- 6. Shelf Quantity: Five shelves per shelving unit in addition to top and bottom shelf.
- 7. Shelf-to-Post Connectors: Manufacturer's standard connectors.
- 8. Base: Open, with exposed post legs.
- 9. Overall Unit Width: 42 inches.
- 10. Overall Unit Depth: 12 inches.
- 11. Overall Unit Height: 72 inches.
- 12. Finish: Baked enamel.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

# 2.4 FABRICATION

A. Shop Fabrication: Prefabricate shelving components in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field fabrication; temporarily preassemble shelving components where necessary to ensure that field-assembled components fit together properly. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

- B. Fabricate metal storage shelving square and rigid, with posts plumb and true and shelves flat and free of dents or distortion. Fabricate connections to form a rigid structure, free of buckling and warping.
  - 1. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges.
  - 2. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
  - 3. Build in straps, plates, brackets, and other reinforcements as needed to support shelf loading.
  - 4. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications to receive hardware, fasteners, and similar items.
- C. Form edges and corners free of sharp edges or rough areas. Fold back and crimp exposed edges of unsupported sheet metal to form a 1/2-inch-wide hem on the concealed side; ease edges of metal plate to radius of approximately 1/32 inch. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 2.6 STEEL-SHEET FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry thickness.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine floors for suitable conditions where metal storage shelving will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Vacuum finished floor and wet mop resilient flooring over which metal storage shelving is to be installed.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal storage shelving level, plumb, square, rigid, true, and with shelves flat and free of dents or distortion. Make connections to form a rigid structure, free of buckling and warping.
  - 1. Install exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible.
  - 2. Install braces, straps, plates, brackets, and other reinforcements as needed to support shelf loading and as required for stability.
  - 3. Adjust post-base bolt leveler to achieve level and plumb installation.
  - 4. Anchor shelving units to floor with floor anchors through floor plate. Shim floor plate to achieve level and plumb installation.
  - 5. Install shelves in each shelving unit at spacing indicated on Drawings or, if not indicated, at equal spacing.
    - a. Four-Post Metal Storage Shelving: Install four clips, one at each post, for support of each shelf; with clips fully engaged in post perforations.

## 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erect four-post metal storage shelving to a maximum tolerance from vertical of 1/2 inch in up to 10 feet of height, not exceeding 1 inch for heights taller than 10 feet.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust metal storage shelving so that connectors and other components engage accurately and securely.
- B. Adjust and lubricate operable components to operate smoothly and easily, without binding or warping. Check and readjust operating hardware.
- C. Touch up marred finishes or replace metal storage shelving that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by metal storage shelving manufacturer.
- D. Replace metal storage shelving that has been damaged or has deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 105613

### SECTION 107114 - METAL SUNSHADES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

1. Modular, shop-fabricated, metal sunshades mounted on exterior building walls.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AAMA 2605 High Performance Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels.
- B. AAMA 609 & 610 Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum.
- C. AAMA 611 Voluntary Specifications for anodized architectural aluminum.
- D. American Welding Society- AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code-Aluminum.
- E. ASTM B 117 Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus.
- F. ASTM B 209 Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- G. ASTM B 221 Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
- H. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufactures (NAAMM).

# 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each sunshade components and finish.
- B. Shop drawings showing layout, dimensions, spacing of components, anchorage and installation details.
- C. Structural calculations. Provide engineering calculations for the Sun Control Devices and mounting brackets, prepared by an engineer registered in the state where the project is located.
- D. Samples: 10 by 10 inches minimum size sample of sunshade panel illustrating design, fabrication workmanship, and selected color coating.
- E. Delegated Design Submittal: For sunshade devices indicated to comply with structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design structural support framing components for sunshades under direct supervision of professional structural engineer.
- B. Installer qualifications: Approved by manufacturer for installation of sunshade system.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

A. Provide 20-year warranty for factory finish against cracking, peeling, and blistering under normal use.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the requirements provide Ireland Series "Wexford 30" sunshade system manufactured by Architectural Grilles and Sunshades, Inc. (708) 479-9458, or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. AlumaFab Metal Sales
  - 2. American Warming & Ventilating
  - 3. Ametco Manufacturing Corp.
  - 4. Architectural Fabrication
  - 5. ASCA
  - 6. Clover Architectural Products
  - 7. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - 8. C.R. Laurence Company Co., Inc.
  - 9. DAMS Inc.
  - 10. Hendrick Architectural Products
  - 11. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
  - 12. Protean Construction Products, Inc.
  - 13. Ruskin Company
  - 14. Savannah Trims
  - 15. Tajima Corporation USA
  - 16. Unicel Architectural Corp.
- B. Size: See drawings.

# 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded aluminum: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T5 and T6.
- B. Sheet aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

### 2.3 SUNSHADE SYSTEM

# A. Components:

1. Outriggers: 1/4-inch thick aluminum plate; ASTM B 221, alloy 6063 T6; size to meet design criteria.

a. Square configuration.

#### B. Exterior wall brackets

- 1. Bracket to mount directly to exterior wall.
- 2. Fascia: 1/8 inch thick aluminum extrusion; ASTM B 221, 6063 T5 alloy.
  - a. Channel tube fascia; 1-1/2 inch by 5 inch.
- 3. Blade options:
  - a. Airfoils; ASTM B 221, alloy 6063 T5; size: 6 inch.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Provide fixed sun control devices and accessories of design, material, sizes, depth, arrangement, and thickness as indicated on Drawings and as required for optimal performance with respect to strength, durability, and uniform appearance.
- B. Corners: Miter corners as indicated on shop drawings.
- C. Fabrication tolerances: Maximum allowable tolerances.
  - 1. Bow: +/- 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Dimensional width or length: +/ 1/8 inch.
  - 3. Squareness: +/ 1/8 inch.

## 2.5 FINISHES

A. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrate conditions in areas to receive the work. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and interface with adjacent work. Do not proceed until any unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Upon receipt of sun control devices, thoroughly examine units for damage. Promptly report any observed damage to manufacturer in writing. Include digital photographs of any observed damage as well as a copy of the bill of lading disclosing the damage.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prior to fabrication, field verify required dimensions.

B. Coordinate sun control device installation with exterior walls to ensure proper structural support is provided, attachment of sun control devices is compatible with wall system components, and weather tightness of exterior envelop is maintained.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installation of the work.
- B. Verify dimensions of supporting structure at the site by accurate field measurements so that the work will be accurately designed, fabricated, and fitted to the structure.
- C. Anchor sun control devices to exterior wall as indicated on approved shop drawings, and as specified.
- D. Separate dissimilar metals. Use gasket fasteners, isolation shims, or isolation tape where needed to eliminate possibility of galvanic action between metals.
- E. Do not erect warped, bowed, deformed, or otherwise damaged or defaced members. Remove and replace any members damaged in the erection process as directed.
- F. Set units level, plumb and true to line, with uniform joints.
- G. Sun Control Device installation:
  - 1. Layout and verify centerline dimensions prior to setting outriggers.
  - 2. Install the two outer most outriggers plumb and level to the substrate.
  - 3. Shoot a line from outrigger to outrigger to find the depth dimension of the outer line.
  - 4. Proceed with the installation by attaching the middle outrigger, shimming as required.
  - 5. Shims: Non-ferrous, as recommended by manufacturer. Verify centerline dimensions after shims are installed.

## H. Erection Tolerances:

- 1. Variation from level: +/- 1/8 inch maximum in 20 ft.- 0 inch runs, non-cumulative.
  - a. Maximum Offset From True Alignment Between Adjacent Members Butting or In-Line: +/- 1/32 inch.
- I. Do not field cut or trim units. Cut and trim component parts during erection only with the approval of the manufacturer, and in accordance with his recommendations. Restore finish completely. Remove and replace members where cutting and trimming has impaired the strength or appearance of the assembly as directed.
- J. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove site cuttings from finish surfaces.
- B. Clean and wash prefinished surfaces with mild soap and water; rinse with clean water.

C. Clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with recommendations found in AAMA 609 and 610. Do not use aggressive alkaline, TSP, acid cleaners, or abrasive cleaners on aluminum surfaces.

END OF SECTION 107114

#### SECTION 107119 – FLOOD PROOOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fixed flood vents.
  - 2. Removable flood panels.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASCE/SEI 24-14, Flood Resistant Design and Construction.
- B. FEMA, 44-CFR, Part 59-60 and 60.3 National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP).
- C. FEMA TB 1-2020, Openings in Foundation Walls and Walls of Enclosures for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Areas.
- D. FEMA TB 2-2008, Flood Damage-Resistant Materials Requirements.
- E. FEMA Technical Bulletin 3-93 Non-Residential Flood Proofing.
- F. NER-624, National Evaluation Report No. NER-624, July 2007.
- G. International Code Council ICC-ES Acceptance Criteria for Automatic Foundation Flood Vents (AC-364), October 2007.
- H. International Code Council ICC-ES Acceptance Criteria for Mechanically Operated Flood Vents (AC-364), October 2013.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide shop drawings showing layout, profiles, and product components, including anchorage, hardware, and finishes. Include dimensional plans, applicable material specifications, elevations and sections detailing mounting and connections, and load diagrams.
- C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For flood proofing products indicated to comply with structural performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

B. Closeout Submittals: Provide Operation and Maintenance data to include methods for maintaining installed products, precautions against cleaning materials, and methods detrimental to finishes and performance.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum 5 years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer with experience on projects of a similar size and scope with similar installation conditions.
- C. Welder Qualifications:
  - 1. AWS-1-GMAW-S, WPS No. B2.004.90 for applicable material used in production of specified product.
  - 2. ASCE 24-14 AWS D1.2 Structural Welding Code Aluminum.

# 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.
- B. Store products in clean, dry area indoors until ready for installation. Store materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Protect materials and finish from damage during handling and installation.

### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Flood Vents: Warranty period of 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Removable Panels: Watertight closure shall operate satisfactorily and be free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of not less than one year from the date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed vents and removable panels from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design vents and panels, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Flood Vents to comply with the following:
  - 1. Certifications:
    - a. International Code Council Evaluation Service Report (ESR-2074) including Florida Building Code Supplement, California Building and Residential Code Supplement.
    - b. Florida Building Product Approval (FL5822) approved for use in High Velocity Hurricane Zones (HVHZ) and impact rated garage doors.
  - 2. Compliance:
    - a. ICC-ES Acceptance Criteria for Mechanically Operated Flood Vents (AC364).
    - b. FEMA TB-1: Openings in Foundation Walls and Walls of Enclosures.
    - c. NFIP Flood Insurance Manual.
    - d. ASCE 24: Flood Resistant Design and Construction.
    - e. International Building Codes (IBC).
    - f. International Energy Conservation Code (IECC).
- C. Removable Panels to comply with the following:
  - 1. Design watertight panels to perform under load criteria as set forth in standards noted above. All water pressure loads and operating loads are transferred to the building structure.
  - 2. Standard loading: Standard Flood Panels are designed for hydrostatic loading, hydrodynamic loads, wave loads and debris impact loads.

# 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Type 6061
- B. Stainless Steel: Type 316L Marine Grade.
- C. Fiberglass Reinforced Panels.

## 2.4 FLOOD VENTS

- A. Basis of Design: SMART VENT Products
- B. Insulated Series: Provide flood protection only. Insulated Core with perimeter weather-stripping.
  - 1. Model #1540-520: Flush or Solid Insulated Door.
    - a. Flood Coverage: 200 sq. ft.
    - b. Insulated Core R-Value: 8.34

- c. Size: 16 inches W by 8 inches H.
- d. Rough Opening: 16-1/4 inches W by 8-1/4 inches H.
- 2. Model #1540-521 Stacking Model: Flush or Solid Insulated Doors.
  - a. Flood Coverage: 400 sq. ft.
  - b. Insulated core R-Value: 8.34
  - c. Size: 16 inches W by 16 inches H.
  - d. Rough Opening: 16-1/4 inches W by 16-3/8 inches H.
- 3. Model #1540-524 Overhead Garage Door Model: Flush or Solid Insulated Doors, standard finish powder-coated white.
  - a. Flood Coverage: 200 sq. ft.
  - b. Insulated core R-Value: 8.34
  - c. Size: 16 inches W by 8 inches H.
  - d. Rough Opening: 16 inches W by 8 inches H.
- 4. Model #1540-574 Overhead Garage Door Model: Flush or Solid Insulated Doors, standard finish powder-coated white.
  - a. Flood Coverage: 200 sq. ft.
  - b. Insulated core R-Value: 8.34
  - c. Size: 14-1/2 inches W by 8-1/2 inches H.
  - d. Rough Opening: 14-1/2 inches W by 8-1/2 inches H.
- 5. Finishes
  - a. Powder-Coat Finish: To be selected by Owner/Architect.

### 2.5 REMOVABLE PANELS

- A. Basis of Design: FRA Door Panel as manufactured by Flood Risk America.
- B. Product Details:
  - 1. Sealing Requirements: Flood Panel and gasket design shall provide an effective seal for short-term high water situations, to the protection level indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Operation: Panels are non-operable.
  - 3. Mounting/Load Transfer: Anchor to existing structure. Flood Panel designed for specified hydrostatic pressure (and other loads as specified) and will transfer loads to adjacent structure.
  - 4. Panels to be anchored utilizing mechanical, anchor types as designed. Manufacturer to include all anchors, water-stop, and sealants, as designed.
  - 5. Loading Direction Selection:
  - 6. Positive Pressure Loading: (Direction of loading against flood panel so as to further compress gaskets against flood panel frame-"seating").
  - 7. Provide compression gasket, which requires no inflation.
  - 8. Provide anchoring to all structural elements.

FLOOD PROOFING

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify vent locations are ready to receive work, and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by manufacturers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.
- C. Verify that no obstructions exist that will interfere with the proper operation of the vents.
- D. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installations instructions, approved shop drawings, shipping, handling, and storage instructions, and product carton instructions for installation.
- B. Install vents in at least two different walls spaced evenly around foundation perimeter and located a maximum of 12 inches higher than the, interior or exterior grade, to the bottom of vent
- C. Install vents plumb, level, square, true to line, and rigid.
- D. Attach vents securely in place using fasteners supplied or approved by manufacturer.
- E. Separate incompatible materials to prevent galvanic corrosion.
- F. Panels shall be installed level, square, plumb, and rigid.
- G. Sealants, water-stop, and grouting to be applied per product application directions and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Tolerances: All dimensional requirements must be in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and shop drawings.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Products to be operated and field verified including the sealing surfaces to assure that they maintain contact at the correct sealing points.

B. Verify all anchorage is in accordance with manufacture's installation instructions and applicable data sheets.

# 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair or replace damaged installed products or components.
- B. Clean all sealing surfaces.
- C. Touch up damaged finish.

END OF SECTION 107119

### SECTION 113100 - RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigeration appliances.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for a list of Owner-furnished products.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, dimensions, furnished accessories, and finishes for each appliance.
- B. Product Schedule: For appliances. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

# 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of appliance, from manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each residential appliance to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain residential appliances from single source.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with the following:
  - 1. NFPA: Provide electrical appliances listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. ANSI: Provide gas-burning appliances that comply with ANSI Z21 Series standards.

C. Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace residential appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Refrigerator/Freezer, Sealed System: Full warranty, including parts and labor, for on-site service on the product.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Sealed Refrigeration System Insert item: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Other Components: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Appliances: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Amana; a division of Whirlpool Corporation.
  - 2. BOSCH Home Appliances.
  - 3. Dacor, Inc.
  - 4. Electrolux Home Products (Frigidaire).
  - 5. General Electric Company (GE).
  - 6. Jenn-Air: a division of Whirlpool Corporation.
  - 7. KitchenAid; a division of Whirlpool Corporation.
  - 8. LG Appliances.
  - 9. Maytag; a division of Whirlpool Corporation.
  - 10. Miele, Inc.
  - 11. Samsung.
  - 12. Sears Brands LLC (Kenmore).
  - 13. Whirlpool Corporation.

## 2.3 REFRIGERATOR/FREEZERS

A. Refrigerator/Freezer: Two-door refrigerator/freezer with freezer on bottom and complying with AHAM HRF-1.

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Whirlpool WRT311FZDW.
- 2. Type: Freestanding.
- 3. Dimensions:
  - a. Width: 35-5/8 inches.
  - b. Depth: 34-5/8 inches.
  - c. Height: 70-1/8 inches.

# 4. Storage Capacity:

- a. Refrigeration Compartment Volume: 18 cu. ft.
- b. Freezer Volume: 7.0 cu. ft.
- c. Shelf Area: Five adjustable glass shelves (refrigerator), One Plastic and one wire shelf (freezer).
- d. Bins: Three adjustable bins and three fixed bins (refrigerator),

#### 5. General Features:

- a. Dispenser in door for ice and cold water.
- b. Built-in water-filtration system.
- c. Dual refrigeration systems.
- d. Separate temperature controls for each compartment.

## 6. Refrigerator Features:

- a. Interior light in refrigeration compartment.
- b. Compartment Storage: Vegetable crisper and meat compartment.
- c. Door Storage: Modular compartments.
- d. Temperature-controlled meat/deli bin.
- 7. Freezer Features: One freezer compartment configured as pull-out drawer.
  - a. Automatic defrost.
  - b. Interior light in freezer compartment.
  - c. Automatic icemaker and storage bin.
- 8. ENERGY STAR: Provide appliances that qualify for the EPA/DOE ENERGY STAR product-labeling program for CEE Tier 2.
- 9. Appliance Color/Finish: Stainless steel.

# 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, power connections, and other conditions affecting installation and performance of residential appliances.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before appliance installation.
- C. Examine walls, ceilings, and roofs for suitable conditions where overhead exhaust hoods and microwave ovens with vented exhaust fans will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.
- C. Utilities: Comply with plumbing and electrical requirements.

# 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform visual, mechanical, and electrical inspection and testing for each appliance according to manufacturers' written recommendations. Certify compliance with each manufacturer's appliance-performance parameters.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After installation, start units to confirm proper operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.
- B. An appliance will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## END OF SECTION 113100

### SECTION 122113 - HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Horizontal louver blinds with aluminum slats.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting horizontal louver blinds and accessories.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of horizontal louver blind.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of horizontal louver blind indicated.
  - 1. Slat: Not less than 12 inches long.
  - 2. Horizontal Louver Blind: Full-size unit, not less than 16 inches wide by 24 inches long.
- D. Window-Treatment Schedule: For horizontal louver blinds. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of horizontal louver blind.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For horizontal louver blinds to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver horizontal louver blinds in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install horizontal louver blinds until construction and wet and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where horizontal louver blinds are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain horizontal louver blinds from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS, ALUMINUM SLATS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Hunter Douglas Contract CL model or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Levolor Contract; a Newell Rubbermaid company.
  - 2. Springs Window Fashions.
- B. Slats: Aluminum; alloy and temper recommended by producer for type of use and finish indicated; with crowned profile and radius corners.
  - 1. Width: 1 inch.
  - 2. Thickness: Not less than 0.006 inch.
  - 3. Spacing: 22 mm.
  - 4. Finish: Ionized antistatic, dust-repellent, baked polyester finish.
  - 5. Features:
    - a. Lift-Cord Rout Holes: Minimum size required for lift cord and located near back (outside) edge of slat to maximize slat overlap and minimize light gaps between slats.
- C. Headrail: Formed steel or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled. Headrails fully enclose operating mechanisms on three sides.
  - 1. Capacity: One blind per headrail unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Ends: Capped or plugged.
  - 3. Manual Lift Mechanism:
    - a. Lift-Cord Lock: Variable; stops lift cord at user-selected position within blind full operating range.

- b. Operator: Extension of lift cord(s) through lift-cord lock mechanism to form cord pull.
- 4. Manual Tilt Mechanism: Enclosed worm-gear mechanism and linkage rod that adjusts ladders.
  - a. Tilt: Full.
  - b. Over-Rotation Protection: Manufacturer's detachable operator or slip clutch to prevent over rotation of gear.
- 5. Manual Lift-Operator and Tilt-Operator Lengths: Manufacturer's standard.
- 6. Manual Lift-Operator and Tilt-Operator Locations: Right side and left side of headrail, respectively unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Bottom Rail: Formed-steel or extruded-aluminum tube that secures and protects ends of ladders and lift cords and has plastic- or metal-capped ends.
  - 1. Type: Top contoured to match crowned shape of slat.
- E. Lift Cords: Manufacturer's standard braided cord.
- F. Ladders: Evenly spaced across headrail at spacing that prevents long-term slat sag.
- G. Mounting Brackets: With spacers and shims required for blind placement and alignment indicated.
  - 1. Type: End.
  - 2. Intermediate Support: Provide intermediate support brackets to produce support spacing recommended by blind manufacturer for weight and size of blind.
- H. Hold-Down Brackets and Hooks or Pins: Manufacturer's standard.
- I. Colors, Textures, Patterns, and Gloss:
  - 1. Slats: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 2. Components: Provide rails, cords, ladders, and materials exposed to view matching or coordinating with slat color unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLIND FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate horizontal louver blinds to comply with WCMA A 100.1 including requirements for corded, flexible, looped devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
  - 1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which blind is installed less 1/4 inch per side or 1/2-inch total, plus or minus 1/8 inch. Length equal to head-to-sill dimension of opening in which blind is installed less 1/4 inch, plus or minus 1/8 inch.

- C. Concealed Components: Noncorrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
  - 1. Lift-and-Tilt Mechanisms: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- D. Mounting and Intermediate Brackets: Designed for removal and reinstallation of blind without damaging blind and adjacent surfaces, for supporting blind components, and for bracket positions and blind placement indicated.
- E. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to brackets and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting blinds and accessories under conditions of normal use.

### F. Color-Coated Finish:

1. Metal: For components exposed to view, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install horizontal louver blinds level and plumb, aligned and centered on openings, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Locate so exterior slat edges are not closer than 1 inch from interior faces of glass and not closer than 1/2 inch from interior faces of glazing frames through full operating ranges of blinds
  - 2. Install mounting and intermediate brackets to prevent deflection of headrails.
  - 3. Install with clearances that prevent interference with adjacent blinds, adjacent construction, and operating hardware of glazed openings, other window treatments, and similar building components and furnishings.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust horizontal louver blinds to operate free of binding or malfunction through full operating ranges.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean horizontal louver blind surfaces after installation according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer and that ensures that horizontal louver blinds are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged horizontal louver blinds that cannot be repaired in a manner approved by Architect before time of Substantial Completion.
- D. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.

END OF SECTION 122113

## SECTION 123661 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Quartz agglomerate countertops and backsplashes.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 064116 "Plastic Laminate Faced Cabinets" for cabinets to receive quartz agglomerate countertops.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.

### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements before countertop fabrication is complete.

# 1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

- A. Configuration: Provide countertops as detailed on Drawings.
- B. Fabrication: Fabricate tops in one piece with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

## 2.2 COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- B. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.
- C. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of filled plastic resin and complying with the "Physical Characteristics of Materials" Article of ANSI SS1.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one or more of the following manufacturers:
    - a. Cambria.
    - b. Cosentino North America.
    - c. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - d. EOS Surfaces, LLC.
    - e. HanStone Quartz; Hyundai L & C USA.
    - f. LG Hausys, Ltd.
    - g. Lotte Chemical Co., LTD.
    - h. Meganite Inc.
    - i. Terrazzo & Marble Supply Companies.
    - j. Transolid.
    - k. Vicostone USA.
    - l. Wilsonart LLC.
  - 2. Colors and Patterns: TBD.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet.

- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- G. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661

## SECTION 21 10 00 - FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fire-suppression water-service piping and related components outside the building and service entrance piping through floor into the building and the following:
  - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
  - 2. Fire-suppression specialty valves.
  - 3. Concrete vaults.
  - 4. Protective enclosures.
  - 5. Alarm devices.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that are furnished to the site, ready for installation.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems".

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

## A. Regulatory Requirements:

- 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying the water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
- 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with FM Global's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-suppression water-service piping.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
  - 1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
  - 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
  - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
  - 2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.
- C. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
- D. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  - 1. Standard: UL 213.
  - 2. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
- F. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

# 2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
- B. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end.
- C. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end.
- D. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Anvil International, Tyco Fire Products, LP, Victaulic Company or approved equal.

- 2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
- 3. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
- E. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 1. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- F. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 1. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- G. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

#### 2.3 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: FM Global approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to Class 150.
- B. Molded PE Fittings: FM Global approved; PE butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
- 2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS Not Used
- 2.5 FIBERGLASS PIPE AND FITTINGS Not Used

## 2.6 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Romac Industries, Star Pipe Products, or approved equal.
  - 2. Description: Compound, ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections. Assemble components for offset and expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
- B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:
  - Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and one or two flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.

## 2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Material: Linear low-density PE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube
- D. Color: Black or Natural.

## 2.8 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Gaskets for Ferrous Piping and Copper-Alloy Tubing: ASME B16.21, asbestos free.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series.
- C. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.

### 2.9 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
  - 1. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners, and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
  - 2. Standard: AWWA C219.
  - 3. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard, carbon steel, stainless steel, or ductile iron
  - 4. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  - 5. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
  - 6. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

### 2.10 CORPORATION VALVES – Not Used.

### 2.11 CURB VALVES

- A. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800 for high-pressure, service-line valves. Valve has bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, wide tee head, and inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
- B. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches in diameter.

- 1. Shutoff Rods: Steel; with tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.
- C. Meter Valves: Comply with AWWA C800 for high-pressure, service-line valves. Include angleor straight-through-pattern bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.

### 2.12 DETECTOR CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Ames Fire & Waterworks, Watts, Zurn Industries or approved equal.
- B. Description: Galvanized cast-iron body, bolted cover with air-bleed device for access to internal parts, and flanged ends. Include one-piece bronze disc with bronze bushings, pivot, and replaceable seat. Include threaded bypass taps in inlet and outlet for bypass meter connection. Set valve to allow minimal water flow through bypass meter when major water flow is required.
- C. Standards: UL 312 and FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig
- E. Water Meter: AWWA C700, disc type, at least one-fourth size of detector check valve. Include meter, bypass piping, gate valves, check valve, and connections to detector check valve.

### 2.13 WATER METERS

- A. Water meters are furnished by utility company.
- B. Manufacturers: Watts, Neptune or Approved equal.
- C. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
  - 1. Description: With bronze main case.
  - 2. Standard: AWWA C700.
  - 3. Registration: Flow in gallons
- D. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
  - 1. Standard: AWWA C701.
  - 2. Registration: Flow in gallons
- E. Compound-Type Water Meters:
  - 1. Standard: AWWA C702.
  - 2. Registration: Flow in gallons
- F. Remote Registration System:
  - 1. Description: Utility company's standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.

FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING

- 2. Standard: AWWA C706.
- 3. Registration: Flow in gallons

# G. Remote Registration System:

- 1. Description: Utility company's standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
- 2. Standard: AWWA C707.
- 3. Registration: Flow in gallons
- 4. Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.
- 5. Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.

#### 2.14 DETECTOR-TYPE WATER METERS

## A. AWWA, Detector Check Water Meters:

- 1. Description: Main line, turbine meter with second meter on bypass.
- 2. Standard: AWWA C703.
- 3. Registration: Flow in gallons
- 4. Pressure Rating: 150 psig
- 5. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type, bronze case.
  - a. Size: At least one-half nominal size of main-line meter.

# B. Fire-Protection, Detector Check Water Meters:

- 1. Description: Main-line turbine meter with strainer and second meter on bypass.
- 2. Standards: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing and FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 3. Registration: Flow in gallons
- 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- 5. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine-type, bronze case.
  - a. Size: At least NPS 2

## C. Remote Registration System:

- 1. Description: Utility company's standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
- 2. Standard: AWWA C706.
- 3. Registration: Flow in gallons

# D. Remote Registration System:

- 1. Description: Utility company's standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
- 2. Standard: AWWA C707.
- 3. Registration: Flow in gallons
- 4. Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.

5. Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.

## 2.15 PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES – Not used

### 2.16 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers: Not used
- B. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies: Not Used
- C. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection Backflow Preventer Assemblies: Not Used
- D. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
  - 1. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  - 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.
  - 4. Size: 6'
  - 5. Design Flow Rate: 500 gpm or per shop drawing calculation for sprinkler demand.
  - 6. Body Material: Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
  - 7. End Connections: Flanged.
  - 8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
  - 9. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: UL 262 and FM Global's "Approval Guide" listing; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- E. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:
  - 1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

### 2.17 WATER METER BOXES

A. Description: Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" on top cover; and with separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.

### 2.18 CONCRETE VAULTS

- A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857, and made according to ASTM C 858.
- B. Ladder: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel ladder; or PE-encased steel steps.

- C. Manhole: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 35A minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover.
  - 1. Dimension: 24-inch (610-mm) minimum diameter unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

#### 2.19 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES

### A. Freeze-Protection Enclosures:

- 1. Description: Insulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from freezing and damage, with heat source to maintain minimum internal temperature of 40 deg F when external temperatures reach as low as minus 34 deg F
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1060.
- 3. Class I: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
  - a. Housing: Reinforced aluminum or fiberglass construction.
    - 1) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
    - 2) Drain opening for units with drain connection.
    - 3) Access doors with locking devices.
    - 4) Insulation inside housing.
    - 5) Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.
  - b. Electric heating cable or heater with self-limiting temperature control.

#### B. Weather-Resistant Enclosures:

- 1. Description: Uninsulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from weather and damage.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1060.
- 3. Class III: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
- 4. Class III-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
  - a. Housing: Reinforced aluminum or fiberglass construction.
    - 1) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
    - 2) Drain opening for units with drain connection.
    - 3) Access doors with locking devices.
    - 4) Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.

### C. Expanded-Metal Enclosures:

1. Description: Enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from damage.

- 2. Material: ASTM F 1267, expanded-metal side and top panels, of weight and with reinforcement of same metal at edges as required for rigidity.
- 3. Type: I, expanded or II, expanded and flattened].
- 4. Class: 1, uncoated carbon steel, 2, hot-dip, zinc-coated carbon steel or 3, corrosion-resistant steel.
- 5. Finish: Manufacturer's enamel paint.
- 6. Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
- 7. Locking device.
- 8. Lugs or devices for securing enclosure to base.
- 9. Enclosure Bases: 4-inch- minimum thickness precast concrete, of dimensions required to extend at least 6 inches beyond edges of enclosure housings. Include openings for piping.

### 2.20 ALARM DEVICES

- A. General: UL 753 and FM Global's "Approval Guide" listing, of types and sizes to mate and match piping and equipment.
- B. Water-Flow Indicators: Vane-type water-flow detector, rated for 250-psig working pressure; designed for horizontal or vertical installation; with two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches to provide isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal when cover is removed.
- C. Supervisory Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal valve in other than fully open position.
- D. Pressure Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal increase in pressure.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with excavating, trenching, and backfilling requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with water utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
- B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
- C. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
  - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
  - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.

FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING

- 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
- 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- D. Make connections NPS 2 and smaller with drilling machine according to the following: Not Used
- E. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
- F. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- G. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - 1. Install encasement for piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- H. Install PE pipe according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 645.
- I. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.
- J. Install fiberglass AWWA pipe according to AWWA M45.
- K. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
  - 1. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches of cover over top.
  - 2. Under Railroad Tracks: Not Used
  - 3. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches of additional cover.
- L. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
- M. Extend fire-suppression water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building fire-suppression water-service piping systems at locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - 1. Terminate fire-suppression water-service piping within the building at the floor slab until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building's fire-suppression water-service piping systems when those systems are installed.
- N. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- O. Comply with requirements for fire-suppression water-service piping inside the building in the following Sections:
  - 1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems
- P. Comply with requirements in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

## 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure rating same as or higher than systems pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in tubing NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adaptors, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside and inside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Copper-Tubing, Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- G. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use proprietary crimping tool and procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
- H. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
- I. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts.
- J. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- K. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
- L. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139.
- M. Fiberglass Piping Bonded Joints: Use adhesive and procedure recommended by piping manufacturer.
- N. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure.
- O. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.

## 3.4 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
  - 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
  - 2. Locking mechanical joints.

FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING

- 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
- 4. Bolted flanged joints.
- 5. Heat-fused joints.
- 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches in fire-suppression water-service piping according to NFPA 24 and the following:
  - 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
  - 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
  - 3. Bonded-Joint Fiberglass, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M45.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

#### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
- C. UL-Listed or FM Global-Approved Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
- D. UL-Listed or FM Global-Approved Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
- E. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- F. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.
- G. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Install in vault or aboveground between shutoff valves. Install full-size valved bypass.

# 3.6 DETECTOR CHECK VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install in vault or aboveground.
- B. Install for proper direction of flow. Install bypass with water meter, gate valves on each side of meter, and check valve downstream from meter.

# 3.7 WATER METER INSTALLATION

A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.

B. Water Meters: Install detector-type water meters in meter vault according to AWWA M6. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets and include full-size valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.

### 3.8 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

A. Rough-in piping and specialties for water meter installation according to utility company's written instructions.

## 3.9 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

### 3.10 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.
- B. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 2 inches above surface.

### 3.11 CONCRETE VAULT INSTALLATION

A. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.

# 3.12 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE INSTALLATION

- A. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches above grade.
- B. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
- C. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

## 3.13 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire-department connection to mains.
- B. Install protective pipe bollards on two sides of each freestanding fire-department connection.

## 3.14 ALARM DEVICE INSTALLATION - See 221313

## 3.15 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fire-suppression water-service piping to utility water main. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
- B. Connect fire-suppression water-service piping to interior fire-suppression piping.
- C. Connect waste piping from concrete vault drains to sanitary sewerage system.

## 3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Use test procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described below.
- B. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- C. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times the working pressure for two hours.
  - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for one hour; decrease to zero psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for one more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.17 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground fire-suppression water-service piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.18 CLEANING

- A. Clean fire-suppression water-service piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:

- a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow it to stand for 24 hours.
- b. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
- c. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

## 3.19 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground fire-suppression water-service piping NPS 4 (DN 100) shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron, standard-pattern fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and gasketed joints.
  - 3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and gasketed joints.

#### 3.20 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Underground fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 3 and larger shall be one of the following:
  - 1. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, iron, nonrising-stem, metal-seated gate valves.
  - 2. 250-psig (1725-kPa), AWWA, iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves.
  - 3. 175-psig, UL-listed or FM Global-approved, iron, nonrising-stem gate valves.
- B. Indicator-post underground fire-suppression water-service valves NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger shall be 175-psig, UL-listed or FM Global-approved, iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator-post flange.
- C. Standard-pressure, aboveground fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. 175-psig, UL-listed or FM Global-approved, iron, OS&Y gate valves.
- D. Fire-suppression water-service check valves NPS 3 and larger shall be one of the following:
  - 1. AWWA or UL-listed or FM Global-approved check valves.
  - 2. UL-listed or FM Global-approved detector check valves.

END OF SECTION 211100

### SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
- 2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
- 3. Specialty valves.
- 4. Sprinklers.
- 5. Alarm devices.
- 6. Manual control stations.
- 7. Control panels.
- 8. Pressure gages.

## B. Related Requirements:

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig (1200-kPa) maximum.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals: Not Used
- C. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional responsible for their preparation (NICET Level III).

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Domestic water piping.
  - 2. Compressed air piping.
  - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
  - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers / Announcement System
    - d. Fire Alarm System
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Design Data:
  - 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
  - Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
  - 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

# 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems. Base calculations on results of updated fire-hydrant flow test.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: NOT USED

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
  - 1. NFPA 13.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
  - 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records indicate the following conditions:
    - a. Date: August 30, 2022
    - b. Time: 1032 hrs
    - c. Performed by: ONWASA
    - d. Static Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: 65 psig
    - e. Measured Flow at Flow Fire Hydrant F: 700 gpm
    - f. Residual Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: 20 psig
  - 2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
    - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
      - 1) All Areas (except noted below in #2): Light Hazard
      - 2) Storage, electrical/mechanical, laundry, Apparatus Bay: Ordinary Hazard-1
  - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft.
  - 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    - a. Light Hazard: 225 sq. ft.

- b. Ordinary Hazard Group 1: 130 sq. ft.
- C. Seismic Performance: The seismic design category, per structural engineer, is Design Category C; therefore, seismic restraint is required to be provided in accordance with NFPA 13.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10 plain end.
- E. Nonstandard OD, Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M thinwall with plain ends and wall thickness less than Schedule 10.
- F. Hybrid Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5.
- G. Schedule 5 Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M lightwall with plain ends.
- H. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- I. Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- J. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- K. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- L. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- M. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
  - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8-inch-thick, ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free or EPDM rubber gasket.
    - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
    - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
  - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

- N. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
  - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- O. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  - 2. Painted or uncoated Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  - 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- P. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
- 2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS NOT USED
- 2.4 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS- NOT USED
- 2.5 COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING NOT USED
- 2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES
  - A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  - B. Pressure Rating:
    - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
  - C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  - D. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
  - F. Alarm Valves:
    - 1. Standard: UL 193.
    - 2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
    - 3. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
    - 4. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
    - 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - G. Deluge Valves: Not Used

# H. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

- 1. Standard: UL 1726.
- 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
- 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
- 5. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.7 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

## A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: ARGCO, Grinnell or approved equal
- 2. Standard: UL 213.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum
- 4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
- 5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
- 6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
- 7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
- 8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

#### B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

- 1. Manufacturers: AGF Manufacturing, Inc. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler, Tyco Fire Products, LP or approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

## C. Branch Line Testers:

- 1. Manufacturers: AGF Manufacturing, Inc., Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Potter Electric Signal Co. or approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 199.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 4. Body Material: Brass.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Inlet: Threaded.
- 7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
- 8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

# D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: AGF Manufacturing, Inc. Tyco Fire Products, LP. or approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.

- 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

## E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

- 1. Manufacturers: CECA, LLC., Merit Manufacturing, or approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 1474.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Length: Adjustable.
- 7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

# F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Fivalco Inc., Victaulic Company or approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 1474.
- 3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
- 4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

#### 2.8 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Reliable Automatic Sprinkler, Tyco Fire Products, LP, Victaulic Company or approved equal.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: Not Used
- D. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig
- E. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
  - 1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: Not Ssed
  - 2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199
  - 3. Residential Applications: Not Used.
  - 4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application. "Intermediate" temp required for Apparatus Bay (k-8.0).
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: Brass, Concealed when in finished ceilings.
- G. Special Coatings: Not Used
- H. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

- 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
- 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.

# I. Sprinkler Guards:

- 1. Standard: UL 199.
- 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

### 2.9 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

# B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

- 1. Manufacturers: Tyco Fire Products, LP, Victaulic Company or approved equal
- 2. Standard: UL 753.
- 3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
- 4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
- 5. Size: 10 inch diameter.
- 6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
- 7. Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
- 8. Outlet: NPS 1 (DN 25) drain connection.

## C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

- 1. Manufacturers: Potter Electric Signal Company, Notifier, or approved equal
- 2. Standard: UL 464.
- 3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
- 4. Size: 6-inch minimum.
- 5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
- 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## D. Water-Flow Indicators:

- 1. Manufacturers: Potter Electric Signal Co., Watts, Viking Corporation, and approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 346.
- 3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
- 4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
- 5. Type: Paddle operated.
- 6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig
- 7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

### E. Pressure Switches:

- 1. Manufacturers: Tyco Fire Products, LP, Potter Electric Signal Co. or approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 346.
- 3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.

- 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
- 5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- F. Valve Supervisory Switches:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Tyco Fire Products, LP, Potter Electric Signal Co. or approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: UL 346.
  - 3. Type: Electrically supervised.
  - 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  - 5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
  - 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 2.10 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS: Not Used
- 2.11 CONTROL PANELS: Not Used
- 2.12 PRESSURE GAGES
  - A. Manufacturers: AGF Manufacturing, Inc., Ashcroft, Inc. or approved equal.
  - B. Standard: UL 393.
  - C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
  - D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
  - E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

# 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

# 3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

### 3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

## 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Not Used
- O. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- P. Not Used
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

## 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

- 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- M. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- N. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- O. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- P. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- Q. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- R. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- S. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

## 3.7 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

## D. Specialty Valves:

- 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
- 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
- 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

#### 3.8 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

## 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

### 3.10 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Shop drawings shall coordinate and confirm the desired location and thread type for the fire department connection with the responding fire department.
- B. Fire department connection must be freestanding type, 5" Storz connection.
- C. Storz connection on 30 degree fixed (non-swivel) with cap secured by a chain.
- D. Ball drip shall be provided in gravel base.
- E. All exposed piping and fittings to be galvanized with exception of Storz connection.

# 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspection:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
- 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
- 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
- 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
- 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.13 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

### 3.14 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight black-steel pipe with cut- or roll- grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight black-steel pipe with cut or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 4. Standard-weight black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

- 5. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- 6. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

# 3.15 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers
  - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers
  - 3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
  - 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright sprinklers, Pendent, dry sprinklers, Sidewall, dry sprinklers.
  - 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  - 2. Pendent Sprinklers: Brass
  - 3. Flush Sprinklers: Not Used
  - 4. Recessed Sprinklers: Not Used
  - 5. Residential Sprinklers: Not Used
  - 6. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Brass

**END OF SECTION 211313** 

#### SECTION 220000 - GENERAL PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections bound herewith are a component part of Division 22 specifications. Comply with all provisions, details and instructions of these sections in the accomplishment of work covered under Division 22.
- B. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete plumbing systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- C. Where Sub-Contracts are used to perform portions of the work, division of labor between sub trades is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- D. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete plumbing systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- E. Work includes furnishing, installing and testing the equipment and materials specified in other sections of the Division Specifications and shown on the Plumbing Drawings. It is the intent of these Specifications that the plumbing systems shall be suitable in every way for the intended usage. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this Division shall be furnished at no extra cost.
- F. The general scope work includes, but is not limited to, furnishing, coordinating, and installing the following.
  - 1. Domestic waste and vent systems with connection to site utilities.
  - 2. Domestic water distribution systems with connection to site utilities.
  - 3. Fuel gas piping with connection to site gas supply.
  - 4. Plumbing fixtures, specialties and equipment.
  - 5. Testing and balancing.
- G. Visit all areas of the existing site, buildings and structures (as applicable) in which work under these sections is to be performed. Inspect carefully the existing conditions prior to bidding. Bid submission is evidence that the Contractor has examined the site and existing conditions, understands conditions under which the work will be performed, and takes full responsibility for complete knowledge of all factors governing the work.
- H. Schedule all service interruptions in existing facilities at the Owner's convenience with 24 hours (minimum) notice. Obtain prior approval for each interruption.
- I. Thoroughly test all plumbing systems after installation and make any minor corrections, changes or adjustments necessary for proper functioning of the systems and equipment. All workmanship shall be of the highest quality; substandard work will be rejected.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procedures for submittals: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections.
- B. Transmit each shop drawing submittal with provided Shop Drawing Submittal Cover Form, attached herewith for each item of equipment/material or each specification section/paragraph.
- C. Clearly indicate proposed equipment and/or materials substitutions in shop drawings. Summarize all deviations from the specified quality, functionality, appearance or performance of proposed equipment and/or materials in the preface of each submittal. Include documentation to support deviations.
- D. Provide descriptive data on all materials and equipment as required to ascertain compliance with Specifications.
- E. Design layout shown on drawings is based on physical sizes of reputable equipment manufacturers. If equipment other than models indicated is installed, any resulting conflicts with space, maintenance access, clearances or codes are the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at his expense.
- F. Where specific models and manufacturers of materials and equipment are specified, substitutions as allowed by the specifications and State law will be considered. Substitutions must be equivalent in quality, function, suitability and arrangement to specified equipment. Architect/Engineer to have final authority as to equivalency of substitutions.
- G. Equipment model numbers noted in these specifications or on the drawings are intended to establish a minimum standard of quality and do not necessarily relate to specific options or arrangement as shown. Provide equipment with all standard features and optional features as stated and arranged as shown on the drawings.
- H. Where seismic design for supports is required, submit installation details for supports and engineering analysis as specified.

# 1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform Work in accordance with all applicable state and local codes, standards and regulations.
- B. Furnish all materials and labor which is be required for compliance with codes, standards and regulations, whether specifically mentioned in these specifications or shown on the drawings.
- C. Obtain required construction permit from the authority having jurisdiction and arrange, at the proper time, for all inspections required by such authority. Pay all permit and inspection costs required.

### 1.4 COORDINATION OF WORK

A. Contractor is responsible for coordination of work between trades. Provide fully complete and functional systems.

- B. Compare plumbing drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades.
- C. Coordinate plumbing installation with the work of other trades. Report any pertinent discrepancies to the Architect/Engineer and obtain written instructions for any necessary revisions. Before starting any construction, make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Architect/Engineer. No extras will be allowed for rework of uncoordinated installations.
- D. Determine exact route and location of each plumbing item prior to fabrication and/or installation. Adjust location of piping and equipment, etc., to accommodate interferences anticipated and encountered.
- E. Right of Way: General priority for right of way is as follows:
  - 1. Items located per regulatory requirement.
  - 2. Piping with pitch requirement (plumbing drains, etc.).
  - 3. Ductwork.
  - 4. Piping without pitch requirement.
  - 5. Electrical wiring (conduits, etc.).
- F. Arrange all work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement.
- G. Provide clearance and easy access to any equipment which requires periodic maintenance. Arrange ducts, piping and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging doors and access panels.
- 1.5 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS (GENERAL)
  - A. Provide all new materials unless specifically indicated otherwise.
  - B. Manufacturers and models listed in drawings and specifications are used for layout and to convey to bidders the general style, type, character and quality of product desired. Listed examples are used only to denote the quality standard of product desired and are not intended to restrict bidders to a specific brand, make, manufacturer or specific name.
  - C. Adjust layout, system connections and coordinate with other trades as required to properly install equivalent products.
  - D. Where equivalent products are submitted, include all associated costs related to substitution in bid.
  - E. Furnish materials bearing the manufacturer's name and trade name. Provide UL label where a UL standard has been established for the particular material.
  - F. Furnish standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production of equipment types required for the work. Use the manufacturer's latest approved design.
  - G. Use the same manufacturer for equipment and materials of the same general type throughout the work to obtain uniform appearance, operation and maintenance.

- H. Protect equipment and materials from dirt, water, chemical or mechanical injury and theft at all times during construction. Provide covers or shelter as required.
- I. If materials or equipment are damaged at any time prior to final acceptance of the work, repair such damage at no additional cost. If materials or equipment are damaged by water, provide replacement no additional cost.
- J. Follow manufacturer's directions completely in the delivery, storage, protection and installation of all equipment and materials. Notify the Architect/Engineer in writing of any conflicts between any requirements of the contract documents and manufacturer's directions. Obtain written instructions before proceeding with the work. The Contractor is responsible for correction of any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's directions or written instructions from the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.
- K. Repair any damage to factory applied paint finish using touch-up paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer. Repaint entire damaged panel or section per the field painting specifications in Division 09 at no additional cost.

## 1.6 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install plumbing work in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code (NCSBC). The Contractor shall provide any and all seismic restraint details and calculations that may be required by the NCSBC and/or the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Requirements for restraints are detailed in the NCSBC. All tables and references shall conform to building's location. Restraints shall be per Seismic Performance Category stated on Structural Drawings. The site classification is "D" resulting in a seismic design category "C." Therefore, in accordance with ASCE 7-10, Plumbing shall meet the seismic design requirements for non-structural members.
- C. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The Engineer's calculations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings and shall demonstrate Code compliance including certification that the seismic system components comply with the testing requirements of NCSBC. Calculations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a professional engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorages shall be subject to the review and approval of the project's structural engineer.
- D. The Professional Engineer retained for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation to comply with the Special Inspections requirement of the Code. This engineer shall provide written verification of compliance of the installation with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall be submitted as a Special Inspections Report and shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by other than this engineer is not acceptable.

E. Review of the seismic design computations and shop drawings by the Architect/Engineer or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code.

### 1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Refer to individual plumbing sections and Division 01.

### 1.8 PAINTING

A. Protect fixtures, valves, trim, etc. from field painting operations. Do not install escutcheons and trim until painting is complete.

### 1.9 LOCATIONS AND MEASUREMENTS

- A. Location of plumbing work is shown on the drawings as accurately as possible. Field-verify all measurements to ensure that the work suits the surrounding trim, finishes and/or construction. Provide adjustment as necessary.
- B. Make minor relocations of work prior to installation as required or as directed by the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.

### 1.10 SUPERVISION

- A. Contractor to provide an authorized and competent representative to constantly supervise the work from the beginning to completion and final acceptance. Insofar as possible, keep the same foreman and workmen throughout the project duration.
- B. Representatives of Architect/Engineer, Owner, and local inspection authorities will make inspections during the progress of the work. Contractor to accommodate such inspections and correct deficiencies noted.

## 1.11 QUALITY AND WORKMANSHIP

- A. Contractor to employ skilled tradesmen, laborers and supervisors. Final product to be a neat, well finished, and professional installation.
- B. Remove and replace any work considered substandard quality in the judgment of the Architect/Engineer.

### 1.12 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

- A. Provide all excavation, trenching and backfilling as required to complete the work under this Division.
- B. Contractor is responsible for investigating conditions prior to excavating and to exercise care during the excavation to avoid any utilities or other objects which may or may not be shown on the drawings.
- C. Excavate so as not to endanger or damage existing utilities and structures. If damage occurs, repair damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.

GENERAL PLUMBING

- D. Lay out location of all ditching at grade and obtain approval from the Architect/Engineer prior excavating.
- E. Remove and dispose of all surplus earth from the site.
- F. Provide suitable backfill materials as required.
- G. Perform excavation, trenching and shoring in accordance with rules and regulations set forth in Article XXI, Bulletin 1 "Trenching" as published in a separate bulletin by the North Carolina Department of Labor, Division of Standards and Inspection Construction Bureau.
- H. Bid excavation work as unclassified with no extra payment for removal of rock, unsuitable soils, etc.

## 1.13 CLOSING IN WORK

A. Do not cover up or enclose work until it has been inspected, tested and approved by authorities having jurisdiction over the work. Uncover any such work for inspection and/or test at no additional cost. Restore the work to its original condition after inspection and/or test at no additional cost.

### 1.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Perform all cutting and patching necessary to install work under this Division.
- B. Perform cutting and patching in professional, workmanlike manner.
- C. Arrange work to minimize cutting and patching.
- D. Do not cut joists, beams, girders, columns or any other structural members without written permission from the Architect/Engineer.
- E. Cut opening only large enough to allow easy installation of piping, wiring or ductwork.
- F. Patching material to match material removed.
- G. Restore patched surface to its original appearance at completion of patching.
- H. Where waterproofed surfaces are patched, maintain integrity of waterproofing.
- I. Remove rubble and excess patching materials from the premises.

### 1.15 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings and specifications under this Division are complementary each to the other. Provide any work specified herein and/or indicated on the drawings.
- B. Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of fixtures, piping, devices, equipment, etc. Follow drawings as closely as possible, but arrange work to suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.

- C. The words "furnish", "provide", and/or "install" as used in these drawings and specifications are interpreted to include all material and labor necessary to complete the particular item, system, equipment, etc.
- D. Any omissions from either the drawings or specifications are unintentional. Contractor is responsible for notifying the Architect/Engineer of any pertinent omissions before submitting a bid. Complete and working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.

### 1.16 ACCESSIBILITY

- A. Locate all equipment which must be serviced, operated, or maintained in fully accessible positions. Equipment to include, but not be limited to, valves, traps, cleanouts, motors, controllers and drain points. If required for accessibility, furnish access doors for this purpose. Minor deviations from drawings may be made to allow for better accessibility.
- B. Coordinate exact locations and size of access panels for each concealed device requiring service.
- C. Access panels: Steel construction with 16-gauge frames and 18-gauge panels, factory primed with rust inhibiting paint, finish paint by Contractor. Provide suitable UL listed doors where installed in rated construction.
- D. Coordinate access panel locations with architectural construction.
- E. Access panels are not required for access to work located above a lift-out "T" bar type ceiling.

### 1.17 ELECTRICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH PLUMBING WORK

- A. Comply with Division 26. Any required Division 22 electrical work not specifically specified to be furnished by Division 26 Contractor shall be provided by Division 22 Contractor.
- B. The plumbing contractors shall furnish all starters and controls for their equipment. The electrical contractor shall mount starters furnished by the plumbing contractor, the electrical contractor provides all safety switches, wiring and connections to line side and load side of starters and safety switches complete to plumbing equipment. For resistance type loads where starters or contactors are not required, the electrical contractor shall provide all power wiring and connections complete to equipment. The plumbing contractors shall provide all control wiring and connections and devices for their equipment.
- C. All electrical work performed Division 22 shall comply with Division 26 specification requirements.
- D. See Division 26 specifications and electrical connection diagrams for division of labor between Divisions 22 and 26.
- E. Coordinate electrical interface of supplied plumbing equipment with electrical system. Division 26 electrical work for plumbing systems is based on values scheduled on plumbing drawings. Division 22 Contractor is responsible for any costs to modify the contracted electrical work to service equipment with electrical characteristics different than those scheduled.

## 1.18 PLUMBING WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHER CONTRACTS

- A. Provide plumbing services as required for items furnished by other contractors or vendors as shown on the plumbing drawings. Include rough-ins and final connections to equipment. Locations of connections shown on the drawings are approximate and some adjustment of actual connection locations should be anticipated. Coordinate exact connection requirements. Make final connections only after approval of the other contractor or vendor, in the contractor's or vendor's presence.
  - 1. Natural Gas System- Provide complete gas piping supply from natural gas meter. Coordinate equipment gas requirements with supplier. Contractor is responsible for contacting natural gas supplier and complying with supplier connection and service piping requirements. Provide all required valves, regulators, accessories as shown on drawings.
  - 2. Site Utilities- In general, work under this Division covers work to five feet outside buildings. Extend and connect work under this Division to site utilities as required.
  - 3. Owner Furnished Equipment- Obtain exact plumbing requirements and rough-in locations for Owner furnished equipment. Provide complete plumbing installation for proper operation of equipment.
  - 4. Kitchen Equipment- Obtaining exact plumbing requirements and rough-in locations for kitchen equipment. Provide complete plumbing installation for proper operation of equipment.

#### 1.19 ALTERNATE BIDS

A. Alternate Bids are described in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.

# 1.20 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions.
- B. As the work progresses, legibly record all field changes on a set of project contract drawings, herein after called the "record drawings."
- C. Accurately show the installed condition of plumbing work on record drawings.

## 1.21 PHASING OF THE WORK

A. Schedule work in accordance with the relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections.

### 1.22 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

## SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase motors installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### 2.3 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

### SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Sleeves without waterstop.
- 2. Sleeves with waterstop.
- 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
- 4. Grout.
- 5. Silicone sealants.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES WITHOUT WATERSTOP

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.

#### 2.2 SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

A. Description: Manufactured steel, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

### 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.

- 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
- 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with ASTM B633 coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

### 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

- 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
- 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
- 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space around outside of sleeves.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- 2. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 SLEEVE SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

### SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

### SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermometers.
  - 2. Gages.
  - 3. Test plugs.

#### B. Related Sections:

1. Section 221124 " Facility Natural Gas Piping" for gas meters.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

# 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 SPARE PARTS

A. Provide one spare certified calibrated gauge of each type to be utilized for testing/comparison purposes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
  - 1. Case: Metal; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
  - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
  - 4. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw thread.
  - 5. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

- 6. Display: Digital.
- 7. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

# 2.2 THERMOWELLS

### A. Thermowells:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
- 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
- 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
- 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
- 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

### 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  - 1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  - 2. Case: Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  - 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
  - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 8. Window: Glass.
  - 9. Ring: Brass.
  - 10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

### 2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- E. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.6 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- B. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- C. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- D. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- H. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- I. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- J. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- K. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.

- L. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Domestic Hot Water Storage Tank.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater.
  - 3. Domestic hot water return piping in mechanical room.
- M. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Domestic Water Service Entrance.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each domestic water pump.
  - 3. RPZ inlet, RPZ outlet.
  - 4. Natural gas regulator inlet.
  - 5. Natural gas regulator outlet.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.
- C. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.
- 3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE
  - A. Scale Range for Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.
- 3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE
  - A. Pressure gages shall be the following:
    - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
- 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE
  - A. Scale Range Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

#### SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze ball valves.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
  - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 3. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
  - 4. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G for valve materials for potable-water service.

- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

## 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Two piece.
    - d. Body Material: Bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
    - f. Seats: PTFE.
    - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - i. Port: Full.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

# 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 3 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valveend option is indicated in valve schedules below.

## 3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 3 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - 2. Two-piece, bronze ball valves with full port and stainless-steel trim.

**END OF SECTION 220523.12** 

### SECTION 220523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze swing check valves.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect ends.
  - 3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G for valve materials for potable-water service.

- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

# 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

## 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 3 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. End Connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 3 and Smaller: Threaded or soldered.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 3 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves, Class 125, bronze disc with soldered or threaded end connections.

**END OF SECTION 220523.14** 

## SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
- 3. Fastener systems.
- 4. Equipment supports.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

# B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

- 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
- 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.2 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

# 2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

# 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use

- operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
- 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

### K. Insulated Piping:

- 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
  - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
  - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
  - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

- a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
- b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
- e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

## 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

# 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 5. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  - 6. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 7. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 8. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 9. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 10. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 11. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.

- 12. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- 13. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  - 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  - 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  - 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel Ibeams for heavy loads.
  - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.

- c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
- 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

## SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Equipment labels.
- 2. Pipe labels.
- 3. Valve tags.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

## A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 2. Letter Color: White.
- 3. Background Color: Black.
- 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

#### 2.3 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, valve size, valve model number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

# 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. For concealed valves, equipment, and devices needing service, provide identification markers visible from floor. Use color dot stickers placed on ceiling grid where valves, equipment, and devices needing service are installed above. Color scheme to be in accordance with Owner's color-coding standard.

## 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

## 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Complying with ASME A13.1.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Identification of Gas Piping:
  - 1. Exposed piping shall be identified by a yellow label marked "Gas" in black letters. The marking shall be spaced at intervals not exceeding 5 feet. All piping and tubing systems greater than 0.5-psi service pressure shall be identified by a yellow label with black letters indicating the piping system pressure. Comply with the latest requirements of the North Carolina Fuel Gas Code.
- E. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

- 1. Domestic Water Piping
  - a. Background: Complying with ASME A13.1.
  - b. Letter Colors: Complying with ASME A13.1.
- 2. Sanitary Waste Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Complying with ASME A13.1.
  - b. Letter Color: Complying with ASME A13.1.
- 3. Storm Drainage Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Complying with ASME A13.1.
  - b. Letter Color: Complying with ASME A13.1.

## 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Domestic Water: 2 inches, round.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
    - a. Domestic Water: Natural.
  - 3. Letter Colors:
    - a. Domestic Water: White.

#### SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
  - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

### 1.6 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

## 2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" and "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 850 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C547.

- 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A with factory-applied ASJ-SSL.
- 2. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
- 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.3 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

## 2.4 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. <u>Adhesive</u>: As recommended by mineral fiber manufacturer.
- C. ASJ Adhesive Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by Adhesive PVC Jacket.

## 2.5 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. Mastics: As recommended by insulation.
- B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 3. Color: White.

### 2.6 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Adhesives comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

- 1. <u>Verify adhesive is as recommended</u> by insulation.
- 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
- 3. Service Temperature Range: 20 to plus 180 deg F.
- 4. Color: White.

## 2.7 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 3. Color: White.

## 2.8 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

#### 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 2. Color: White.
  - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## 2.10 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
  - 1. Width: 3 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

- 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - 1. Width: 2 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
  - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

### 2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
  - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.

- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.

- 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece is butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

- 3. Insulate tee fittings with of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
- 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
- 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
- 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
- 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
- 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation conforms to the following:
  - 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  - 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  - 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe

- insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
- 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

#### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER INSULATION

# A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
- 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
- 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
- 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

## B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with glass-fiber or mineral-wool blanket insulation.
- 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

# C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
- 2. When prefabricated insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
- 2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
- 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# 3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Underground piping.

# 3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
  - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- C. Stormwater and Overflow:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch thick.
- D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch thick.
- E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Mineral Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1/2 inch thick.

# 3.11 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 30 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 220719

### SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copper tube and fittings.
- 2. Piping joining materials.
- 3. Transition fittings.
- B. This Division is applicable to domestic cold and hot water piping within building to a point 5 feet outside the building.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G.
- C. Comply with NSF Standard 372 for low lead.

# 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

# D. Copper Unions:

- 1. MSS SP-123.
- 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
- 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
- 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

# 2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- B. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

## 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
    - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket end.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
    - b. Solvent-cement-joint plastic end.
    - c. Rubber O-ring.
    - d. Union nut.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

## 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5. Do not locate joints below slab of building.
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- G. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- H. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- I. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- J. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- N. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- O. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- P. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."

- R. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

# 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

# 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
  - 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

# 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

- 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
- 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

# 2. Piping Tests:

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.

8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

#### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
      - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

#### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; no joints.
- C. Aboveground domestic water piping shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

## 3.12 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

- 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
- 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 221116

### SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Backflow preventers.
- 2. Balancing valves.
- 3. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- 4. Outlet boxes.
- 5. Hose bibbs.
- 6. Wall hydrants.
- 7. Drain valves.
- 8. Water-hammer arresters.
- 9. Vacuum breakers.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 14.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

# A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.

## B. Plumbing Equipment Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1022.
- 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
- 4. Body: Stainless steel.
- 5. End Connections: Threaded.

#### 2.4 BALANCING VALVES

# A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

- 1. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
- 2. Body: bronze.
- 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
- 4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

### 2.5 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

### A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1017.
- 2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

## 2.6 OUTLET BOXES

# A. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

- 1. Mounting: Recessed.
- 2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
- 3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
- 4. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

#### 2.7 HOSE BIBBS

#### A. Hose Bibbs:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
- 2. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

## 2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

## A. Non-freeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

### 2.9 DRAIN VALVES

## A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

- 1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
- 2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
- 3. Size: NPS 3/4.
- 4. Body: Copper alloy.
- 5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- 6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
- 7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
- 8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
- 9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

### 2.10 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
- 2. Type: Metal bellows or Copper tube with piston.
- 3. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

### 2.11 WATER FILTERS

A. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.

### 2.12 VACUUM BREAKERS

### A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

- 1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
- 2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
- 3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

- 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
- 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
- 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- C. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- D. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs.
- E. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- F. Install ball valves with valved bypass on water connections to water filters at ice machine water supply. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

#### 3.2 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 2. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 3. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 4. Outlet boxes.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

#### SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for additional information.

### 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

#### 2.3 CONTROLS

A. Refer to DDC system diagrams for control of hot-water circulation pump.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

## A. Perform startup service.

- 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
- 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
- 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
  - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
  - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
  - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
  - d. Verify that pump is controlled by DDC system.
- 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
- 6. Start motor.
- 7. Open discharge valve slowly.
- 8. Adjust timer settings.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

**END OF SECTION 221123** 

## SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

# 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

### 2.2 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.

#### 2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated.

## 2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
  - 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
  - 2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
  - 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - 6. Power Requirement: 24 V ac.
  - 7. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.
- B. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
  - 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
  - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
  - 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - 5. Power Requirement: 24 V ac.
  - 6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

## 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump weight.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
- E. Install timers on wall in Chief's office.

#### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in the following:
  - 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.
- C. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

#### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

# 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
  - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
  - 4. Set thermostats, timers, and time-delay relays for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
  - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
    - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
  - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
  - 7. Start motor.
  - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
  - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
  - 10. Adjust timer settings.

## 3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer. Adjust initial temperature set points. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

**END OF SECTION 221123.21** 

# SECTION 22 11 26 - FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
- 2. Piping and tubing joining materials.
- 3. Valves.
- 4. Pressure regulators.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- D. LPG: Liquefied-petroleum gas.

## 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. For Piping Containing Only Vapor:
    - a. Piping and Valves: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.
- B. LPG System Pressure within Buildings: Refer to drawings.
- C. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for LPG piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

- 1. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
- 2. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
- 3. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For LPG piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Data: Submit certification that piping will withstand seismic forces defined on structural drawings." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For LPG equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

#### 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 08 31 13 "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedules 40 and 80, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B88, Type L.
  - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.

#### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for LPG.

#### 2.3 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
  - 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze
  - 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  - 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
  - 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  - 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 9. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

## 2.4 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

- A. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.
  - 1. Pilot operated.
  - 2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
  - 3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  - 4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
  - 5. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, replaceable.
  - 6. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
  - 7. Normally closed.
  - 8. Visual position indicator.

## 2.5 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

- A. Earthquake Valves, Maximum Operating Pressure of 5 psig: Comply with ASCE 25.
  - 1. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 2. Maximum Operating Pressure: 5 psig.
- 3. Cast-aluminum body with nickel-plated chrome steel internal parts.
- 4. Nitrile-rubber valve washer.
- 5. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.
- 6. Threaded-end connections complying with ASME B1.20.1.

### 2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS

# A. General Requirements:

- 1. Single stage and suitable for LPG.
- 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
- 3. Elevation compensator.
- 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller.

# B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

- 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
- 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
- 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
- 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
- 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
- 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
- 9. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
- 10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

# C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

- 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
- 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
- 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
- 5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- 6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
- 7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig.

### 2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:

# 1. Description:

- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
- c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

#### 2.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for LPG piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

# 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Inspect LPG piping according to NFPA 58 and North Carolina Fuel Gas Code to determine that LPG utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- B. Comply with NFPA 58 and and North Carolina Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

## 3.4 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 58 and and North Carolina Fuel Gas Code requirements for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Install underground, LPG piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
  - 1. If LPG piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, LPG piping according to ASTM D2774.
- D. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:

- 1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
- 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Joints for connection to inlets and outlets on vaporizers, air mixers, regulators, and valves may be flanged or threaded to match the equipment.

#### 3.5 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and North Carolina Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install LPG piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where readily accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed LPG piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
  - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: LPG piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  - 2. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.

### 3. Prohibited Locations:

- a. Do not install LPG piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
- b. Do not install LPG piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment.
- T. Do not use LPG piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.

### 3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

#### C. Threaded Joints:

- 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
- 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
- 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID of pipe.
- 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
- 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Ch. 22, "Pipe and Tube."

## 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 22 00 00 "General Plumbing."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

A. Install LPG piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

- B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliances and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

#### 3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.11 PAINTING

- A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, regulators, service meters and earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- B. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, and regulators except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).
    - d. Color: Yellow.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.12 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.

- 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- 6. Use 3000-psig, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

## 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge LPG according to NFPA 58 and North Carolina Fuel Gas Code] and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. LPG piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.14 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain LPG equipment.

### 3.15 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground LPG vapor piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Annealed -temper copper tube, Type L with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.
- B. Aboveground LPG vapor piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.16 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES UP TO 2 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

# 3.17 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves shall be the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

### END OF SECTION 22 11 26

### SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

# 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.

- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

## 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

# 2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

### 2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  - 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173
    - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - c. Sleeve Materials:
      - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 33.

## 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- I. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- M. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

# N. Plumbing Specialties:

- 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- O. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

## 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

# A. Transition Couplings:

- 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
- 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 2. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 3. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.

- c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
- 4. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- 5. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

## 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

# 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- B. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Underground/Under 1<sup>ST</sup> floor slab, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

**END OF SECTION 221316** 

### SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cleanouts.
- 2. Air-admittance valves.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CLEANOUTS

## A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

- 1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, cast-iron plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

### B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule cleanout.
- 3. Size: Same as connected branch.

- 4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
- 5. Clamping Device: Not required.
- 6. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
- 7. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
- 8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
- 9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
- 10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
- 11. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
- 12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanouts.

## C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
- 2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
- 3. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
- 4. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
- 5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
- 7. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

# A. Air-Gap Fittings:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
- 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
- 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
- 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
- 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

## B. Expansion Joints:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
- 2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
- 3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
- 4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.

- 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
- 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
- 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- E. Install expansion joints where piping crosses building expansion joints.
- F. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- G. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

## **END OF SECTION 221319**

### SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Floor drains.
- 2. Floor sinks.
- 3. Trench drains.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Floor Drains: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

# 2.3 FLOOR SINKS

A. Floor Sinks: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

## 2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

SANITARY DRAINS 221319.13 - 1

- 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
- 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
- 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
  - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
  - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
  - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
- 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
  - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
- 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
  - 1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for oil interceptors, sand interceptors, and solid interceptors.
- D. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

# 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221319.13** 

SANITARY DRAINS 221319.13 - 2

### SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
- 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components Health Effects."

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

a. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: Two years.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ELECTRIC, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Flow-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
  - 1. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water-heater) heating appliance.
  - 2. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig
    - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    - d. Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
    - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
  - 3. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

# 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches above floor on wall bracket.
  - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
  - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
  - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 223300** 

#### SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Floor-mounted, bottom-outlet water closets.
- 2. Flushometer valves.
- 3. Toilet seats.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data:

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
- 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power and control wiring.

# 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Materials: Furnish extra materials to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### A. Standards:

1. Comply with ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 for water closets.

- 2. Comply with ASME A112.19.5/CSA B45.15 for flush valves and spuds for water closets and tanks.
- 3. Comply with ASSE 1037/ASME A112.1037/CSA B125.37 for flush valves.
- 4. Comply with IAMPO/ANSI Z124.5 for water-closet (toilet) seats.
- 5. Comply with ASME A112.6.1M for water-closet supports.
- 6. Comply with ICC A117.1 for ADA-compliant water closets.
- 7. Comply with ASTM A1045 for flexible PVC gaskets used in connection of vitreous china water closets to sanitary drainage systems.
- 8. Comply with ASME A112.4.3 for plastic fittings used in connection of vitreous china water closets to sanitary drainage systems.

## 2.2 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets - Floor Mounted, Bottom Outlet, Top Spud: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

# 2.3 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Flushometer Valves: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

## 2.4 TOILET SEATS

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply piping and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

### A. Water-Closet Installation:

- 1. Install level and plumb.
- 2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.

### B. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

- 1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
- 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

- 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
- 4. Install actuators in locations easily reachable for people with disabilities.
- C. Install toilet seats on water closets.

## D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

- 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
- 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

# E. Joint Sealing:

- 1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
- 2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
- 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

# 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

### SECTION 224213.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wall-hung urinals.
- 2. Urinal flushometer valves.
- 3. Supports.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves.

## 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

A. Urinals - Wall Hung, Back Outlet, Washout: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

## 2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Flushometer Valves: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

### 2.3 SUPPORTS

#### A. Urinal Carrier:

- 1. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

### A. Urinal Installation:

- 1. Install urinals level and plumb according to rough-in drawings.
- 2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
- 3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC A117.1.

## B. Support Installation:

- 1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
- 2. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
- 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

#### C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

- 1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
- 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

## D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

- 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
- 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.

3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

# E. Joint Sealing:

- 1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
- 2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
- 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

# 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

## **END OF SECTION 224213.16**

### SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Lavatories.
- 2. Manually operated lavatory faucets.
- 3. Supply fittings.
- 4. Waste fittings.
- 5. Lavatory supports.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

# 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LAVATORIES

- A. Counter-Mounted: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.
- B. Wall-Mounted: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

## 2.2 LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61/NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI) accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Lavatory Faucets Manual Type: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements

## 2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Wheel handle.

#### 2.4 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.

## 2.5 LAVATORY SUPPORTS

A. Lavatory Carrier:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildewresistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

# 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.

# 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 224216.13** 

#### SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Service sinks.
- 2. Kitchen/utility sinks.
- 3. Manually operated sink faucets.
- 4. Supply fittings.
- 5. Waste fittings.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics and furnished specialties and accessories.

# 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sinks and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Servicing and adjustments for automatic faucets.

### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SERVICE SINKS

A. Service Sinks: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

# 2.2 KITCHEN/UTILITY SINKS

A. Kitchen/Utility Sinks: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

## 2.3 MANUALLY OPERATED SINK FAUCETS

- A. Sink faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

### 2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Wheel handle.

### 2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
  - 2. Material:

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply piping and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb in accordance with rough-in drawings.
- B. Install wall-mounted sinks at accessible mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- C. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- D. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildewresistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

# 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

# 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 224216.16** 

### SECTION 224500 - EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Eyewash units.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control test reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ISEA Standard: Comply with ISEA Z358.1.
- B. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372, for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

### 2.2 COMBINATION UNITS

A. Accessible, Plumbed Eyewash Units: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

# 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify performance of emergency plumbing fixtures by independent testing organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURE

- A. Assemble emergency plumbing fixture piping, fittings, control valves, and other components.
- B. Install fixtures level and plumb. Fasten fixtures to substrate.
- C. Install shutoff valves in water-supply piping to fixtures, to facilitate maintenance of the equipment. Use ball valve if specific type valve is not indicated. Install valves chained or locked in open position if permitted. Install valves in locations where they can easily be reached for operation. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Install dielectric fitting in supply piping to emergency equipment if piping and equipment connections are made of different metals.
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of emergency equipment receptors that are indicated to be directly connected to drainage system. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- F. Install indirect waste piping on drain outlet of emergency equipment receptors that are indicated to be indirectly connected to drainage system. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- G. Install escutcheons on piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect cold-water-supply piping to plumbed emergency plumbing fixtures not having water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for cold-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Directly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors with trapped drain outlet to sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- C. Indirectly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors without trapped drain outlet to sanitary waste or storm drainage piping.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install equipment nameplates or equipment markers on emergency plumbing fixtures and equipment and equipment signs on water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for identification materials specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Mechanical-Component Testing: After plumbing connections have been made, test for compliance with requirements. Verify ability to achieve indicated capacities.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Emergency plumbing fixtures and water-tempering equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace fixture flow regulators for proper flow.

END OF SECTION 224500

### SECTION 224716 - PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Pressure water coolers.
- 2. Bottle filling stations.
- 3. Supports.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler and bottle filling station.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

# B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. <u>Plumbing Fixtures</u>: Provide the following:
  - a. Manufacturer cut sheet indicating water consumption.
  - b. WaterSense certification for residential fixtures, commercial water closets, commercial urinals, and commercial showers.

# C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power wiring.

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers and bottle filling stations to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 100 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Standards:

- 1. Pressure water coolers and bottle filling stations intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 or NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 or NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- 2. Comply with ASHRAE 34 for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Comply with UL 399.
- 4. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
- 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 6. Comply with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for water filters for water coolers and bottle filling stations.
- 7. Comply with ICC A117.1 for accessible water coolers and bottle filling stations.

## 2.2 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

A. Pressure Water Coolers: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

#### 2.3 BOTTLE FILLING STATION

A. Bottle Filling Station: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements..

#### 2.4 SUPPORTS

#### A. Water-Cooler Carrier:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Set freestanding, pressure water coolers on floor.
- C. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- D. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers, and bottle filling stations to mounting frames.
- E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping"
- F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping"
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- C. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplates to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

### **END OF SECTION 224716**

#### SECTION 230000 – GENERAL MECHANICAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The work shall include furnishing, installing and testing the equipment and materials specified in other sections of the Mechanical Specifications and shown on the Drawings. It is the intent of these Specifications that the mechanical systems shall be suitable in every way for the intended usage. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this Division shall be furnished at no extra cost.
- B. Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections bound herewith are a component part of Division 23 specifications. Comply with all provisions, details and instructions of these sections in the accomplishment of work covered under Division 23.
- C. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete mechanical systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- D. Where Sub-Contracts are used to perform portions of the work, division of labor between sub trades is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- E. The general scope work includes, but is not limited to, furnishing, coordinating, and installing the following:
  - 1. Heating, air conditioning and ventilation equipment.
  - 2. Ductwork, air distribution.
  - 3. HVAC piping, specialties and equipment.
  - 4. Controls and wiring.
  - 5. Testing and balancing.
- F. Visit all areas of the site, buildings and structures (as applicable) in which work under these sections is to be performed. Inspect carefully the existing conditions prior to bidding. Bid submission is evidence that the Contractor has examined the site and existing conditions, understands conditions under which the work will be performed, and takes full responsibility for complete knowledge of all factors governing the work.
- G. Schedule all service interruptions in existing facilities at the Owner's convenience with 24 hours (minimum) notice. Obtain prior approval for each interruption.
- H. Thoroughly test all mechanical systems at the completion of work and make any minor correction changes or adjustments necessary for all the proper functioning of the system and equipment. All workmanship shall be of the highest quality; substandard work will be rejected.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedures for submittals: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

Transmit each shop drawing submittal with provided Shop Drawing Submittal Cover Form, attached as Appendix B, for each item of equipment/material or each specification section/paragraph

- B. <u>Clearly indicate proposed equipment and/or materials substitutions in shop drawings.</u>

  <u>Summarize all deviations from the specified quality, functionality, appearance or performance of proposed equipment and/or materials in the preface of each submittal. Include documentation to support deviations.</u>
- C. Provide descriptive data on all materials and equipment as required to ascertain compliance with Specifications.
- D. Design layout shown on drawings is based on physical sizes of reputable equipment manufacturers. If equipment other than models indicated is installed, any resulting conflicts with space, maintenance access, clearances or codes are the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at his expense.
- E. Where specific models and manufacturers of materials and equipment are specified, substitutions as allowed by the specifications and State law will be considered. Substitutions must be equivalent in quality, function, suitability and arrangement to specified equipment. Architect/Engineer to have final authority as to equivalency of substitutions.
- F. Equipment model numbers noted in these specifications or on the drawings are intended to establish a minimum standard of quality and do not necessarily relate to specific options or arrangement as shown. Provide equipment with all standard features and optional features as stated and arranged as shown on the drawings.
- G. Where seismic design for supports is required, submit installation details for supports and engineering analysis as specified.

# 1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform Work in accordance with all applicable state and local codes, standards and regulations.
- B. Furnish all materials and labor which is be required for compliance with codes, standards and regulations, whether specifically mentioned in these specifications or shown on the drawings.
- C. Obtain required construction permit from the authority having jurisdiction and arrange, at the proper time, for all inspections required by such authority. Pay all permit and inspection costs required.

# 1.4 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. Contractor is responsible for coordination of work between trades. Provide fully complete and functional systems.
- B. Compare mechanical drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades.

- C. Coordinate mechanical installation with the work of other trades. Report any pertinent discrepancies to the Architect/Engineer and obtain written instructions for any necessary revisions. Before starting any construction, make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Architect/Engineer. No extras will be allowed for rework of uncoordinated installations.
- D. Determine exact route and location of each mechanical item prior to fabrication and/or installation. Adjust location of ducts, piping and equipment, etc., to accommodate interferences anticipated and encountered.
- E. Right of Way: General priority for right of way is as follows:
  - 1. Items located per regulatory requirement.
  - 2. Piping with pitch requirement (plumbing drains, etc.).
  - 3. Ductwork.
  - 4. Piping without pitch requirement.
  - 5. Electrical wiring (conduits, etc.).
- F. Arrange all work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement.
- G. Provide clearance and easy access to any equipment which requires periodic maintenance. Arrange ducts, piping and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging doors and access panels.

# 1.5 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS (GENERAL)

- A. Provide all new materials unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- B. Manufacturers and models listed in drawings and specifications are used for layout and to convey to bidders the general style, type, character and quality of product desired. Listed examples are used only to denote the quality standard of product desired and are not intended to restrict bidders to a specific brand, make, manufacturer or specific name.
- C. Adjust layout, system connections and coordinate with other trades as required to properly install equivalent products.
- D. Where equivalent products are submitted, include all associated costs related to substitution in bid.
- E. Furnish materials bearing the manufacturer's name and trade name. Provide UL label where a UL standard has been established for the particular material.
- F. Furnish standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production of equipment types required for the work. Use the manufacturer's latest approved design.
- G. Use the same manufacturer for equipment and materials of the same general type throughout the work to obtain uniform appearance, operation and maintenance.
- H. Protect equipment and materials from dirt, water, chemical or mechanical injury and theft at all times during construction. Provide covers or shelter as required.

- I. If materials or equipment are damaged at any time prior to final acceptance of the work, repair such damage at no additional cost. If materials or equipment are damaged by water, provide replacement no additional cost.
- J. Follow manufacturer's directions completely in the delivery, storage, protection and installation of all equipment and materials. Notify the Architect/Engineer in writing of any conflicts between any requirements of the contract documents and manufacturer's directions. Obtain written instructions before proceeding with the work. The Contractor is responsible for correction of any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's directions or written instructions from the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.
- K. Repair any damage to factory applied paint finish using touch-up paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer. Repaint entire damaged panel or section per the field painting specifications in Division 9 at no additional cost.

# 1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Refer to individual mechanical sections and Division 01.

# 1.7 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install mechanical work in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code (NCSBC). The Contractor shall provide any and all seismic restraint details and calculations that may be required by the NCSBC and/or the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Requirements for restraints are detailed in the NCSBC. All tables and references shall conform to building's location. Restraints shall be per Seismic Performance Category stated on Structural Drawings.
- C. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The Engineer's calculations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings and shall demonstrate Code compliance including certification that the seismic system components comply with the testing requirements of NCSBC Section 1708.5. Calculations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a professional engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorages shall be subject to the review and approval of the project's structural engineer.
- D. The Professional Engineer retained for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation to comply with the Special Inspections requirement of the Code. This engineer shall provide written verification of compliance of the installation with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall be submitted as a Special Inspections Report and shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by other than this engineer is not acceptable.

E. Review of the seismic design computations and shop drawings by the Architect/Engineer or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code.

#### 1.8 PAINTING

- Refer to Division 09.
- B. Protect sensors, controllers, etc. against painting. Do not install thermostats, devices or trim until painting is complete.

# 1.9 LOCATIONS AND MEASUREMENTS

- A. Location of mechanical work is shown on the drawings as accurately as possible. Field verify all measurements to ensure that the work suits the surrounding structure, trim, finishes and/or construction. Provide adjustment as necessary.
- B. <u>Make minor relocations of work prior to installation as required or as directed by the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.</u>

## 1.10 SUPERVISION

- A. Contractor to provide an authorized and competent representative to constantly supervise the work from the beginning to completion and final acceptance. Insofar as possible, keep the same foreman and workmen throughout the project duration.
- B. Representatives of Architect/Engineer, Owner, and local inspection authorities will make inspections during the progress of the work. Contractor to accommodate such inspections and correct deficiencies noted.

# 1.11 QUALITY AND WORKMANSHIP

- A. Contractor to employ skilled tradesmen, laborers and supervisors. Final product to present a neat, well finished, and professional installation.
- B. Remove and replace any work considered substandard quality in the judgment of the Architect/Engineer.

# 1.12 CLOSING IN WORK

A. Do not cover up or enclose work until it has been inspected, tested and approved by authorities having jurisdiction over the work. Uncover any such work for inspection and/or test at no additional cost. Restore the work to its original condition after inspection and/or test at no additional cost.

# 1.13 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Perform all cutting and patching necessary to install work under this Division.
- B. Perform cutting and patching in professional, workmanlike manner.
- C. Arrange work to minimize cutting and patching.

- D. Do not cut joists, beams, girders, columns or any other structural members without written permission from the Architect/Engineer.
- E. Cut opening only large enough to allow easy installation of piping, wiring or ductwork.
- F. Patching material to match material removed.
- G. Restore patched surface to its original appearance at completion of patching.
- H. Where waterproofed surfaces are patched, maintain integrity of waterproofing.
- I. Remove rubble and excess patching materials from the premises.

## 1.14 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings and specifications under this Division are complementary each to the other. Provide any work specified herein and/or indicated on the drawings.
- B. Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of fixtures, piping, devices, equipment, etc. Follow drawings as closely as possible, but arrange work to suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.
- C. The words "furnish", "provide", and/or "install" as used in these drawings and specifications are interpreted to include all material and labor necessary to complete the particular item, system, equipment, etc.
- D. Any omissions from either the drawings or specifications are unintentional. Contractor is responsible for notifying the Architect/Engineer of any pertinent omissions before submitting a bid. Complete and working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.

# 1.15 ACCESSIBILITY

- A. Locate all equipment which must be serviced, operated, or maintained in fully accessible positions. Equipment to include, but not be limited to, valves, traps, cleanouts, motors, controllers, and dampers. If required for accessibility, furnish access doors for this purpose. Minor deviations from drawings may be made to allow for better accessibility. Lack of access doors on drawings does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to provide access doors, if needed to properly service equipment.
- B. Coordinate exact locations and size of access panels for each concealed device requiring service.
- C. Access panels: Steel construction with 16 gauge frames and 18 gauge panels, factory primed with rust inhibiting paint, finish paint by Contractor. Provide suitable UL listed doors where installed in rated construction.
- D. Coordinate access panel locations with architectural construction.
- E. Access panels are not required for access to work located above a lift-out "T" bar type ceiling.

# 1.16 ELECTRICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH MECHANICAL CONTRACTS

- A. Comply with Division 26. Any required Division 23 electrical work not specifically specified to be furnished by Division 26 Contractor shall be provided by Division 23 Contractor.
- B. The mechanical contractors shall furnish all starters and controls for their equipment. The electrical contractor shall mount starters furnished by the mechanical and plumbing contractors, the electrical contractor provides all safety switches, wiring and connections to line side and load side of starters and safety switches complete to mechanical equipment. For resistance type loads where starters or contactors are not required, the electrical contractor shall provide all power wiring and connections complete to equipment. The mechanical contractors shall provide all control wiring and connections and devices for their equipment.
- C. All electrical work performed Division 23 shall comply with Division 26 specification requirements.
- D. See Division 26 specifications and electrical connection diagrams for division of labor between Divisions 23 and 26.
- E. Coordinate electrical interface of supplied mechanical equipment with electrical system. Division 26 electrical work for mechanical systems is based on values scheduled on mechanical drawings. Division 23 Contractor is responsible for any costs to modify the contracted electrical work to service equipment with electrical characteristics different than those scheduled.

#### 1.17 MECHANICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHER CONTRACTS

A. Provide mechanical services as required for items furnished by other contractors or vendors as shown on the Drawings. Actual requirements may vary from Drawings. Coordinate with equipment installed. Make final connections only after approval of the other contractor or vendor, in the contractor's or vendor's presence.

## 1.18 ALTERNATE BIDS

A. Alternate Bids, IF ANY, are described in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.

## 1.19 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions.
- B. As the work progresses, legibly record all field changes on a set of project contract drawings, herein after called the "record drawings."
- C. Record drawings shall accurately show the installed condition of mechanical work.

## 1.20 PHASING OF THE WORK

A. Schedule work in accordance with the relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

# 1.21 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 230000

# SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

## 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

# 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3,300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor. .
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, complying with NEMA Standard Publication General Specification for Consultants, Industrial and Municipal: NEMA Premium Efficiency Electric Motors (600 Volts or Less).
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Re-greasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

# 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

# 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

- 1. Sleeves without waterstop.
- 2. Grout.
- 3. Silicone sealants.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

# 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 SLEEVES WITHOUT WATERSTOP

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
- C. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

## 2.2 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

# 2.3 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
  - 1. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Install sleeves in concrete walls as new walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- C. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.3 SLEEVE SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves for the following piping-penetration applications:

- 1. Interior Walls and Partitions:
  - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

END OF SECTION 230517

## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

# 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install floor plates and escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

## END OF SECTION 230518

# SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
- 4. Fastener systems.
- 5. Equipment supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

# B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.

2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

# 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

#### 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

# 2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

# 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

- a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
- b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
- c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

# 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

# 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

# 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

# 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

# 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.

- 3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
- 4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
- 5. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
- 6. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 7. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 8. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 9. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
- 10. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
- 11. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
- 12. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- 13. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- 14. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- 15. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- 16. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- 17. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- 18. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  - 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.

- 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
- 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  - 5. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 6. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  - 7. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  - 8. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel Ibeams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  - 9. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  - 10. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  - 11. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 12. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  - 13. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

## SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
- 2. Elastomeric hangers.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

# A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

- 1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
- 2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
- 3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
- 4. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
- 5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
- 6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

#### 2.2 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

# A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

- 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
- 2. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- B. Install Elastomeric Isolation Pads under each air handling unit base mounting rail at spacing recommended by pad manufacturer.
- C. Install elastomeric hangers at suspended fan installations.

**END OF SECTION 230548.13** 

# SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Equipment labels.
- 2. Pipe labels.
- 3. Duct labels.
- 4. Stencils.
- 5. Valve tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

## A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 2. Letter Color: White.
- 3. Background Color: Black.
- 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

# 2.2 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

# 2.3 STENCILS

## A. Stencils for Ducts:

- 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for viewing distances up to 15 feet and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- B. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:
  - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

# 2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or

space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

# 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. For concealed valves, dampers, equipment, and devices needing service, provide identification markers visible from floor. Use color dot stickers placed on ceiling grid where valves, dampers, equipment, and devices needing service are installed above. Color scheme to be in accordance with Owner's color-coding standard.

# 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. All major HVAC equipment, including air handlers, air terminal units, fans and pumps shall be properly identified with equipment tag stating equipment ID, ratings and date of installation. Permanent labeling shall be in accordance with NCMC 301.6.
- B. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

# 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

- 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Heating -Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 2. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on a safety-purple background.

#### 3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Duct Label: Stenciled labels shall indicate service and flow direction.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

## 3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. 2 inches, round.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
    - a. White letters on a safety-green background.

# 3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

# END OF SECTION 230553

# SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

# 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
  - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
    - a. Motors.
    - b. Condensing units.
    - c. Heat-transfer coils.
  - 3. Domestic water recirculation.
  - 4. Domestic hot water system.
  - 5. Control system verification.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualification to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:

- a. The Contract Documents examination report.
- b. The TAB plan.
- c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
- d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

# A. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. <u>Air-Balance Report</u>: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 "Air Balancing."
- 2. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 "System Balancing."

# 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Record log of duct leakage tests submitted to designer and/or commissioning agent upon completion.
- I. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - Dates of calibration.

# 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by NEBB or AABC.

- 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or AABC.
- 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
  - 1. <u>ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance</u>: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 "Air Balancing."

# 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

- H. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- J. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- K. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- L. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- M. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
    - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
    - h. Ceilings are installed.
    - i. Windows and doors are installed.
    - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

# 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

- 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts. Mark exterior of repaired duct insulation with location of test holes for Commissioning purposes.
- 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

# 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

# 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.

- c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
- d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
- 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
  - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
- 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
- 4. Obtain approval from Construction Manager for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
- 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
  - 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  - 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - 4. Mark all final settings.
  - 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  - 6. Measure and record all operating data.
  - 7. Record final fan-performance data.

# 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
  - 1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  - 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  - 3. For belt-driven exhaust fan, balance at or above 90% of the maximum speed utilizing pulley and/or sheave adjustment.
  - 4. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  - 5. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
    - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
    - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
  - 6. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
    - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
  - 7. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

- a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
- b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
- c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
- d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
- 8. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
  - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
- 9. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
- 10. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

# 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
  - 3. Motor rpm.
  - 4. Phase and hertz.
  - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  - 7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  - 8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.
- C. Record final motor speed or frequency at balanced conditions in addition to nameplate speed.

## 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

# 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
  - 1. Nameplate data.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  - 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
  - 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  - 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 3. Airflow.

#### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC HOT WATER SYSTEM

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
  - 1. Measure total water flow.
    - a. Position valves for full flow.
    - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
  - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
  - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  - 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - 3. Mark final settings.

# 3.11 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

- 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
- 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
- 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
- 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
- 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
- 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
- 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
- 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
- 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

#### 3.12 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets (other): Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

## 3.13 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

## 3.14 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.

- 3. Manufacturers' test data.
- 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
- 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.
  - 6. Engineer's name and address.
  - 7. Contractor's name and address.
  - 8. Report date.
  - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
  - 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  - 2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  - 3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  - 4. Terminal units.
  - 5. Balancing stations.
  - 6. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:

- a. Unit identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Unit arrangement and class.
- g. Discharge arrangement.
- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- j. Number, make, and size of belts.
- k. Number, type, and size of filters.

#### 2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

## 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- i. Return airflow in cfm.
- j. Outdoor-air damper position.
- k. Return-air damper position.
- 1. Pressure set-point in inches wg.

## F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

# 1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft.
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

## 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- 1. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.
- G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
  - 1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
    - f. Pressure set-point in inches wg.
- H. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  - 1. Report Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft..
- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

# I. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

## 1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft..

## 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Final calibration factor for achieving design air flow.
- h. Individual inlet and outlet readings and sum at maximum air flow rate and at minimum air flow rate in cfm.
- i. Space temperature in deg F.

# J. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

## 1. Unit Data:

- a. Unit identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Service.
- d. Make and size.
- e. Model number and serial number.
- f. Water flow rate in gpm.
- g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.

- i. Pump rpm.
- j. Impeller diameter in inches.
- k. Motor make and frame size.
- 1. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- m. Voltage at each connection.
- n. Amperage for each phase.
- o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- p. Seal type.

#### 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
- b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
- c. Actual impeller size in inches.
- d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
- e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
- f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.
- 1. Pressure set-point in feet of head or psig.

# K. Instrument Calibration Reports:

## 1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

#### 3.15 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Construction Manager and commissioning authority. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Verification of TAB will include 10% of all redundant equipment such as terminal units. Verification of TAB will include limited readings of 100% of major equipment (all AHUs, EFs, etc.).
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

- 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
- 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
- 3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.

#### 3.16 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

#### SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, supply, return, exhaust and outdoor air.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (factory-applied).

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule article for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

# 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.

- 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
- 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
- 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  - 4. Color: White.

## 2.4 SEALANTS

- A. FSK Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 4. Color: Aluminum.

#### 2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.6 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Width: 3 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

#### 2.7 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  - 1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - 2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

- 3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
- 4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inchthick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

#### 2.8 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

#### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

## 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

# 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
  - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  - 3. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1-inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vaporbarrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  - 4. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  - 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  - 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
  - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.

- 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
- 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vaporbarrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:

- 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to five location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

# 3.7 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

#### A. Items Not Insulated:

- 1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
- 2. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
- 3. Flexible connectors.
- 4. Vibration-control devices.
- 5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

#### 3.8 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Rectangular, round and flat-oval duct (supply, return, exhaust and outside air) in concealed conditioned space, insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Rectangular, round and flat-oval duct (supply, return, exhaust and outside air) in exposed and in mechanical space, insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

#### SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
  - 2. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

# 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule."
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- A. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

## 2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 2. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## 2.4 TAPES

- A. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - 1. Width: 2 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
  - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

- E. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- L. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- N. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

#### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

# 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturers recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

#### 3.7 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

# 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range.

#### 3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.

## 3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inches thick.

## 3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Piping, Exposed where subject to damage (from floor to 8' above finished floor):
  - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.

# 3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED FINISH SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Refrigerant Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 30 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

#### SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

## 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines: 535 psig.
  - 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop based on manufacturer's test data.

## B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
- 2. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
- 3. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field Quality-Control Reports: For each field quality control test and inspection.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.
- B. Prepare valves and specialties for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads and other end connections.

- C. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve and specialty end protection.
  - 2. Store valves and specialties indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5.
- C. Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Tubing for Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Applications Other than Heat Pumps: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Tubing for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Tubing Lines: 535 psig.

#### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Provide as recommended by equipment by manufacturer.

#### 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Provide as recommended by equipment by manufacturer.

## 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Provide as recommended by equipment by manufacturer.

#### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Provide as recommended by equipment by manufacturer.

## 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- L. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- M. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- N. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- O. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

#### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

#### 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections as recommended by equipment manufacturer and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. Maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

#### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

B. Technician responsible for the system charging with refrigerant shall hold EPA Section 608 certification of the applicable level.

END OF SECTION 232300

#### SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
- 2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
- 3. Sheet metal materials.
- 4. Sealants and gaskets.
- 5. Hangers and supports.

#### B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
- 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

# 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Sealants and gaskets.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
  - 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
  - 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
  - 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
  - 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

# 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible".
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 "Construction and System Startup."
- E. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- F. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

# 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For ducts serving fume hoods, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for such use.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."

## 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304; cold rolled, annealed, sheet.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets are to be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

#### B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

- 1. Application Method: Brush on.
- 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
- 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
- 4. Water resistant.
- 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
- 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
- 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
- 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
- 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

#### C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

- 1. Application Method: Brush on.
- 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
- 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
- 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
- 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
- 6. Water resistant.
- 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
- 8. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
- 9. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
- 10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
  - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  - 2. Type: S.
  - 3. Grade: NS.
  - 4. Class: 25.
  - 5. Use: O.
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  - 1. Seal is to provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and is to be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
  - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless Steel Ducts: Stainless steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

#### 3.2 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal all duct, with the exception of transfer ducts, in accordance with SMACNA seal class "A"; all seams, joints, and penetrations shall be sealed:

#### 3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 3. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum interval of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

#### 3.5 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - b. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - c. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - d. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  - 6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

# C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

- 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
- 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

- a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.7 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

## 3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel.
- B. Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg.
    - b. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 3.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
    - b. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 3.
  - 3. Ducts Connected to Fans Kitchen Hood Air:
    - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
      - 1) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
    - b. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
    - c. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class A.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class 2.
    - e. Airtight/watertight.
  - 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 3.
- C. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.

2. Stainless-Steel Ducts: Match duct material.

# D. Elbow Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.

- 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
- b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

# E. Branch Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
- 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

METAL DUCTS 233113 - 10

# SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

# 1.2 SUMMARY

# A. Section Includes:

- 1. Manual volume dampers.
- 2. Fire dampers.
- 3. Flange connectors.
- 4. Turning vanes.
- 5. Duct-mounted access doors.
- 6. Flexible connectors.
- 7. Flexible ducts.
- 8. Duct accessory hardware.

# B. Related Section Includes:

1. Section 283111 - Fire Detection and Alarm System for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Combination fire- and smoke-damper including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

# 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

# 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

# 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

# 4. Blades:

- a. Multiple or single blade.
- b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
- c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
- d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
- 5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- 6. Bearings:

- a. Molded synthetic.
- b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

# 2.4 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
  - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

#### 2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

# 2.6 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- C. Vane Construction: Single wall.

# 2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors Round Duct."
  - 1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches.

# 2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. vd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- E. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
- F. Flexible Duct Connectors:
  - 1. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
  - 2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

# 2.9 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. At outdoor-air intakes.
  - 2. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 3. Downstream from manual volume dampers.
  - 4. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 5. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.

- 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
- 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
- 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- M. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- N. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape and draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  - 3. Operate combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

# SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SUMMARY

# A. Section Includes:

- 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
- 2. Wall Fans.
- 3. Ceiling mounted.
- 4. In-line.

# 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on sea level.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  - 6. Roof curbs.
  - 7. Fan speed controllers.

# 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

# 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 FANS

- A. Description: See drawings.
- B. Capacities: see drawings.
- C. Product Requirements:
  - 1. Performance Ratings: Conform to AMCA 210 and bear the AMCA Certified Rating Seal.
  - 2. Sound Ratings: AMCA 301, tested to AMCA 300, and bear AMCA Certified Sound Rating Seal.
  - 3. Fabrication: Conform to AMCA 99.
  - 4. UL Compliance: UL listed and labeled, designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with UL 705.
- D. Electrical Characteristics and Components
  - 1. Electrical Characteristics: See Drawings
- E. Accessories:
  - 1. See Drawings

# 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

# 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- C. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

# 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Building Wire and Cable."

# 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation. Adjust belt tension.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- C. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SUMMARY

# A. Section Includes:

1. Diffusers, registers, and grilles.

# B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 089119 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
- 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

A. Refer to schedule on design drawings for further information.

# 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels,

- locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

# 3.2 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

**END OF SECTION 233713** 

# SECTION 235523.13 - LOW-INTENSITY, GAS-FIRED, RADIANT HEATERS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

# 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes low-intensity, gas-fired, radiant heaters.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For LPG piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.

# C. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
- 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of high-intensity, gas-fired, radiant heaters, as well as procedures and diagrams.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  - 2. Gas piping to heater installations
  - 3. Heater locations and clearance requirements.
  - 4. Other suspended ceiling components including the following:

- a. Lighting fixtures.
- b. Air outlets and inlets.
- c. Sprinklers.
- d. Vehicle exhaust system.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

# 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gas-fired, radiant heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

# 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of radiant heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: All warranty periods listed below are from date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Burner Assembly: Three years.
    - b. Combustion and Emitter Tubes: Two years.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. CSA certified, with CSA Seal and certification number clearly visible on units indicating compliance with ANSI Z83.20/CSA 2.34.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 2.2 DRAFT-INDUCED HEATERS

A. Description: Factory-assembled, indoor, overhead-mounted, electrically controlled, low-intensity, infrared radiant heating units using gas combustion. Heater to have all necessary factory-installed wiring and piping required prior to field installation and startup.

- B. Fuel Type: Design burner for natural gas having characteristics same as those of gas available at Project site.
- C. Refer to schedule on design drawings for further information.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine structures, substrates, areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, required clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fuel-gas piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Installation: Install gas-fired, radiant heaters and associated gas features and systems according to NFPA 54.
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from substrate using chain hanger kits and building attachments.
  - 1. Restrain the unit to resist seismic acceleration.
- C. Maintain manufacturers' recommended clearances for combustibles.

# 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Gas Piping: Comply with Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to gas train inlet; provide union with enough clearance for burner removal and service.
  - 1. Gas Connections: Connect gas piping to radiant heaters according to NFPA 54.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to gas-fired, radiant heaters, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Vent Connections: Comply with Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and with Section 235123"Gas Vents."
- D. Electrical Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1. Install electrical devices furnished with heaters but not specified to be factory mounted.

# 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Gas-fired, radiant heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial-temperature set points.
- B. Adjust burner and other unit components for optimum heating performance and efficiency.

# 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gas-fired, radiant heaters.

**END OF SECTION 235523.13** 

#### SECTION 237433 - DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes factory-packaged units capable of supplying up to 100 percent outdoor air and providing cooling and heating.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Startup service reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

# 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

# 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
  - 2. Filters: One sets for each unit.

# 1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 SPLIT-SYSTEM DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Refer to Drawing Schedules for approved manufacturers.
- B. Substitutions: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- C. Description: Factory packaged, self-contained DX split-system. Refer to Drawing Schedules for specific requirements.
- D. Capacities: Refer to Drawing Schedules.
- E. Indoor Section Cabinet: Heavy duty galvanized steel lined with 2", R-8 fiberglass thermal/acoustic insulation.
- F. Outdoor Condenser Section: Heavy duty galvanized steel cabinet with propeller fans, draw through aluminum fin-copper tube condenser with wire guards.
- G. Refrigeration System: R401A direct expansion, factory installed and tested. Digital scroll compressors with full modulating hot gas reheat on all circuits. Aluminum fin-copper tube evaporator and hot gas reheat coils.
- H. Fans: Centrifugal belt or direct drive with variable frequency drive.
- Controls: Factory install integrated DDC controls to achieve Sequences of Operation indicated with BACnet interface for connection to building BAS. Refer to Specifications Section 230900 for additional requirements.

# 2.2 CONDENSATE PIPING

- A. Provide and install condensate piping as required by equipment furnished. Sizing and arrangement shall be strictly according manufacturer recommendations.
- B. Mechanical Contractor to provide and install condensate collection systems as indicated on drawings. Piping materials and installation shall conform to the Roof Drain Piping requirements of Division 22, Section 231113 "Plumbing Piping".

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine project conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's rigging and installation instructions for unloading units and moving to final locations.
- B. Install sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.
- C. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.
- D. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install condensate collection systems as indicated and in accordance with equipment manufacturer recommendations. Comply with Roof Drain Piping requirements of Division 22, Section 231113 "Plumbing Piping". Insulate per Section 230719.

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to units, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Duct Connections: Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- C. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements for power wiring, switches, and motor controls in electrical Sections.

# 3.4 FACTORY VERIFICATION TESTING

A. Each complete system shall be functionally run-tested prior to shipment. A dielectric withstand test shall also be conducted. All data is to be recorded on a factory test form and shall include all electrical components, motors, compressors, safeties, controls, along with refrigerant pressure and electrically operated options.

- B. Each refrigerant circuit shall have a complete refrigerant circuit leak test and all data is to be included in the factory test form(s).
- C. Upon request, a copy of the factory Unit Test Sheet shall be provided.

# 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
  - 3. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits and measure and record the following:
    - a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
    - d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
  - 4. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
    - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
    - b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
  - 5. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
  - 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  - 8. Verify that filters are installed.
  - 9. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
  - 10. Inspect operation of power vents.
  - 11. Verify bearing lubrication.
  - 12. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  - 13. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  - 14. Start unit.
  - 15. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
  - 16. Operate unit for run-in period.
  - 17. Calibrate controls.
  - 18. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
  - 19. Verify operational sequence of controls.
  - 20. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
    - a. Supply-air flow.
    - b. Outdoor-air flow.
- B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.
- C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.
- D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

# 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

# 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.
- B. Participate in demonstration of equipment control operation via building BAS (NSC) as OEM Vendor.

END OF SECTION 237433

# SECTION 238126 - VARIABLE CAPACITY, HEAT PUMP HEAT RECOVERY AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Variable capacity, heat pump heat recovery air conditioning system variable refrigerant flow (VRF) multizone heating cooling system.
- B. System shall consist of outdoor heat pump unit(s), branch circuit controller(s), multiple indoor units and integrated DDC (Direct Digital Controls). Each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be capable of operating in any mode independently of other indoor units or groups. System shall be capable of changing mode (cooling to heating, heating to cooling) with no interruption to system operation. Each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be independently controlled.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procedure for submittals: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide product performance and dimensional data for heat pump outdoor units, indoor units, branch controllers, controls and accessories including electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Piping and Wiring Diagram: Submit job specific piping and wiring diagram form manufacturer showing all outdoor units, indoor units, branch controllers, thermostats, controls, pipe sizes, and wiring connections.
- D. Manufacturer Certified Installer: Submit documentation that installer is Manufacturer trained and certified.

# 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The units shall be listed by Electrical Laboratories (ETL) and bear the ETL label.
- B. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code (N.E.C.).
- C. A full charge of R-410A for the condensing unit only shall be provided in the condensing unit.

# 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store and handle equipment according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

# 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. The systems must be installed by manufacturer trained and certified installer.
- B. The systems must be verified with a completed commissioning report submitted to and approved by the manufacturer.
- C. In addition to warranty required by General and Special Conditions and Division 1 specifications, equipment installed under this Section shall be covered by an extended manufacturer's limited warranty for a period of five (5) years from date of installation. In addition, the compressor shall have a manufacturer's limited warranty for a period of seven (7) years from date of installation.
- D. If, during this period, any part should fail to function properly due to defects in workmanship or material, it shall be replaced or repaired at the discretion of the manufacturer.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Mitsubishi, Daikin, LG.
- B. Substitutions: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.

# 2.2 AIR-COOLED HEAT RECOVERY HEAT PUMP OUTDOOR UNIT

- A. General: Outdoor unit shall be R410A packaged heat pump unit including bonderized and finished galvanized steel cabinet; inverter driven scroll hermetic compressor; direct drive variable speed propeller type fan; outdoor coil with lanced or corrugated plate fins on copper tubing, pre-piped and pre-wired with all safety and operation controls. Include all manufacturer supplied or recommended accessories for stable and reliable operation.
- B. Unit shall be designed to run continuously at ambient temperatures down to 0F without additional low ambient controls. All circuits shall defrost simultaneously in order to resume full heating more quickly. Partial defrost which may extend "no or reduced heating" periods will not be allowed.
- C. Ductless cooling only units are not required to include heat recovery.
- D. Performance: See Drawing Schedules.
- E. Electrical characteristics: See Drawing Schedules.

# 2.3 BRANCH CIRCUIT (BC) CONTROLLERS

- A. General: BC Controllers completely factory assembled, piped and wired with microprocessor capability to communicate with VRF control system and perform all refrigerant control functions necessary for proper operation.
- B. Linear electronic expansion valves shall be used to control the variable refrigerant flow.
- C. Provide integral condensate pan and drain.
- D. Electrical characteristics: See Drawing Schedules.
- E. Control wiring shall be 24VDC 2-conductor, twisted pair shielded cable.

# 2.4 INDOOR UNITS

- A. General: Provide matching ductless or ducted indoor fan-coil units as indicated on Drawings. Indoor units may be wall-mount, ceiling-mount, ceiling cassette, ducted fan-coil style or ducted air handing unit style.
- B. Indoor units shall be factory assembled, wired and run tested. Contained within the unit shall be filter rack with filter indoor supply fan, direct expansion coil, all factory wiring, piping, electronic modulating linear expansion device, control circuit board and fan motor. The unit shall have a self-diagnostic function, 3-minute time delay mechanism, an auto restart function, and a test run switch. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes shall be charged with dehydrated air before shipment from the factory.
- C. Where indicated or required, include matching factory installed condensate pump.
- D. Arrangement: See Drawing Schedules.
- E. Performance: See Drawing Schedules.
- F. Electrical Characteristics: See Drawing Schedules.

#### 2.5 VRF SYSTEM CONTROLS

- A. Control network shall be capable of supporting remote controllers, schedule timers, system controllers, centralized controllers, an integrated web based interface, graphical user workstation, and capability for future system integration to Building Management Systems via BACNet.
- B. Wiring: Daisy chain configuration, 2-conductor (16 AWG), twisted shielded pair, stranded wire or as otherwise indicated by manufacturer.
- C. Network wiring shall be CAT-5e with RJ-45 connection.
- D. Space temperature controllers: Wall mount user adjustable temperature and fan control with lockout ability. Provide as indicated on Drawings.

- E. Central Controller: Building management controller with capability to schedule, adjust and monitor multiple individual space temperature controllers. Central controller shall support interconnection with a network PC via a closed/direct Local Area Network (LAN). Software functions shall be provided so that the building manager can securely log into central controller via the PC's web browser to support operation monitoring, scheduling, error email, personal browser for PCs and MACs, and online maintenance diagnostics. Controller shall be capable of performing initial settings via the high-resolution, backlit, color touch panel on the controller or via a PC.
- F. VRF Manufacturer's JACE: Controller/server platform combining integrated control, supervision, data logging, alarming, scheduling and network management functions with Internet connectivity and web serving capabilities. Controller shall be able to control and manage external devices over the Internet and present real time information in web-based graphical views. Controller will serve as a BACnet interface for the buildings BMS system. The points will include the points from the central controller not available through a standard BACnet interface.
- G. Central Controller / JACE Enclosure: 18-gauge steel at 12 in. wide x 18 in. tall x 4 in. in. deep enclosure with a single DIN rail. DIN rail mounted vertically.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with Code.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch thick, reinforced concrete base. Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- D. Install and connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

#### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Coordinate piping installations and specialty arrangements with schematics on Drawings and with requirements specified in piping systems. If Drawings are explicit enough, these requirements may be reduced or omitted.
- B. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Duct Connections: Connect supply ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors.

# 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

# B. Tests and Inspections:

- 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
- 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

# 3.5 OWNER TRAINING

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units. Submit documentation of Owner personnel receiving training.

END OF SECTION 238126

# SECTION 260500 - GENERAL ELECTRICAL

# PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary General Conditions and Division 1 bound herewith are a component part of this Division of the specifications and shall apply to this Division with equal force and shall be consulted in detail for instructions pertaining to the work.
- B. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete electrical systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- C. It is the intent of these Specifications that the electrical systems shall be suitable in every way for the service required. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this Division shall be furnished at no extra cost.
- D. The work shall include, but not be limited to, furnishing, coordinating, and installing the following:
  - 1. Electrical service from utility company transformer to service equipment.
  - 2. Electrical distribution system for power, lighting, receptacles and miscellaneous power as shown on the contract drawings.
  - 3. Electrical lighting systems as shown on the contract drawings, complete with indicated switching, circuiting, etc.
  - 4. Electrical receptacle systems as shown on the contract drawings.
  - 5. Exit and emergency lighting systems.
  - 6. Power supplies for equipment furnished by others.
  - 7. Standby emergency power system.
  - 8. Raceway and outlet systems (including cabling) for telecommunications, data and other special systems.
  - 9. Grounding.
  - 10. Seismic restraint systems.
  - 11. Short Circuit and Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study and Arc-Flash Analysis.
  - 12. Other special requirements and/or systems where shown.
- E. Each bidder (or Representative) shall, before preparing a proposal, visit all areas of the existing site. If the work includes demolition, restoration, renovation and/or addition; then existing buildings and structures should be carefully inspected. The submission of the proposal by this Bidder shall be considered evidence that the Bidder (or Representative) has visited the site and noted the locations and conditions under which the work will be performed and that the Bidder takes full responsibility for a complete knowledge of all factors governing the work.
- F. All power interruptions to existing equipment shall be at the Owner's convenience with 24 hours (minimum) notice. Each interruption shall have prior approval.

- G. The work shall include complete testing of all equipment and wiring at the completion of work and making any minor correction changes or adjustments necessary for all the proper functioning of the system and equipment. All work shall be of the highest quality; substandard work will be rejected.
- H. Field verify all existing underground electrical and mechanical piping.

# 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop drawings shall be submitted for all equipment, apparatus, and other items as required by the Architect/Engineer. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submittals are required for all materials shown in the individual specifications sections.
- C. Submittals are required for materials and specific methods used for penetrations of rated assemblies and for seismic restraints.
- D. All shop drawings and submittals shall be submitted at the same time. Partial shop drawing and submittals will be rejected and not processed. Materials, equipment and long lead items that require special handling, if identified and requested by the contractor, will be processed separately.
- E. Proposed equipment and/or materials substitutions shall be clearly indicated in shop drawings. All deviations from the specified quality, functionality, appearance, or performance of the proposed equipment and/or materials shall be clearly summarized in the preface of each submittal.
- F. The project shall be bid based on the equipment listed in these specifications and on the drawings. After award of the Electrical Contract the Contractor may wish to substitute equipment other than that specified, subject to approval. The Electrical Contractor shall bear the "burden of proof" for demonstrating substitute equipment equivalency and suitability.
- G. The Electrical Contractor shall be required to replace installed "equivalent" equipment if the operation of this equipment does not meet the full design intent of the specified system.
- H. Physical size of equipment used in the design layout are those of reputable equipment manufacturers. The Contractor is responsible for providing equipment which will fit the space provided. If the Contractor elects to use other manufacturer's equipment, any resulting conflicts with space clearance or codes shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at the Contractor's expense.
- I. The Contractor assumes all responsibility for providing code clearances. Submit a dimensioned, scale drawing of each electrical equipment room showing exact size and location of all proposed electrical equipment with code clearances and working space clearly indicated.

# 1.3 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor is, by careful examination, satisfied as to the nature and location of the work, the conformation of the ground, the character, quality and quantity of the materials to be encountered, the general and local conditions and all other matters which can and may affect the work under this contract. The Contractor shall be held responsible for visiting the site and thoroughly familiarizing himself with the existing conditions and also any contractual requirements as may be set forth in the other Divisions of these Specifications. No extras will be considered because of additional work necessitated by obvious job conditions that are not indicated on the drawings.
- B. The Contractor shall compare the electrical drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades, and shall report any discrepancies between them to the Architect/Engineer and obtain written instructions for changes necessary in the electrical work. The electrical work shall be installed in cooperation with other trades installing interrelated work. Before installation, the Contractor shall make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Architect/Engineer. All changes required in the work of the Contractor caused by neglect to do so shall be made at the expense of the Contractor.
- C. Location of electrical raceways, switches, panels, equipment, fixtures, etc., shall be adjusted to accommodate the work to interferences anticipated and encountered. The Contractor shall determine the exact route and location of each electrical raceway prior to make up and assembly.
  - Right of Way: Lines which pitch shall have the right of way over those which do not
    pitch. For example, steam, condensate and plumbing drains shall normally have right of
    way. Lines whose elevations cannot be changed shall have the right of way over lines
    whose elevations can be changed.
  - 2. Offsets and changes in direction of electrical raceways shall be made as required to maintain proper headroom and to clear pitched lines whether or not indicated on the drawings. The Contractor shall furnish and install elbows, pull boxes, etc., as required to affect these offsets, transitions, and changes in directions. Conflicts between electrical raceways, fixtures, etc., and ductwork or piping which cannot be resolved otherwise, will be resolved by the Architect/Engineer.
- D. Installation and Arrangements: The Contractor shall install all electrical work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement or maintenance. The Contractor shall arrange electrical raceways and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging and overhead doors and of access panels.

# 1.4 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS (GENERAL)

A. In compliance with North Carolina General Statute 133.3, the Architect/Engineer has, wherever possible, specified the required performance and design characteristics of all materials utilized in this construction. In some cases it is impossible to specify the required performance and design characteristics and when this occurs the Architect/Engineer has specified three or more examples of equal design or equivalent design, establishing an acceptable range for items of equal or equivalent design. Cited examples are used only to denote the quality standard of product desired and do not restrict bidders to a specific brand, make, manufacturer or specific

- name and are used only to set forth and convey to bidders the general style, type, character and quality of product desired. Equivalent products will be acceptable.
- B. Substitution of materials, items, or equipment of equal or equivalent design shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for approval or disapproval. Equal or equivalent shall be interpreted to mean an item of material or equipment, similar to that named and which is suitable for the same use and capable of performing the same functions as that named, the Architect/Engineer being the judge of equality.
- C. The materials used in all systems shall be new, unused and as hereinafter specified and shall bear the manufacturer's name, trade name and third party testing agency label in every case where a standard has been established for the particular material. Equipment furnished under this specification shall be essentially the standard product of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of the required type of equipment, and shall be the manufacturer's latest approved design. All materials where not specified shall be of the very best of their respective kinds. Samples of materials or manufacturer's specifications shall be submitted for approval as required by the Architect/Engineer.
- D. Protection: Electrical equipment shall at all times during construction be adequately protected against damage. Equipment shall be tightly covered and protected against dirt, water and chemical or mechanical injury and theft. Electrical equipment shall not be stored out of doors. Electrical equipment shall be stored in dry, permanent shelters. If an apparatus has been damaged, such damage shall be repaired at no additional cost. If any apparatus has been subject to possible injury by water, it shall be replaced at no additional cost to the Owner. At the completion of the work, fixtures, equipment, and materials shall be cleaned and polished thoroughly and turned over to the Owner in a condition satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer. Damage or defects, developing before acceptance of the work shall be made good at the Contractor's expense.
- E. Any damage to factory applied paint finish shall be repaired using touch up paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer. The entire damaged panel or section shall be repainted per the field painting specifications in Division 9, at no additional cost to the Owner.
- F. Where materials such as wiring devices and plates, fire alarm equipment, paging system components, etc. are specified to match existing, provide materials to match existing equipment in finish, color, capacity, ratings, operating characteristics, performance, etc.
- G. Delivery and Storage: Equipment and materials shall be delivered to the site and stored in original containers, suitably sheltered from the elements, but readily accessible for inspection by the Architect/Engineer until installed.
- H. Equipment and materials of the same general type shall be of the same make throughout the work to provide uniform appearance, operation and maintenance.
- I. Manufacturer's directions shall be followed completely in the delivery, storage, protection, and installation of all equipment and materials. The Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect/Engineer, in writing, of any conflicts between any requirements of the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's directions and shall obtain the Architect/Engineer's written instructions before proceeding with the work. Should the Contractor perform any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's direction or such written instructions from the Architect/Engineer, the Contractor shall bear all costs arising in correcting the deficiencies.

# 1.5 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Submit under relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. The Contractor shall provide two compilations of catalog data, bound in suitable loose leaf binders, for each manufactured item of equipment used in the electrical work. These shall be presented to the Architect/Engineer for transmittal to the Owner before the final inspection is made. Data shall include printed installation, operation and maintenance instructions for each item, indexed by product with heavy sheet dividers and tabs. All warranties shall be included with each item. Each manufacturer's name, address and telephone number shall be clearly indicated.
- C. Shop drawings with Architect/Engineer's "as noted" markings are not acceptable for the above. "Approved" shop drawings are acceptable if adequate information is contained therein. Generally, shop drawings alone are not adequate.

# 1.6 PAINTING

- A. All painting will be performed by the General Contractor for the project, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall clean all exposed electrical work for painting. Should the Electrical Contractor delay in installing exposed conduit and outlets until the General Contractor has begun painting, the Electrical Contractor shall be required to paint all exposed electrical work at the Electrical Contractor's own expense. Such painting will be accomplished in accordance with the detailed specifications for the Project.
- C. Conductors exposed in boxes and cabinets shall be protected against painting. Devices, cover plates, trims, etc., for panel boards and cabinets shall not be installed until painting has been completed.
- D. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for touch up painting that may be required for electrical material or apparatus furnished with factory applied finish.

# 1.7 LOCATIONS AND MEASUREMENTS

A. Outlets and appliances are shown and located on the drawings as accurately as possible. All measurements shall be verified on the project and in all cases the work shall suit the surrounding trim, finishes and/or construction. The locations of outlets for special appliances shall be installed so that when extended, they are flush with the finished wall or ceiling and permit the proper installation of fixtures and/or devices. Heights of all outlets shown on the drawings are approximate only. Slight relocations of outlets, devices and equipment shall be made by the Contractor as required or as directed by the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

# 1.8 OUALITY OF WORK

A. All work shall be executed as required by this specifications and the accompanying drawings and shall be done by skilled mechanics, and shall present a neat, trim, and mechanical appearance when completed. All work shall be performed as required by the progress of the job.

# 1.9 SUPERVISION

- A. The Contractor shall personally, or through an authorized and competent representative, constantly supervise the work from the beginning to completion and final acceptance. So far as possible, the Contractor shall keep the same foreman and mechanics throughout the project duration.
- B. During the progress of the work it shall be subject to inspection by representatives of the Architect/Engineer, the Owner, and local inspection authorities, at which time the Contractor shall furnish such required information and data on the project as requested.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall coordinate the electrical work with other Contractors and cooperate in the preparation and maintenance of a master schedule for the completion of the project.

# 1.10 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall do all excavating, trenching and backfilling in connection with this contract. All such excavation shall be done in a manner as not to endanger or damage existing utility lines and other structures. If damage occurs, the Contractor shall pay for and repair damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer.
- B. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to investigate conditions before excavation and to exercise care during the excavation to avoid any utilities or other objects which may not be shown. Whether or not utilities, etc., are shown on the drawings shall not relieve the Contractor from the responsibility to repair any damage caused by this work. Location of all ditching shall be laid out at grade and shall be approved by the Architect/Engineer before excavating and no work shall be done until such approval has been obtained.
- C. All surplus earth shall be removed by the Contractor from the site and disposed of at the Contractor's expense.
- D. All excavation, trenching and shoring shall be in accordance with rules and regulations set forth in Article XXI, Bulletin 1 "Trenching" as published in a separate bulletin by the North Carolina Department of Labor, Division of Standards and Inspection Construction Bureau.
- E. Backfilling shall be in 6" layers with each layer tamped. No boulders or debris shall be used for backfill material. Where trenching passes through areas designated as streets, driveways, walkways, or parking areas, backfill shall be tamped with power tamps to 95 percent compaction.
- F. Excavation shall be bid unclassified with no extra payment for removal of rock.

# 1.11 CLOSING IN WORK

A. Work shall not be covered up or enclosed until it has been inspected, tested and approved by the authorities having jurisdiction over this work. Should any of the work be enclosed or covered up before such inspection and test, the Contractor shall uncover the work at the Contractor's expense; after it has been inspected, tested and approved, the Contractor shall restore the work to its original condition.

#### 1.12 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. All electrical equipment, materials, and installation shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the following codes and standards:
  - 1. American Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC)
  - 2. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  - 3. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
  - 4. Building Officials Code Administrators (BOCA)
  - 5. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
  - 6. Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA)
  - 7. International Code Council (ICC)
  - 8. International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO)
  - 9. National Electrical Code (NEC) 2020 edition
  - 10. National Electrical Contractor's Association (NECA)
  - 11. National Electrical Installation Standards (NEIS)
  - 12. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
  - 13. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
  - 14. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
  - 15. North Carolina Energy Conservation Code, 2018 (NCECC)
  - 16. North Carolina State Building Code (NCSBC)
  - 17. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)
  - 18. Requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), latest edition.
  - 19. Underwriters Laboratories Inc (U.L.)
  - 20. Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI)
  - 21. Toxicity Characteristics Leaching Procedure (TCLP)
- B. All electrical equipment and material shall be listed by an approved third party testing agency amongst those accredited by the NCBCC (North Carolina Building Code Council) to Label Electrical & Mechanical equipment and shall bear the appropriate testing agency's listing mark or classification marking. Equipment, materials, etc. utilized not bearing a third party testing agency certification shall be field or factory third party testing agency certified prior to equipment acceptance and use.
- C. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of the bid opening shall apply.

# 1.13 ENCLOSURE TYPES

- A. Unless otherwise specified herein or shown on the Drawings, electrical enclosures shall have the following ratings:
  - 1. NEMA 1 for dry, indoor locations.

- 2. NEMA 3R for outdoor locations, rooms below grade (including basements and buried vaults), "DAMP" and "WET" locations.
- 3. NEMA 4X for locations subject to corrosion when specifically noted.

#### 1.14 CODES, INSPECTION AND FEES

- A. All equipment, materials and installation shall be in accordance with the requirements of the local authority having jurisdiction.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits and pay all fees required for permits and inspections of electrical work.
- C. The electrical contractor shall notify the Authority Having Jurisdiction to schedule required inspections. No work will be covered up until after inspection has been completed and approved by an authorized AHJ inspector.

#### 1.15 TESTS AND SETTINGS

- A. Test all systems furnished under Division 26 & 27 and repair or replace all defective work. Make all necessary adjustments to the systems and instruct the Owner's personnel in the proper operation of the systems.
- B. Make the following minimum tests and checks prior to energizing electrical equipment:
  - 1. Mechanical inspection, testing and settings of all circuit breakers, disconnect switches, motor starters, control equipment, etc., for proper operation.
  - 2. Check all wire and cable terminations. Verify to the Architect/Engineer that connections meet the equipment torque requirements.
  - 3. Check rotation of motors, obtain permission from other contractors to start motor, and proceed to check for proper rotation. If the motor rotates in the wrong direction, correct it. Take all necessary precautions not to damage any equipment.
  - 4. Provide all instruments and equipment for the tests specified herein.
- C. All testing shall be scheduled and coordinated by the Contractor. Notify the Owner at least two (2) weeks in advance of conducting tests. The Contractor shall have qualified personnel present during all testing.
- D. All tests shall be completely documented with the time of day, date, temperature, and all other pertinent test information. All required documentation of readings indicated shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer prior to, and as one of the prerequisites for, final acceptance of the project.
- E. Electrical Distribution System Tests: All current carrying phase conductors and neutrals shall be tested as installed, and before load connections are made, for insulation resistance and accidental grounds. This shall be done with a 500 volt megger. The following procedures shall be as follows:
  - 1. Minimum readings shall be one million (1,000,000) ohms or more for #6 AWG wire and smaller; 250,000 ohms or more for #4 AWG wire or larger. Measurement to be taken between conductors and between conductor and the grounded metal raceway.

- 2. After all fixtures, devices and equipment are installed and all connections completed to each panel, the Contractor shall disconnect the neutral feeder conductor from the neutral bar and take a megger reading between the neutral bar and grounded enclosure. If this reading is less than 250,000 ohms, the Contractor shall disconnect the branch circuit neutral wires from this neutral bar. The Contractor shall then test each one separately to the panel until the low reading ones are found. The Contractor shall correct troubles, reconnect and retest until at least 250,000 ohms from the neutral bar to the grounded panel can be achieved with only the neutral feeder disconnected.
- 3. The Contractor shall send a letter to the Architect/Engineer certifying that the above has been done and tabulating the megger readings for each panel. This shall be done at least four (4) days prior to final inspection.
- 4. At inspection, the Contractor shall furnish a megger and show Architect/Engineer's representative that the panels comply with the above requirements. The Contractor shall also furnish a clamp type ammeter and a voltmeter and take current and voltage readings as directed by the representatives.
- 5. At inspection, the Contractor shall furnish ladders, required tools, and mechanics to open fixtures, boxes, panels, or any other equipment to enable the Architect/Engineer's representatives to see into any parts of the installation that may be requested.
- F. Electrical Grounding System Tests: Provide documentation showing values of earth ground impedance for the system ground. See Specifications Section 260526 for testing requirements.

#### 1.16 SLEEVES AND FORMS FOR OPENINGS

- A. Anchor bolts, sleeves, inserts, supports, etc., that may be required for electrical work shall be furnished, located and installed by the Electrical Contractor. The Electrical Contractor shall give sufficient information (marked and located) to the General Contractor in time for proper placement in the construction schedule. Should the Electrical Contractor delay or fail to provide sufficient information in time, then the Electrical Contractor shall cut and patch construction as necessary and required to install electrical work. Such cutting and patching will be done by the General Contractor but paid for by the Electrical Contractor.
- B. Provide and place all sleeves for conduits penetrating floors, walls, partitions, etc. Locate all necessary slots for electrical work and form before concrete is poured.
- C. Where exact locations are required by equipment for stubbing up and terminating conduit concealed in floor slabs, request shop drawings, equipment location drawings, foundation drawings, and any other data required to locate the concealed conduit before the floor slab is poured.
- D. Where such data is not available in time to avoid delay in scheduled floor slab pours, the Architect/Engineer may elect to allow the installations of such conduits to be exposed. No additional compensation for such change will be allowed and written approval must be obtained from the Architect/Engineer.
- E. Seal all openings, sleeves, penetration, and slots as specified and as shown on the Contract Drawings.

# 1.17 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. For the purposes of the Electrical Contract, "cutting and patching" shall be defined as that work required to introduce new electrical work into existing construction. Work required to install or fit electrical boxes, conduit, enclosures, equipment, etc. into new construction is not "cutting and patching".
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall perform all cutting and patching necessary to install all equipment as required under his contract and shall re-establish all finishes to their original condition where cutting and patching occur.
- C. All cutting and patching shall be done in a thoroughly workmanlike manner.
- D. Core drill holes in existing concrete floors and walls as required.
- E. Install work at such time as to require the minimum amount of cutting and patching.
- F. Do not cut joists, beams, girders, columns or any other structural members without first obtaining written permission from the Architect/Engineer.
- G. Cut opening only large enough to allow easy installation of the conduit.
- H. Patching is to be of the same kind of material as was removed.
- I. The completed patching work shall restore the surface to its original appearance.
- J. Patching of waterproofed surfaces shall render the area of the patching completely waterproofed.
- K. Remove rubble and excess patching materials from the premises.
- L. Raceways and ducts penetrating rated floor, ceiling or wall assemblies shall be properly sealed in accordance with the corresponding approved third party testing agency method utilizing approved and listed materials.

# 1.18 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

- A. The Electrical drawings and specifications are complementary each to the other and what may be called for by one shall be as binding as if called for by both. The drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of outlets, devices, equipment, wiring, etc. Drawings shall be followed as closely as possible; however, all work shall suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.
- B. Do not scale electrical drawings. Refer to the architectural drawings for dimensions.
- C. Where the words "furnish and install" or "provide" are used, it is intended that this contractor shall purchase and install completely any and/or all material necessary and required for this particular item, system, equipment, etc.
- D. Where the words "the Contractor" or "this Contractor" appear in either the Electrical Drawings or Division 26 Specifications, it shall mean the Electrical Contractor.

- E. Any omission from either the drawings or these specifications are unintentional, and it shall be the responsibility of this Contractor to call to the attention of the Architect/Engineer any pertinent omissions before submitting a bid. Complete and working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.
- F. Where no specific material or equipment type is mentioned, a high quality product of a reputable manufacturer may be used provided it conforms to the requirements of these specifications. These materials shall be listed or labeled by a Third Party Testing Agency accredited by the NCBCC to label electrical equipment.
- G. The electrical drawings show the general arrangement of raceways, equipment, fixtures, and appurtenances and shall be followed as closely as actual building construction and the work of other trades will permit. Some adjustment of routings and installation of conduit, cable tray and devices should be expected. The electrical work shall conform to the requirements shown on all of the drawings. General and Structural drawings shall take precedence over Electrical Drawings. Because of small scale of the electrical drawings, it is not possible to indicate offsets, fittings and accessories which may be required. The Contractor shall investigate the structural and finish conditions affecting the work and shall arrange his work accordingly, providing such fittings and accessories as may be required to meet such conditions, without additional cost to the Owner and as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
- H. Each 3 phase circuit shall be run in a separate conduit unless otherwise shown on the Drawings.
- I. Unless otherwise approved by the Architect/Engineer, conduit shown exposed shall be installed exposed; conduit shown concealed shall be installed concealed.
- J. Where circuits are shown as "home runs" all necessary fittings and boxes shall be provided for a complete raceway installation.
- K. Verify with the Architect/Engineer the exact locations and mounting heights of lighting fixtures, switches and receptacles prior to installation.
- L. Any work installed contrary to or without approval by the Architect/Engineer shall be subject to change as directed by the Architect/Engineer, and no extra compensation will be allowed for making these changes.
- M. The locations of equipment, fixtures, outlets, and similar devices shown on the Drawings are approximate only. Exact locations shall be as approved by the Architect/Engineer during construction. Obtain in the field all information relevant to the placing of electrical work and in case of any interference with other work, proceed as directed by the Architect/Engineer and furnish all labor and materials necessary to complete the work in an approved manner.
- N. Surface mounted panel boxes, junction boxes, conduit, etc., shall be supported by spacers to provide a clearance between wall and equipment.
- O. Circuit layouts are not intended to show the number of fittings, or other installation details. Furnish all labor and materials necessary to install and place in satisfactory operation all power, lighting, and other electrical systems shown. Additional circuits shall be installed wherever needed to conform to the specific requirements of equipment.

- P. All connections to the equipment shall be made as required, and in accordance with the approved shop and setting drawings.
- Q. Redesign of electrical work, which is required due to the Contractor's use of an alternate item, arrangement of equipment and/or layout other than specified herein, shall be done by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. Redesign and detailed plans shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for approval. No additional compensation will be provided for changes in the work, either the Electrical Contractor's or others, caused by such redesign.
- R. All floor mounted electrical equipment shall be placed on 4 inch thick concrete housekeeping pads. Edges shall be chamfered.

# 1.19 SIZE OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Investigate each space in the structure through which equipment must pass to reach its final location. If necessary, the manufacturer shall be required to ship his materials in sections sized to permit passing through such restricted areas in the structure.
- B. The equipment shall be kept upright at all times. When equipment has to be tilted for ease of passage through restricted areas during transportation, the manufacturer shall be required to suitably brace the equipment, to insure that the tilting does not impair the functional integrity of the equipment.

# 1.20 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. As the work progresses, legibly record all field changes on one set of project contract drawings, herein after called the "record drawings".
- B. Record drawings shall accurately show the installed condition of the following items:
  - 1. Power distribution one line diagram(s).
  - 2. Panel schedule(s).
  - 3. Control wiring diagram(s).
  - 4. Lighting fixture schedule(s).
  - 5. Service, feeder, branch circuit conduit and conductor sizes.
  - 6. Lighting fixture, receptacle, and switch outlets, interconnections and homeruns with circuit identification.
  - 7. Underground raceway routing.
  - 8. Plan view, sizes and locations of switchgear, distribution transformers, and panelboards.
  - 9. Standby emergency power system.
  - 10. Telecommunications system.

# 1.21 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. All equipment, raceways, hardware, etc., furnished under the electrical contract shall be protected from corrosion by factory applied coatings, paint and galvanizing, or shall be fabricated of high quality 300 series stainless steel. All exposed hardware shall be hot dip galvanized. The requirements of preceding section entitled "Delivery and Storage" shall be strictly followed. Touch up any scratched metallic surfaces immediately to prevent corrosion.

Apply cold galvanizing compound to all galvanized surfaces damaged during installation, i.e., cutting, etc. Rusted or corroded materials shall be replaced before final acceptance of the work.

# 1.22 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. All equipment furnished under the electrical contract shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code (NCSBC). The Contractor shall provide any and all seismic restraint details and calculations that may be required by the NCSBC and/or the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Requirements for restraints are detailed in the NCSBC. All tables and references shall conform to building's location. Restraints shall be per Seismic Performance Category stated on Architectural Drawings.
- C. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The Engineer's calculations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings and shall demonstrate Code compliance including certification that the seismic system components comply with the testing requirements of NCSBC Section 1708.5. Calculations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a professional engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorages shall be subject to the review and approval of the project's structural engineer
- D. The Professional Engineer retained for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation to comply with the Special Inspections requirement of the Code. This engineer shall provide written verification of compliance of the installation with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall be submitted as a Special Inspections Report and shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by other than this Engineer are not acceptable.
- E. Review of the seismic design computations and shop drawings by the Architect/Engineer or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code.

# 1.23 GUARANTEE

A. The Contractor shall guarantee the materials and workmanship covered by these drawings and specifications for a period of one year from the date of acceptance by the Owner. The Contractor shall repair and/or replace any parts of any system that may prove to be defective at no additional cost to the Owner within the guarantee period. All equipment warranties shall be as specified and included in the Contract Documents.

# 1.24 PHASING OF THE WORK

A. The Electrical Contractor shall schedule his work as described in the relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

# 1.25 ALTERNATE BIDS

A. Alternate bid items are described in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used

END OF SECTION 260500

#### SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

# A. Section Includes:

- 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
- 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

#### B. References:

- 1. ANSI/NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
- 2. B. NECA Standard of Installation (National Electrical Contractors Association).

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

# 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Test and Field quality-control reports. Indicate procedures and values obtained.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements.

# 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.

# 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. All wire and cable shall be installed in conduit. This includes all power wiring; fire alarm, sound and communications wire and cable (unless noted otherwise); HVAC control cable; etc.
- B. Conductor sizes are based on 75° C. copper.
- C. Wire and cable routing shown on Drawings is approximate unless dimensioned. Route wire and cable as required to meet Project Conditions.
- D. Where wire and cable routing is not shown, and destination only is indicated, determine exact routing and lengths required.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
  - 1. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
  - 2. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  - 3. RoHS compliant.
  - 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide.
- B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83 for Type THHN/THWN-2/THW and THW-2.

# 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

# 2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger. Minimum #12 AWG, maximum 500 KCMil.
- B. Insulation/Voltage Rating: 600 volts.
- C. Color Coding: 120/240 volts and 208/120 volts

Phase A - Black
Phase B - Red
Phase C - Blue
Neutral - White
Ground - Green

# 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Exposed Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values. Completely and thoroughly swab raceway before installing wire.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Use solid conductor for feeders and branch circuits 10 AWG and smaller, and Class B stranded for larger conductors.
- H. Use conductor not smaller than 12 AWG for power and lighting circuits. Use conductor not smaller than 14 AWG for fire alarm and control circuits.
- I. See Drawings "Minimum Conductors Size Chart" for minimum size of conductors required, maximum circuit lengths and upsizing for voltage drop.

- J. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment, and panelboards.
- K. Clean conductor surfaces before installing lugs and connectors.

# 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torquetightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches of slack.
- C. Conductors shall be installed continuous from outlet to outlet with no splicing except within outlet or junction boxes, troughs and gutters. Make splices, taps, and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceptible temperature rise.
- D. Use mechanical connectors for copper conductor splices and taps, 8 AWG and larger, except main grounding conductors, which shall be terminated with compression lugs. Tape uninsulated conductors and connector with electrical tape to 150 percent of insulation rating of conductor or use third party testing agency-approved insulating covers.
- E. Use insulated spring wire connectors with plastic caps for copper conductors, 10 AWG and smaller, splices and taps in junction boxes, outlet boxes and lighting fixtures, "Push wire" type connectors are not acceptable.
- F. "Sta-Kon" or other permanent type crimp connectors shall not be used for branch circuit connections.
- G. Joints in stranded conductors shall be spliced by approved mechanical connectors and gum rubber tape or friction tape. Solderless mechanical connectors for splices and taps, provided with U.L approved insulating covers, may be used instead of mechanical connectors plus tape.

# 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

# 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

# 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection and testing under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect wire for physical damage and proper connection.
- C. Measure tightness of bolted connections and compare torque measurements with manufacturer's recommended values.
- D. Verify continuity of each branch circuit conductor
- E. Prior to energizing, feeders, sub-feeders and service conductor cables shall be tested for electrical continuity and short circuits. A copy of these tests shall be provided to Engineer of Record/Architect for record and must remain on site for final inspection.

END OF SECTION 260519

### SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. IEEE 142 Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.
- B. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.

# 1.3 GROUNDING SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. The neutral of each secondary electrical distribution system shall be grounded at one point only which shall be at the main disconnecting device. From the main disconnecting device, a copper grounding conductor sized in accordance with the NEC shall be extended to the earth electrode. Main grounding conductors #8 AWG through and including #4 AWG shall be insulated and identified by a green colored insulation. All grounding conductors shall be installed in conduit sized in accordance with the NEC. Conduit carrying a grounding conductor shall also be grounded at the earth electrode.

#### B. The earth electrode shall be:

- 1. The metallic domestic water piping system of the building. Connection of the grounding conductor shall be made by an approved grounding clamp. The point of connection to the water system shall be within 6 inches of the entrance of the pipe inside the building or structure. Where dielectric unions are used in the water piping system, the grounding connection shall be made on the "street side" of the first such union in the system. A bonding jumper the same wire size as the grounding conductor shall be installed across the water piping connection such that the water meter may be removed without interrupting the grounding system continuity. Where no metallic domestic water piping system exists, the earth electrode shall be a ground rod with supplemental ground electrodes as defined below.
- 2. Ground Rods: Size as specified below driven 11 feet into the earth where shown on the contract drawings or as required. The rods shall be connected to the system ground point as shown on the Drawings by an insulated, green copper jumper in conduit. The connection at the rods shall be brazed or exothermically welded. The points of connection to the earth electrode system shall be visible and accessible upon completion of construction. Sectional rods of the same size and length shall be used in multiple rod installations, if required by soil conditions.
- 3. The building steel and slab reinforcing steel as shown and as required by the NEC. Connection points shall be as directed by the Architect/Engineer.

# 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. The ground resistance of the earth electrode shall not exceed 5 ohms. The Electrical Contractor shall test the earth electrode using a standard three point ground resistance tester and shall advise the Architect/Engineer of the results of such tests in writing. Where tests show the resistance to ground exceeds 5 ohms, appropriate action shall be taken to reduce the resistance to 5 ohms, or less, by driving additional ground rods or other approved methods. Compliance shall be demonstrated by retesting.

# 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

# 1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Procedures for submittals as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and grounding electrodes.
- C. Certificate of Compliance: Indicate approval of installation by authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Test Reports: Indicates overall resistance to ground and resistance of each electrode.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. <u>Manufacturers:</u> Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
  - 2. ERICO International Corporation.
  - 3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.

# 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

# 2.3 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

# B. Bare Copper Conductors:

- 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
- 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
- 3. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.

# 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

#### 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel 3/4 inch by 10 feet.

# 2.4 BONDING BUSHINGS

Bonding bushings shall be steel or malleable iron, insulated, threaded type, zinc plated for interior use and galvanized for exterior use. Provide with dual rated tin plated saddle for use with bonding conductors and resilient plastic insulation throat liner with 150°C rating molded on over the metallic stop. All bushings shall be third party testing agency approved and listed. Die cast zinc bushings are not acceptable.

# 2.5 GROUND ROD INSPECTION WELLS

#### A. Pedestrian Traffic Rated

Well Housing: 9 inch diameter High Density Polyethylene (HDPE), 10" minimum length. Static vertical load rating of 300 PSF minimum. Two knock out mouse holes for conductor entrance. Harger GAW910, nVent Erico T416B or approved equal.

Well cover: HDPE twist lock with locking bolt and the legend "GROUND" embossed on cover.

# B. Vehicle Traffic Rated

Well Housing: 10 inch diameter reinforced concrete, 12" minimum length. Static vertical load rating of 20,000 PSF minimum. Two knock out mouse holes for conductor entrance.

Well cover: Bolt down cast iron with the legend "GROUND" embossed on cover.

# 2.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Electrical Power Grounding Busbars: Third party testing agency listed and labelled. Grounding busbars shall be provided for single point termination of power distribution system grounding and bonding conductors as shown on the Drawings. Grounding busbars shall be tin plated solid copper factory drilled with a NEMA hole size and pattern for termination of two hole lugs, quantity as required with 25% spare, and be of the minimum dimensions shown on the Drawings. Provide with 600V standoff insulators, stainless steel mounting brackets and stainless steel hardware. Provide clear Lexan cover over connections.
- B. Telecommunications Grounding Busbars: Comply with TIA-607-C and BISCI Standards. Grounding busbars shall be provided for single point termination of telecommunications system grounding and bonding conductors as shown on the Drawings. Grounding busbars shall be tin plated solid copper factory drilled with a BISCI hole size and pattern for termination of two hole lugs, quantity as required with 25% spare, and be of the minimum dimensions shown on the Drawings. Provide with 600V standoff insulators, stainless steel mounting brackets and stainless steel hardware. Provide clear Lexan cover over connections.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, **No. 2/0** AWG minimum or as indicated on plans.
  - 1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

# 3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

# 3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

- B. Signal and Communication Equipment: In addition to grounding and bonding required by NFPA 70, provide a separate grounding system complying with requirements in TIA/ATIS J-STD-607-A.
  - 1. For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
  - 2. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-4-by-12-inch (6.3-by-100-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
  - 3. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

# 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. All connections to ground conductors shall be accessible for inspection and made with approved solderless connectors, brazed or bolted to the equipment or structure to be grounded. All contact surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned before connections are made to insure good metal to metal contact.
- C. All equipment housings and/or enclosures, and all non-current carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, raceway systems, etc., shall be effectively and adequately bonded to ground.
- D. Grounding type insulated bonding bushings and jumpers shall be provided where concentric, eccentric or over-sized knockouts are encountered. The jumpers shall be sized per the National Electrical Code.
- E. All metallic raceways entering or leaving panelboards (branch circuits less than 30 amperes in lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboards excepted), switchboards, transfer switches, enclosed circuit breakers, safety switches, transformers, etc. shall be provided with insulated grounding and bonding bushings and each separate piece of raceway shall be individually bonded to the equipment ground bus or metallic enclosure, as applicable, by means of copper conductor sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code.
- F. An equipment ground bus shall be installed in each panelboard for terminating equipment grounding conductors.
- G. All wiring devices equipped with grounding connections shall be permanently and securely connected to the enclosure in which they are mounted with a copper grounding jumper.
- H. The frame of all lighting fixtures shall be securely grounded to the equipment ground system with grounding conductors.
- I. Provide grounding electrode conductor and connect to reinforcing steel in foundation footing where indicated. Bond reinforcing steel together.

- J. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  - 2. Install rod electrodes at locations indicated. Install additional rod electrodes as required to achieve specified resistance to ground.
- K. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
  - 1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- L. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

# M. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

- 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
- 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
- 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- N. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

# 3.5 LABELING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.
- B. Install labels at the telecommunications bonding conductor and grounding equalizer.

1. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."

# 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
- B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
  - 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect/Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

# SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

# A. Section Includes:

- 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
- 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide materials, sizes, and types of anchors, fasteners and supports to carry the loads of equipment and conduit. Consider weight of wire in conduit when selecting products.

# 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Unistrut.
    - b. B-line.
    - c. Erico.
    - d. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Material: Provide material and finishes with adequate corrosion resistance.
  - 3. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inches, or as required to carry load.
  - 4. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  - 5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Steel Structural Elements: Use beam clamps.
  - 2. Concrete Surfaces: Use self drilling anchors and expansion anchors.
  - 3. Hollow Masonry, Plaster, and Gypsum Board Partitions: Use toggle bolts.
  - 4. Solid Masonry Walls: Use expansion anchors.
  - 5. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws or bolts
  - 6. Wood Elements: Use wood screws...

# 2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems unless requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- D. Do not use powder actuated anchors.
- E. Obtain permission from Architect/Engineer before drilling or cutting structural members.
- F. Install surface mounted cabinets and panelboards with minimum of four anchors. In wet and damp locations use steel channel supports to stand cabinets and panelboards one inch (25 mm) off wall.
- G. Conduits installed on the interior of exterior building walls shall be spaced away from the wall surface a minimum of 1/4 inch (65mm) using "clamp-backs" or struts.

- H. Use sheet metal channel to bridge studs above and below cabinets and panelboards recessed in hollow partitions.
- I. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

# 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements. Do not fasten supports to pipes, ducts, mechanical equipment, and conduit.
- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

# 3.4 PAINTING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

#### SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
- 2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
- 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
- 4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
- 5. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

# 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

# 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
  - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  - 2. General, HVAC, fire protection and plumbing contractor items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

# 1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for Project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations and mounting heights of outlet, pull, and junction boxes on project record documents.
- C. Accurately record actual routing of conduits larger than 2 inches.

# 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI C80.1 Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc Coated.
- B. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.

- C. ANSI/NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
- D. NECA "Standard of Installation".
- E. NEMA TC2 Schedule 40 PVC.
- F. NEMA TC 3 PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing.

# 1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

# 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle Products to site under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Accept conduit and boxes on site. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect conduit and boxes from corrosion and entrance of debris by storing above grade. Provide appropriate covering.
- D. Protect PVC conduit from sunlight.

# 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- B. Verify routing and termination locations of conduit prior to rough-in.
- C. Conduit routing is shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Route as required to complete wiring system.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Galvanized Rigid Conduit (GRC): Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- C. Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC): Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

- D. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
  - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
  - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch minimum.
- E. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- F. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  - 1. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
  - 2. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

# 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC or RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- D. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- E. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.

# 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, NEMA rating in accordance with environment, unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
  - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

# 2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

# 2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes (permitted in dry, conditioned spaces only): Galvanized steel. Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
  - 1. Junction, switch, receptacle and outlet boxes for interior use in dry locations shall be zinc coated or cadmium plated sheet steel, 4" square and 2 1/8" deep, unless otherwise indicated on the contract drawings. Smaller and shallower outlet boxes will be permitted only by special permission of the Architect/Engineer where such boxes are necessary due to structural conditions encountered. Where larger junction boxes are required, they shall be fabricated from No. 10, 12, 14 or 16 gauge sheet steel as required by the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., and galvanized after fabrication.
  - 2. All junction boxes shall have screw fastened covers.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover and threaded hubs.
- D. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- E. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover and threaded hubs.
- F. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 4X or other approved rating appropriate for environment with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Stainless steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
  - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

# G. Cabinets:

- 1. NEMA 250, Type 4X or other approved rating appropriate for environment, stainless steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
- 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
- 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
- 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  - 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC, IMC, RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
  - 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC or Type EPC-80-PVC.
    - a. More than Five Feet from Foundation Wall: Use nonmetallic conduit.
    - b. Within Five Feet from Foundation Wall: Use rigid steel conduit.
  - 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  - 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EPC-80-PVC.
  - 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EPC-80-PVC.
  - 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: PVC coated rigid steel conduit or stainless steel rigid conduit, as specified. Raceway locations include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Interior locations up to 15' high or as shown.
  - 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EPC-40-PVC
  - 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  - 6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4X stainless steel.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

# 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Install in locations as shown on Drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections and compliance with regulatory requirements.
- C. Set wall mounted boxes at elevations to accommodate mounting heights indicated and specified in section for outlet device. Boxes are shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Adjust box location up to 10 feet (3 m) if required to accommodate intended purpose.
- D. Outlets, junction, taps, etc., on exposed rigid metal conduit shall be cast metal conduit fittings or cast metal boxes of the type and size appropriate for the location.
- E. Install pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings and in unfinished areas only.
- F. Install boxes to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using approved materials and methods.
- G. Circuiting is shown schematically. Exact routing of branch circuits may be varied to suit building construction; however, the combination of circuits within raceways and panelboard connections shall not be changed from those shown on the drawings.
- H. Raceways shall be installed exposed. All raceways shall be run parallel to, or at a right angle with the building walls.
- I. Arrange conduit to maintain headroom and present neat appearance.
- J. Cut conduit square using saw or pipecutter and de-burr cut ends.
- K. Bring conduit to shoulder of fittings; fasten securely.
- L. Use conduit bodies to make sharp changes in direction, as around beams. Use factory elbows, or hydraulic one-shot bender, to fabricate bends in metal conduit larger than 2 inch size.
- M. Avoid moisture traps; provide junction box with drain fitting at low points in conduit system.
- N. Use suitable caps to protect installed conduit against entrance of dirt and moisture.
- O. The use of "LB's" shall be limited where possible. Where necessary to use "LB's" sized above 2 inch, mogul units shall be installed.
- P. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hotwater pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- Q. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- R. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

- S. Where underground or underslab raceways are required to turn up into cabinets, equipment, etc., and on to poles, the elbow required and the stub-up out of the slab or earth shall be of 40 mil plastic-coated rigid steel. Alternately, field applied corrosion protection wrap systems utilizing a primer, putty tape and all-weather corrosion protection tape may be used, in equivalent thickness to factory applied materials, with the specific approval of the Architect/Engineer.
- T. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- U. All metallic raceways entering or leaving panelboards (branch circuits less than 30 amperes in lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboards excepted), switchboards, transfer switches, enclosed circuit breakers, safety switches, transformers, etc. shall be provided with insulated grounding and bonding bushings and each separate piece of raceway shall be individually bonded to the equipment ground bus or metallic enclosure, as applicable, by means of copper conductor sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code.
- V. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm)of enclosures to which attached. Do not support conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps. Remove wire used for temporary supports.
- W. Service entrance raceways run inside building foundation walls shall be buried at least eighteen (18) inches below grade or encased with a minimum of three (3) inches of concrete on all sides. Concrete encasement shall extend to the service equipment for raceways exposed above grade in crawl spaces. Encased raceways shall be of a type approved by the NEC as "suitable for concrete encasement".

# X. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

- 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
- 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
- 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
- 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
- 5. Change to GRC before rising above floor.
- 6. The placement of conduit in floor slabs shall be thoroughly coordinated with the General Contractor to avoid conflicts with steel reinforcing bars, reductions in net concrete sections and floor penetrations.
- Y. Route conduit through roof openings for piping and ductwork or through suitable roof jack with pitch pocket. Coordinate location with roofing installation specified under Division 7
- Z. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- AA. PVC schedule 40 shall not be used exposed or concealed in gypsum walls, but may be used in CMU walls.

- BB. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- CC. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35-mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- DD. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- EE. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces.
- FF. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

# GG. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

- 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
- HH. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- II. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements.
- JJ. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between the box and cover plate or the supported equipment and box.
- KK. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- LL. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

# 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

- 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit.
- 2. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction.
- 3. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-up at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
- 4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
  - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
- 5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 6. Raceways run external to building foundation walls, with the exception of branch circuit raceways, shall be encased with a minimum of three (3) inches of concrete on all sides.
- 7. Encased raceways shall have a minimum cover of eighteen (18) inches, except for raceways containing circuits with voltages above 600 volts, which shall have a minimum cover of thirty (30) inches.
- B. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

#### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

# 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

# 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Install knockout closures in unused box openings

# 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean interior of boxes to remove dust, debris, and other material.
- C. Clean exposed surfaces and restore finish.

END OF SECTION 260533

#### SECTION 260553 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

# PART 1 GENERAL

# 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates and labels.
- B. Wire and cable markers.
- C. Conduit markers.
- D. Wiring device plates marking.
- E. Underground warning tape.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog data for nameplates, labels, and markers.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under regulatory requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation and installation of Product.

# 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

# **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

# 2.1 NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

A. Nameplates: Engraved three-layer laminated plastic as follows:

Furnish and install engraved laminated phenolic nameplates for all electrical equipment supplied under this contract for identification of system, equipment controlled or served, phase, voltage, ampacity, etc. Nameplates shall be securely attached to equipment with stainless steel screws, and shall identify by name the equipment controlled, attached, etc. Embossed, self adhesive plastic tape is not acceptable for marking equipment. Nameplate material colors shall be:

- 1. Blue surface with white core for all 120/208 volt equipment.
- 2. Bright red surface with white core for all equipment related to fire alarm system.
- 3. Dark red (burgundy) surface with white core for all equipment related to Security.
- 4. Green surface with white core for all equipment related to "emergency" systems.
- 5. Orange surface with white core for all equipment related to telephone systems.
- 6. Brown surface with white core for all equipment related to data systems.

#### B. Locations:

- 1. Each electrical distribution and control equipment enclosure (safety switches, panel-boards, transformers, etc.)
- 2. Communication cabinets.
- 3. Pull and splice boxes.
- C. Letter Size: Letters shall be a minimum of 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
- D. See details on the Drawings for additional requirements.

#### 2.2 WIRE MARKERS

- A. Description: Split sleeve type wire markers or approved equivalent.
- B. Locations: Each conductor at panelboard gutters, pull boxes, outlet and junction boxes, and each load connection.

# C. Legend:

- 1. Power and Lighting Circuits: Branch circuit or feeder number as indicated on drawings.
- 2. Control Circuits: Control wire number as indicated on schematic and interconnection diagrams on drawings.

# 2.3 CONDUIT, RACEWAY AND BOX MARKING

Paint visible surfaces of exposed junction and outlet boxes and covers of raceway systems above lay-in and other accessible ceilings. Paint all boxes and covers before installation. Paint exposed conduit and raceways at ten foot minimum intervals with a 6 inch wide band in accordance with the color scheme outlined above. Mark conduits at junction boxes above accessible ceilings with the panelboard and circuit numbers of the circuits contained in the raceway using a permanent black marking pen.

# 2.4 WIRING DEVICE PLATES MARKING

#### A. Description:

- Adhesive backed, laminated plastic receptacle device plate labels identifying the circuit feeding the device. Labels shall be label machine printed, black lettering on a clear background, to indicate panel and circuit number and shall be Casio, Brother, T&B or approved equal.
- B. Locations: Each receptacle device plate. Apply centered on the upper portion below the receptacle, parallel to the upper surface.
- C. Legend: Typed labels to indicate panel and circuit number feeding the device (i.e., RPA-24).

# 2.5 UNDERGROUND WARNING TAPE

6 inch (150 mm) wide, 4 mils thick, minimum, permanent plastic tape or foil face tape for direct burial, detectable type, with suitable continuous warning legend describing buried electrical lines.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

# 3.1 PREPARATION

Degrease and clean surfaces to receive nameplates and labels.

# 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. Install nameplate parallel to equipment lines.
- B. Secure nameplate to equipment front using stainless steel blind rivets as shown on the Drawings.
- C. Install receptacle identification labels at top of each device plate, parallel to upper surface.
- D. Identify conduit using field painting under provisions of Division 9.
- E. All empty conduit runs and conduit with conductors for future use shall be identified for use and shall indicate where they terminate. Identification shall be by tags with string or wire attached to conduit or outlet.
- F. Identify underground conduits using one underground warning tape per trench at 6 8 inches below finished grade.
- G. Install adhesive backed labels only when ambient temperature and humidity conditions for adhesive use are within range recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260553

# SECTION 260573 - SHORT CIRCUIT, ARC FLASH AND COORDINATION STUDY

# PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

This Section includes a computer-based, Short Circuit and Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study and Arc-Flash Analysis for the 208/120 volt distribution system. Protective devices shall be set based on results of the protective device coordination study. Equipment shall be arc flash labelled based on the results of the arc flash hazard analysis.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.3 SUMMARY

- A. The Division 26 Contractor shall provide a facility Short Circuit, Arc Flash and Selective Coordination Study for approval by the Architect/Engineer. The Study shall be performed by a North Carolina Registered Professional Engineer and shall include the utility company transformer and downstream devices including all branch circuit panelboards, engine-generator sets and automatic transfer switches.
- B. The Division 26 Contractor shall be responsible to ensure proper AIC ratings for protection of electrical equipment. All panelboards, enclosed circuit breakers, safety switches, engine-generator set, automatic transfer switches, etc. and overcurrent device ratings, and upsizing of downstream conductors and raceways, if required, shall conform to the results of this Study. Adjustment of protective device equipment, conductors, raceways, etc. to meet the approved coordination study submittal shall be the responsibility of the Division 26 Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. The Study shall be coordinated to 0.1 seconds.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: The following submittals shall be made after the approval process for system protective devices has been completed. Submittals may be in digital form.
  - 1. Coordination study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets
  - 2. Study and Equipment Evaluation Reports.
  - 3. Coordination Study Report.
  - 4. System One Line Diagram.

# 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For coordination-study specialist.

B. Product Certificates: For coordination study and fault current study computer software programs, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are not acceptable.
- B. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An entity experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
- C. Professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, shall be responsible for the study. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of the Engineer.
- D. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.
- E. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

Subject to compliance with requirements, companies offering computer software programs that may be used in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1. EasyPower.
- 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
- 3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

# 3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:
  - Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other electrical Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.

- 2. Impedance of utility service entrance. Contractor coordination with the utility company is required.
- 3. Electrical Distribution System Diagram: In hard-copy and electronic formats, showing the following:
  - a. Circuit breaker and fuse current ratings and types.
  - b. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
  - c. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage and source impedance.
  - d. Cables: Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor material, insulation, and length.
  - e. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.
- 4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
  - a. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current and overload capacity.
  - b. Generator thermal damage curve.
  - c. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
  - d. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
  - e. Panelboards, ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical.

#### 3.3 FAULT-CURRENT STUDY

- A. Calculate the maximum available short-circuit current in amperes rms symmetrical at circuit-breaker positions of the electrical power distribution system. The calculation shall be for a current immediately after initiation and for a three-phase bolted short circuit at each of the following:
  - 1. Utility's supply termination point.
  - 2. Main Distribution Switchboard.
  - 3. Power panelboards.
  - 4. Branch circuit panelboards.
  - 5. Generator and automatic transfer switches.
  - 6. Equipment safety switches.
  - 7. Equipment enclosed circuit breakers.
- B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault and/or arc flash conditions.
- C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.
- D. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with IEEE 241 and IEEE 242.
- E. Study Report: Show calculated X/R ratios and equipment interrupting rating (1/2-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram.

## 3.4 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Perform coordination study using approved computer software program. Prepare a written report using results of fault-current study. Comply with IEEE 399.
  - 1. Calculate the maximum and minimum 1/2-cycle short-circuit currents.
  - 2. Calculate the maximum and minimum ground-fault currents.
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.
- C. Comply with NEC Article 700 requirements for selective coordination of overcurrent protective devices in the supply side of the emergency system.
- D. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:
  - 1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:
    - a. Device tag.
    - b. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
    - c. Fuse-current rating and type.
    - d. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.
  - 2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
    - a. Device tag.
    - b. Voltage and current ratios for curves.
    - c. Cable damage curves.
- E. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

# 3.5 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Perform analysis using approved computer software program. The worst case operating scenario shall be the basis for the calculations. Prepare a written report in conjunction with the results of the fault current study.
- B. Submit results in tabular form, include bus/device name, fault current levels, flash protection boundaries, PPE classes and AFIE levels.
- C. Provide and install equipment labels to identify AIFE and appropriate PPE levels. Labels shall be exterior rated, weather-resistant vinyl.

**END OF SECTION** 

## SECTION 260580 - EQUIPMENT WIRING SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

Electrical power supply for, and connections to, equipment specified under other Divisions and/or provided by the Owner or Owner's vendors.

## 1.2 RELATED DIVISIONS AND SECTIONS

NOTE: Work specified to be accomplished by Division 26 in Related Divisions and Sections shall be as binding as work specified in Division 26.

- A. Division 1: Owner-furnished equipment.
- B. Division 11: Equipment.
- C. Division 13: Special Construction.
- D. Division 21: Fire Suppression.
- E. Division 22: Plumbing.
- F. Division 23: Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.
- G. Section 260533 Conduit.
- H. Section 260519 Building Wire and Cable.
- I. Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding.
- J. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA WD 1 General Purpose Wiring Devices.
- B. NEMA WD 6 Wiring Device Configurations.
- C. ANSI/NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide wiring device manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, configurations, and construction.

C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

# 1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.
- C. Where electrical wiring is required by trades other than covered by Division 26, specifications for that section shall refer to same wiring materials and methods as specified under Division 26.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
- C. Determine connection locations and requirements.
- D. Sequence rough-in of electrical connections to coordinate with installation schedule for equipment.
- E. Sequence electrical connections to coordinate with start-up schedule for equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CORDS AND CAPS

- A. Attachment Plug Construction: Conform to NEMA WD 1.
- B. Configuration: NEMA WD 6; match receptacle configuration at outlet provided for equipment.
- C. Cord Construction: ANSI/NFPA 70, Type SO multiconductor flexible cord with identified equipment grounding conductor, suitable for use in damp locations.
- D. Size: Suitable for connected load of equipment, length of cord, and rating of branch circuit overcurrent protection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify conditions under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

## 3.2 ELECTRICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHERS

- A. Division 26 shall provide a source of power, and final connections, for mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, General Contractor-furnished and Owner-furnished equipment shown on the Drawings. Provide pigtails, flexible connections, conductors, raceways, circuit breakers, safety switches, receptacles, junction boxes, panelboards, wiring troughs, etc. as detailed in this section and/or as shown on the Drawings.
- B. The locations of safety switches and other electrical equipment and devices shown on the Electrical Drawings are approximate only and some adjustment of their locations should be anticipated. Coordinate exact locations with the entity (contractor or Owner) providing the equipment. See other specifications divisions for further explanation of contractor responsibility. Do not apply power to equipment without the permission of the entity providing the equipment.
- C. Division 26 shall coordinate with the mechanical, plumbing, fire protection and general contractors, and the Owner, prior to ordering or installation of any equipment, to verify equipment requirements are provided in the electrical design. Coordinate and verify all electrical requirements, final connections, phasing and rotation, overcurrent and overload protective device sizes with the entity providing the equipment. The contractor will not be compensated for costs associated with changing the electrical systems to match utilization equipment, even if the electrical work is installed per the electrical drawings.
- D. Fuses, variable speed drives, magnetic motor starters, magnetic motor starter overload elements, control devices and sensors and control wiring and control raceways for such equipment will be provided and installed by the entity providing the equipment. The locations of local disconnecting means furnished by other divisions are shown on the respective division's Drawings. Coordinate exact locations with the entity providing the equipment.
- E. Division 23 (Mechanical) Equipment.
  - 1. Division 26 shall furnish and install power wiring, and final connections, to equipment provided by Division 23. If the equipment is provided with an external motor starter, variable frequency drive, etc., Division 23 will install the starter, VFD, etc. and Division 26 shall wire complete. If the equipment has built-in disconnects, Division 26 shall make final connections to the disconnects. If shown on the Drawings, Division 26 shall provide circuit breakers in adjacent panelboards, where allowed by Code and equipment requirements, in lieu of safety switches, to serve local mechanical equipment. Circuit breaker ratings shall be coordinated with Division 23. Division 26 shall make final connections to the equipment.
  - 2. HVAC Control Panels, Control Equipment and Computers:
    - a. Division 26 shall provide and install 120V power wiring to the control panel(s) terminals or to receptacle(s), as required. Division 26 shall provide sufficient electrical circuits from the fire alarm control panel to enable all required mechanical equipment operations during fire mode. See Division 23 Specifications for further definition of the required fire alarm/mechanical control system interface and operation sequence and coordinate with Division 23.
    - b. HVAC Control and Miscellaneous Power: Division 26 shall provide branch circuit power sources (designated "HVAC Control Power" 20A circuit breakers in selected branch circuit panelboards) as indicated in the panel schedules on the Drawings. Division 23 shall extend power from these circuit breakers as required for control power, damper power, and power for unscheduled HVAC equipment. If additional circuits are required, the contractor may use circuit breakers designated as "Spare".

- c. All control and similar equipment less than 120VAC including fuses, relays, actuators, timers, seven-day clocks, alternators, pressure, vacuum, float and flow sensors, pneumatic-electric and low voltage thermostats, thermal overloads, remote selector switches, remote pushbutton stations, emergency break-glass stations, interlocking, etc. and other appurtenances associated with equipment in Division 23, shall be furnished, installed and wired under Division 23. All wiring required for controls and instrumentation, not indicated on the Drawings, shall be furnished and installed by Division 23.
- 3. Refer to Division 23 for additional detail concerning electrical connections to Division 23 equipment.
- G. Division 21 (Fire Protection) System: Division 26 shall connect fire alarm system conductors to sprinkler flow and tamper switches, provided and installed by Division 21. Final connections shall be made by Division 26 under the direct supervision of Division 21. See Fire Alarm System Drawings and Specifications Section 283111 for interface requirements and details.
- H. General Contractor Provided Equipment: Division 26 shall provide a power source adjacent to equipment provided by the General Contractor. Final connections to this equipment shall be provided by Division 26. Coordinate exact locations and requirements with the General Contractor.
  - 1. Electrically-Operated Doors: Division 26 shall furnish and install a power supply to each electrically-operated door at locations as shown and as directed by the General Contractor. Division 26 shall also install and wire door activation switches provided by the General Contractor. Provide connections as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the General Contractor and the door hardware vendor. Final connections to the equipment shall be by Division 26 in cooperation with the General Contractor.
- L. Owner Provided Equipment: Division 26 shall provide a power source adjacent to equipment provided by the Owner. Coordinate exact locations and requirements with the General Contractor. Final connection to the equipment will be provided by Division 26. Provide receptacle configurations and/or provide direct connection as required by equipment and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the Owner. Do not apply power to equipment without the permission of the Owner.

## 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquidtight flexible conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.
- C. Make wiring connections using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered in heat producing equipment.
- D. Provide receptacle outlet where connection with attachment plug is indicated. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is indicated.
- E. Provide suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.

F. Provide interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment where indicated.

END OF SECTION 260580

#### SECTION 260923 - ENCLOSED CONTACTORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. General purpose contactors.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA ICS 6 Enclosures for Industrial Controls and Systems.
- B. NEMA ICS 2 Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies.
- C. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide dimensions, size, voltage ratings and current ratings.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

## 1.5 PROJECT CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of each contactor and indicate circuits controlled on project record documents.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for replacing and maintaining coil and contacts.

## 1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

## 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. ABB/General Electric.
  - 3. Siemens.
  - 4. Schneider/Square D.
  - 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA ICS 2, magnetic contactor.
- C. Configuration: Electrically held, 2 wire control.
- D. Coil Voltage: As indicated/required.
- E. Poles: As indicated, with 2 spares minimum.
- F. Contact Rating: As indicated, 30 amperes minimum.
- G. Enclosure: NEMA 4X.
- H. Accessories:
  - 1. Selector Switch: ON/OFF/AUTOMATIC.
  - 2. Indicating Light: RED.
  - 3. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, field convertible.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pushbuttons and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy duty type.
- B. Indicating Lights: NEMA ICS 2, transformer type.
- C. Auxiliary Contacts: NEMA ICS 2, Class A300.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

A. Connect to thermostat control.

# END OF SECTION 260923

#### SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Distribution panelboards.
- B. Branch circuit panelboards.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 3: Concrete for supporting foundations and pads.
- C. Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding.
- D. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.
- E. Section 260573 Short Circuit, Arc Flash and Coordination Study.
- F. Section 262813 Fuses.
- G. Section 264313 Surge Protection Devices for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits.

# 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA Standard of Installation (published by the National Electrical Contractors Association).
- B. NEMA AB1 Molded Case Circuit Breakers.
- C. NEMA ICS 2 Industrial Control Devices, Controllers and Assemblies.
- D. NEMA KS1 Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum).
- E. NEMA PB 1 Panelboards.
- F. NEMA PB 1.1 Instructions for Safe Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less.
- G. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, ratings, features, colors, and configurations.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage, main bus ampacity, integrated short circuit ampere rating, circuit breaker and fusible switch arrangement and sizes.
- D. Arrange panelboard branch circuit breakers as shown on the Drawings. Agreement of circuit breaker (pole) numbers with the Drawings panel schedules and floor plans is required in order to avoid confusion during construction, redrawing the circuitry for record drawing purposes and accurate documentation of the as-built conditions.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

# 1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of panelboards and record actual circuiting arrangements in project record documents.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include spare parts listing; source and current prices of replacement parts and supplies; and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

## 1.7 OUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

## 1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

## 1.9 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Contract Closeout. As required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Furnish two of each panelboard key.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. General Electric/ABB.
  - 3. Siemens.
  - 4. Square D Schneider.
  - 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA PB 1, circuit breaker type.
- C. Service Conditions:
  - 1. Temperature: 104° F. (40° C.).
  - 2. Altitude: N/A.
  - 3. Terminal Rating: 75° C. minimum.
- D. Panelboard Bus: Copper, ratings as indicated. Provide 100% copper ground and neutrals buses in each panelboard. Provide insulated ground bus where scheduled. Provide 200% copper neutral bus in each panelboard fed by a K rated transformer.
- E. Minimum integrated short circuit rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 208 volt panelboards, or as indicated.
- F. Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, bolt-on or plug-on (Square D I-Line and similar only) type.
  - 1. Circuit breakers in distribution panelboards shall be fully rated.
  - 2. Solid-state Trip Molded Case Main and Branch Circuit Breakers (where required by Coordination Study): Panel mounted, NEMA AB 1, with electronic sensing, timing and tripping circuits for adjustable current settings. Electronic trip units shall be provided with external, permanently-mounted power supplies in the gear where required to program trip units while the breakers are deenergized. Trip units shall be field-programmable with an internal display for programming and display and have:
    - a. Adjustable instantaneous trip.
    - b. Adjustable long time pickup and delay.
    - c. Adjustable short time pickup and delay.
    - d. Ground fault pickup and delay.
    - e. Arc flash reduction mode with external switch and indicator.
    - f. Include shunt trip, undervoltage release, and other accessories where indicated.
    - g. Display line currents and cause of trip.
  - 3. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: Circuit breakers with integral thermal and instantaneous magnetic trip in each pole.

- 4. Circuit Breaker Accessories: Trip units and auxiliary switches as indicated.
- G. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1, Type 4X, cabinet box.
- H. Cabinet Front: Surface cabinet with metal directory frame and lock all keyed alike.

## 2.2 BRANCH CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Eaton.
  - 2. ABB/General Electric.
  - Siemens.
  - 4. Schneider/Square D.
  - 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA PB1, circuit breaker type, lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboard.
- C. Service Conditions:
  - 1. Temperature: 104° F. (40° C.).
  - 2. Altitude: N/A.
  - 3. Terminal Rating: 75° C. minimum.
- A. Panelboard Bus: Copper, ratings as indicated. Provide 100% copper ground and neutrals buses in each panelboard. Provide 200% copper neutral bus where indicated. Provide insulated ground bus where scheduled. Provide 200% copper neutral bus in each panelboard fed by a K rated transformer.
- B. Minimum Integrated Short Circuit Rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 208 volt panelboards, or as indicated.
- C. Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, bolt-on type.
  - 1. Circuit breakers in appliance and branch circuit panelboards may be series rated.
  - 2. Solid-state Trip Molded Case Main and Branch Circuit Breakers (where required by Coordination Study): Panel mounted, NEMA AB 1, with electronic sensing, timing and tripping circuits for adjustable current settings. Electronic trip units shall be provided with external, permanently-mounted power supplies in the gear where required to program trip units while the breakers are deenergized. Trip units shall be field-programmable with an internal display for programming and display and have:
    - a. Adjustable instantaneous trip.
    - b. Adjustable long time pickup and delay.
    - c. Adjustable short time pickup and delay.
    - d. Ground fault pickup and delay.
    - e. Arc flash reduction mode with external switch and indicator.
    - f. Include shunt trip, undervoltage release, and other accessories where indicated.
    - g. Display line currents and cause of trip.
  - 3. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic trip circuit breakers, with common trip handle for all poles, listed as Type SWD for lighting circuits, Type

HACR for air conditioning equipment circuits, Class A ground fault interrupter circuit breakers where scheduled. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.

- D. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1, Type 4X.
- E. Cabinet Box: 6 inches deep, 20 inches wide for 240 volt and less panelboards.
- F. Cabinet Front: Surface cabinet with metal directory frame and lock all keyed alike.

## PART 2 EXECUTION

#### 2.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards in accordance with NEMA PB 1.1 and the NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install panelboards plumb.
- C. Panelboards shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- D. Height: 6 feet to top of panelboard; install panelboards taller than 6 feet with bottom no more than 4 inches above floor.
- E. Provide filler plates for unused spaces in panelboards.
- F. Provide typed circuit directory for each branch circuit panelboard. Final typed panelboard directories installed in the panelboard door pocket shall include final actual room names and numbers in addition to the general description shown on the panel schedules on the drawings. Revise directory to reflect circuiting changes required to balance phase loads.
- G. Provide engraved plastic nameplates under the provisions of Section 260553.
- H. Ground and bond panelboard enclosure according to Section 260526.

## 2.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Quality Control: Field inspection, testing and adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

## 2.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Cleaning: Vacuum dirt and debris from panelboard tubs; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

C. Measure steady state load currents at each panelboard feeder; rearrange circuits in the panelboard to balance the phase loads to within 20 percent of each other. Maintain proper phasing for multi-wire branch circuits.

END OF SECTION 262416

## SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- Wall switches.
- B. Receptacles.
- C. Plates.

## 1.2 DESCRIPTION

Provide wiring devices in types, characteristics, grades, colors and electrical ratings for applications indicated which are third party testing agency listed and which comply with NEMA WD 1 and other applicable third party testing agency, NEMA and DSCC (Fed Spec) standards. All devices shall be produced by the same manufacturer.

## 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.

## 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. NECA Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA WD 1 General Requirements for Wiring Devices.
- C. NEMA WD 6 Wiring Device Dimensional Requirements.
- D. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
- E. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 498.
- F. DSCC (Fed Spec) W-C-596G.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

## 1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

# 1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Model 1221/2/3/4 Series.
  - 2. Leviton 1221/2/3/4.
  - 3. Pass and Seymour PS20AC1/2/3/4.
  - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency listed, DSCC, heavy-duty, AC only, general-use, grounding type, back and side wired, single pole, three-way and four-way as indicated, snap switch with hex-head equipment grounding screw. Switches shall have a steel, nickel plated bridge with integral ground, one piece rivetless copper alloy spring contact arm and terminal plate and large silver cadmium oxide contacts. All switches shall have quiet operating mechanisms without the use of mercury switches. All switches shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated.
- C. Body and Handle: Gray plastic with toggle handle.
- D. Indicator Light: Neon lighted handle type switch; red color handle. Voltage per system rating.
- E. Locator Light: Neon lighted handle type switch; green color handle. Voltage per system rating.
- F. Ratings:
  - 1. Voltage: 120-277 volts AC.
  - 2. Current: 20 amperes.

## 2.2 RECEPTACLES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Model HBL 5362.

- 2. Leviton 5362.
- 3. Pass and Seymour 5362A.
- 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency, DSCC, heavy-duty, 20 ampere, 120 volt, general use, [hospital grade], duplex, straight blade, grounding type receptacle arranged for back and side wiring, with separate single or double grounding terminals. Receptacles shall have a full wrap around brass bridge with integral ground and standup double wipe contacts. Self grounding or automatic type grounding receptacles are not acceptable in lieu of receptacles with separate grounding screw lugs and a direct, green insulated conductor connection to the equipment grounding system.
- C. Device Face and Body: Gray nylon or reinforced thermoplastic.
- D. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, type as specified and indicated.
- E. Convenience Receptacle: Type 5-20R.

# 2.3 GROUND FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTERS (GFI)

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Model GFRWRST20.
  - 2. Leviton GFWT2.
  - 3. Pass and Seymour 2097TRWR.
  - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency, DSCC, heavy-duty, 20 ampere, 120 volt, general use, duplex, straight blade, grounding type receptacle arranged for back and side wiring, with separate single or double grounding terminals. Receptacles shall have a full wrap around brass bridge with integral ground and standup double wipe contacts. Self grounding or automatic type grounding receptacles are not acceptable in lieu of receptacles with separate grounding screw lugs and a direct, green insulated conductor connection to the equipment grounding system.
- C. Device Face and Body: Gray nylon or reinforced thermoplastic.
- D. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, type as specified and indicated.
- E. Convenience Receptacle: Type 5-20R.

#### 2.4 WALL PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell.
  - 2. Leviton.
  - 3. Pass and Seymour.
  - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Cover Plate: Single and combination, of types, sizes and with ganging and cutouts as indicated.

C. Weatherproof Cover Plate: Exterior mounted receptacles, and those noted to be weatherproof, shall be provided with weatherproof PVC transparent cover plates, standard size, and shall be single or ganged as indicated on the contract drawings. Weatherproof plates shall be "approved" third party listed as "raintight while in use".

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Ensure that outlet boxes are installed at proper height.
- B. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean debris from outlet boxes.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- B. Install devices vertically, plumb and level.
- C. Install switches with OFF position down.
- D. Install receptacles with grounding pole on top. Install horizontally oriented receptacles with the grounding pole on the left.
- E. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- F. Connect switches by wrapping conductor around screw terminal.
- G. Connect receptacles by utilizing back wiring provisions only. Do not use side wire terminals.
- H. Use cast box covers and plates on cast boxes.
- I. Provide adhesive backed, laminated plastic receptacle device plate labels identifying the circuit feeding the device. Labels shall be label machine printed to indicate panel and circuit number and shall be Casio, Brother, T&B or approved equal. See Section 260553 for additional requirements

## 3.4 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260534 to obtain mounting heights specified and indicated on drawings.
- B. All wiring devices shall be installed at heights as required by the ADA
- C. Install wall switch 48 inches above finished floor, measured to top of device plate.

- D. Install convenience receptacle 18 inches above finished floor, measured to bottom of device plate, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- E. Install convenience receptacle horizontally 6 inches above backsplash of counter, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- F. Install telecommunications jack 18 inches (450 mm) above finished floor, measured to bottom of device plate, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- G. Install telephone jack for side-reach wall telephone to position top of telephone at 54 inches (1.4 m) above finished floor, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- H. Install telephone jack for forward-reach wall telephone to position top of telephone at 48 (1.2 m) above finished floor, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.

# 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control. As required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- C. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized and verify proper operation.
- D. Verify that each receptacle device is energized.
- E. Test each receptacle device for correct polarity and for ground continuity.
- F. Test each GFCI receptacle device for correct operation.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

## 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces to remove splatters and restore finish.

# END OF SECTION 262726

## SECTION 262727 - OCCUPANCY SENSORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

Wall box and ceiling type occupancy sensors and accessories.

## 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.
- C. Section 262726 Wiring Devices.
- D. Section 260526 Grounding.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA WD 1 General Requirements for Wiring Devices.
- C. NEMA WD 6 Wiring Device -- Dimensional Requirements.
- D. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, ratings and configurations.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

## 1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

# 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL

- A. The Occupancy Sensor system shall sense the presence of human activity within the spaces indicated and fully control the "On" / "Off" function of the lighting loads automatically. Sensors shall turn "On" the load upon entrance into the room and shall not initiate "On" outside of entrance.
- B. Acceptable technology is Passive Infrared (PIR), Ultrasonic and Microphonic. Dual Technology is required utilizing PIR and one of the other technologies.
- C. Sensors shall automatically adjust time delays and sensitivity based on the activity level in the space.
- D. All line voltage devices shall be approved third party testing agency listed under Energy Management Equipment, or Industrial Control Equipment. Listing under Appliance Control shall not be accepted.
- E. Product shall be manufactured in the USA and be warranted for 5 years.

## 2.2 WALL BOX LINE VOLTAGE SENSORS FOR SMALL AREAS

- A. Description: Line voltage, single gang, wall mounted occupancy sensor switch with one override or two (as shown) switch(es). Switch shall recess into single gang switch box and fit a standard GFI receptacle plate opening. Switches shall be compatible with standard three and four-way toggle switches. All switches shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated. Provide hard lens switches in storage rooms and other location subject to abuse.
- B. Manufacturers
  - 1. Lutron.
  - 2. Sensor Switch.
  - 3. Wattstopper.
  - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- C. Body and Handle: Match device colors specified in Section 262726.
- D. Ratings:

Voltage: 120-277 volts AC.

Minimum Load Rating: 800 watts at 120 VAC, 1200 watts at 277 VAC. Sensors shall be compatible with all load types, including electronic LED drivers and require no minimum load.

# 2.3 CEILING MOUNTED LOW VOLTAGE SENSORS FOR LARGE AREAS

A. Sensor Switches: Low voltage, recess ceiling mounted occupancy sensor switch. Sensors shall be adjustable to accommodate the room geometry as shown or the contractor shall provide multiple sensors as required for complete coverage. The device shall operate in conjunction with a line voltage power pack to control the connected lighting loads. Sensors shall operate on a Class 2, three-conductor system. Multiple sensors shall be connectable to a single power pack. Sensor shall recess into a two gang outlet box. All devices shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated.

## Manufacturers:

- 1. Lutron.
- 2. Sensor Switch.
- 3. Wattstopper.
- 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Control units/Power packs: Devices shall be rated 20A at 120-277 volts and shall be compatible with all load types, including LED. They shall have the capacity to power additional remote heads or additional relays. Control relays may be paralleled to accommodate extra load or more than three heads or additional relays. Additional relay shall be used where there is more than one circuit being controlled or where there is a need to control multiple voltages.

#### Manufacturers:

- 1. Lutron.
- 2. Sensor Switch.
- 3. Wattstopper.
- 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- C. Sensor Body: White plastic, or match device colors specified in Section 262726.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Ensure that outlet boxes are installed at the proper location.
- B. Ensure that ceiling openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by devices.
- C. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

Clean debris from outlet boxes.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install in locations in accordance with manufacturers recommendation.
- C. Install devices vertically, plumb and level.
- D. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.

## 3.4 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260534 to obtain mounting heights specified and indicated on drawings.
- B. All wiring devices shall be installed at heights as required by the A.D.A.
- C. Install wall switch 48 inches (1.2 m) above finished floor, measured to bottom of outlet box.

# 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control. As required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- C. Operate each system with circuit energized and verify proper operation.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

#### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces to remove splatters and restore finish.

# END OF SECTION 262727

## SECTION 262813 - FUSES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fuses.

## 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 262816 Enclosed Switches.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NFPA 70 National Electric Code.
- B. NEMA FU 1 Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide data sheets showing electrical characteristics including time-current curves.

## 1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual fuse sizes.

## 1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

## 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.

FUSES 262813 - 1

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide no less than 10% of each fuse size and type installed, with a minimum of at least one set of three of each.
- B. Provide one fuse puller.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 FUSE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dimensions and Performance: NEMA FU 1, Class as specified or indicated.
- B. Voltage: Provide fuses with voltage rating suitable for circuit phase-to-phase voltage.
- C. Third party testing agency Listed.

	<u>Circuit Type</u>	Fuse type
1.	Service Entrance and Feeder Circuits over 600Amp	Class L
	200K Amp interrupting rating.	
2.	Service Entrance and Feeder Circuits 600Amp or less	Class RK1 or J
	200K Amp interrupting rating.	
3.	Motor, Motor Controller and Transformer Circuits	RK5
	200K Amp interrupting rating.	

- D. For individual equipment where fault current does not exceed 50KA use Class K5 fuses with 50KA interrupting rating.
- E. Fusible safety switches with short-circuit withstand ratings of 100KA or 200KA require Class R or Class J rejection fuse block feature.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install fuse with label oriented such that manufacturer, type, and size are easily read.

## END OF SECTION 262813

FUSES 262813 - 2

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fusible switches.
- B. Nonfusible switches.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260529 Supporting Devices.
- D. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.
- E. Section 262813 Fuses.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA Standard of Installation (published by the National Electrical Contractors Association).
- B. NEMA FU1 Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses.
- C. NEMA KS1 Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum).
- D. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide switch ratings and enclosure dimensions.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of enclosed switches in project record documents.

# 1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

# 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. ABB/General Electric.
- B. Eaton.
- C. Siemens.
- D. Schneider/Square D.
- E. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

#### 2.2 RATINGS

- A. Service Conditions:
  - 1. Temperature: 104°F. (40°C.).
  - 2. Altitude: N/A.
  - 3. Terminal Rating: 75°C. minimum.
- B. Minimum Integrated Short Circuit Rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical, or as indicated.

#### 2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty type with externally operable handle interlocked (defeatable) to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position, enclosed load interrupter knife switch. Mechanisms shall be non-teasible, positive, quick make-quick break type. Handle lockable in ON or OFF position. Switches shall have handles whose positions are easily recognizable in the ON or OFF position.
- B. Fuse clips: Designed to accommodate NEMA FU1, Class R fuses.
- C. Provide accessories required by their installation. Provide auxiliary switch contacts as required by other systems. Coordinate with other Divisions as required.

## 2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCH ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty type with externally operable handle interlocked (defeatable) to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position, enclosed load interrupter knife switch. Mechanisms shall be non-teasible, positive, quick make-quick break type. Handle lockable in ON or OFF position. Switches shall have handles whose positions are easily recognizable in the ON or OFF position.

ENCLOSED SWITCHES

B. Provide accessories required by their installation. Provide auxiliary switch contacts as required by other systems. Coordinate with other Divisions as required.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide neutral assemblies and equipment grounding kits as required.
- B. For safety switches installed in elevator controller feeders, provide electrical interlock kit(s) with sufficient contacts for elevator control interlock as required by the elevator vendor.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Fabrication: NEMA KS 1.
  - 1. Interior Dry Locations: Type 4X.
  - 2. Exterior Locations: Type 4X.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- B. Switches shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- C. Install fuses in fusible disconnect switches serving Division 26 equipment.
- D. Apply adhesive tag on inside door of each fused switch indicating NEMA fuse class and size installed.

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Quality Control: Field inspection, testing and adjusting as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

# END OF SECTION 262816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES

#### SECTION 263213 - DIESEL ENGINE GENERATORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged diesel engine generators for emergency use with the following features:
  - 1. Diesel engine.
  - 2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
  - 3. Control and monitoring.
  - 4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
  - 5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
  - 6. Outdoor engine generator enclosure and access stairs and platforms, if required.
  - 7. Vibration isolation devices.
  - 8. Finishes.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches, including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation, from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.
- B. EPS: Emergency power supply.
- C. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

# 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
  - 3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
  - 4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
  - 5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
  - 6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F. Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
  - 7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

# B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include dimensioned plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
- 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- 3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
- 4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
- 5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and supported equipment. Include base weights.
- 6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.
- 7. Sizing report indicating generator and alternator starting KVA and running KW sizing for simultaneous starting and continuous operation of all loads indicated in the "Load Summary Generator" and generator panel schedule(s) on the Drawings and showing compliance with requirements of this specification. See Para. 2.3 E.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for engine generator, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails, identify center of gravity and total weight, including full fuel tank, supplied enclosure, external silencer, subbase-mounted fuel tank, and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine generator, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
  - 2. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
  - 3. Report of sound generation.
  - 4. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
  - 5. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
    - b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
    - c. Training plan.
    - d. Provide three (3) bound copies, or as agreed to by Architect/Engineer.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
  - 2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
  - 3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
  - 4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than four hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
  - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for vibration isolators and seismic restraints of engine skid mounts, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 200 miles (321 km) of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. <u>Manufacturers:</u> Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. <u>Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division</u>.
  - 2. <u>Cummins Power Generation</u>.
  - 3. MTU Onsite Energy Corporation.
  - 4. Or approved equal
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 37.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
  - 3. Comply with NFPA 110 Level 1 EPSS
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- C. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- D. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F.
  - 2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 100 percent.
  - 3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

## 2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- C. Overload Capacity: 110 percent of service load for 1 hour in 12 consecutive hours.
- D. Load Factor: 85 percent of service load in an average of 24 hours.
- E. Service Load: kVA or KW as indicated on the drawings. Note the size stated on the Drawings is estimated. The Contractor shall provide an engine-generator set capable of simultaneous starting and continuous operation without set overload, including no greater than a twenty (20) percent voltage dip for all generator loads except the fire pump and no greater than a fifteen (15) percent voltage dip for fire pump operation, of the loads shown in the panel schedules on the Drawings.
- F. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.
- G. Frequency: 60 Hz
- H. Voltage: 208/120 V ac.
- I. Phase: Three-phase, four-wire wye.
- J. Induction Method: Turbocharged or naturally aspirated.
- K. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- L. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
  - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.

## M. Capacities and Characteristics:

- 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
- 2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

## N. Engine Generator Performance:

- 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.
- 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
- 3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
- 4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.

- 5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
- 6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
- 7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
- 8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.
- 9. Start Time: 10 seconds.

## 2.4 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D 975 diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.
  - 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
  - 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
  - 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system.
- E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
  - 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  - 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant, from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
  - 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant-system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
  - 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  - 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
    - a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 220 deg F, and noncollapsible under vacuum.
    - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

- F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
  - 1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
  - 2. Sound level measured at a distance of 23 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.
  - 3. Muffler/Silencer and all exhaust piping must be stainless steel.
- G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- H. Starting System: 24 V electric, with negative ground.
  - 1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle, with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
  - 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
  - 4. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range of project to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
  - 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
  - 6. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
  - 7. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, temperature compensating and float-. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
    - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg F to 140 deg F to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures, remote temperature sensor shall be located within 12" of top of battery.
    - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
    - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
    - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1 wall-mounted cabinet.

## 2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

A. Comply with NFPA 37.

- B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel. Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
  - 1. Tank level indicator.
  - 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 750 gallons.
  - 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
  - 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
  - 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic-Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- B. Comply with NEC 700.10:
  - 1. Engine start control and monitoring shall provide continuous monitoring of the entire remote start circuit.
  - 2. Visual and audible annunciation of generator malfunction shall be initiated if the integrity of the start circuit is compromised.
  - 3. There shall be minimum time delay (less than 5 seconds) in annunciation of any compromised condition such as an open or short circuit.
  - 4. A system which annunciates compromised conditions only after a generator start signal is initiated via a redundant path does not meet the intent of this specification.
- C. Manual-Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts engine generator. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

  Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- D. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes (30 minutes for NFPA 110 compliance), with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.
- E. Comply with UL 508A.

- F. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- G. Control and Monitoring Panel:
  - 1. Digital controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
  - 2. Instruments Display: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
    - a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
    - b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
    - c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
    - d. Running-time meter.
    - e. AC voltmeter, for each phase.
    - f. AC ammeter, for each phase.
    - g. AC frequency meter.
    - h. Generator-voltage-adjusting rheostat.
  - 3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110, including the following:
    - a. Cranking control equipment.
    - b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
    - c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
    - d. Overcrank alarm.
    - e. Overcrank shutdown device.
    - f. Low water temperature alarm.
    - g. High engine temperature pre-alarm.
    - h. High engine temperature.
    - i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
    - i. Overspeed alarm.
    - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
    - 1. Low-fuel main tank.
      - 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for the duration required.
    - m. Coolant low-level alarm.
    - n. Load indicator.
    - o. Battery high-voltage alarm.
    - p. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
    - q. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
    - r. Battery low-voltage alarm.
    - s. Lamp test.
    - t. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
- H. Connection to Datalink:

- 1. A separate terminal block, factory wired Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
- 2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via Ethernet.
- I. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- J. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

#### 2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Overcurrent protective devices shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and generator as the voltage source.
- B. Generator Circuit Breakers: Molded-case, LSI electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489, each circuit breaker in a separate enclosure. Controller based breaker control shall not be permitted.
  - 1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
  - 2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
  - 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
  - 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
- C. Load Bank Circuit Breaker: Provide a second circuit breaker meeting above requirements and size that will be utilized for load testing the generator with portable load bank. Load bank circuit breaker shall be provided with 4/0 AWG type PPE cable sufficient for breaker load and female CAM-LOK devices with protective caps. Cable shall be of sufficient length to mount strain relief and entire CAM-LOK device outside breaker enclosure to allow connection of Male CAM-LOK.
- D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.
  - 1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.
  - 2. Trip generator protective device on ground fault.

# 2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- F. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
  - 1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
- I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

### 2.9 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof stainless steel housing, wind resistant up to 150 mph. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.
- B. Sound Level: The enclosure shall meet 75 dBA at 23 feet.
- C. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.
- D. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
  - 1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
- E. Interior Lights with Switch: Provide weather-resistant DC & AC powered LED lighting with 30-fc (330-lx) average maintained. They shall be Factory-wired, vapor-proof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.
  - 1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
  - 2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.

## 2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and stainless-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 1. Material: Neoprene separated by stainless stainless steel shims.
  - 2. Minimum Deflection: 1", verify with structural or seismic engineer.
- B. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

#### 2.11 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

## 2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
  - 1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
  - 1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
  - 2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
  - 3. Full-load run.
  - 4. Maximum power.
  - 5. Voltage regulation.
  - 6. Transient and steady-state governing.
  - 7. Single-step load pickup.
  - 8. Safety shutdown.
  - 9. At owner's discretion, provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
  - 10. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.

- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two working days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete base.
  - 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- C. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- D. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 stainless steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.
- E. Fuel Piping:
  - 1. Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.
- F. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

#### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine generator with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

- E. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.
- H. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

#### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location, if generator is not installed as a separately derived system.

# 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Load Bank Test:
  - 2. Provide a full load test utilizing a portable test bank for four hours minimum for each engine-generator set. Each test shall be performed at the job site in the presence of the Owner and Architect. Each test shall include one hour at 50% load, one hour at 75% load and two hours at 100% load. Upon completion of the load test, the generators shall be shut down after the cool down period. The generators shall then be started and immediately upon reaching rated rpm, 100% load shall be applied to demonstrate one step full load capability. The capability of the system to pick up full standby service load within 10 seconds of power outage shall also be demonstrated. After testing is complete:
    - a. A copy of the generators test report shall be submitted to the Engineer of Record and the Owner.
    - b. Test results shall record the following parameters in 15 minute intervals during four hour test:
      - 1) Kilowatts.
      - 2) Amperes.
      - 3) Voltage.
      - 4) Coolant temperature.
      - 5) Room temperature.
      - 6) Frequency.
      - 7) Oil pressure.
      - 8) Fuel flow.
  - 3. Building Loads Test: Following the load bank test, start the buildings load test. Simulate power outage, including operation of the switchgear, automatic starting cycle, and automatic shutdown and return to normal, by interrupting normal source, and demonstrate

that system operates with actual building loads to provide standby power. Test all alarm and shutdown circuits by simulating conditions. Test duration shall be one hour minimum.

- 4. The contractor shall coordinate demonstration and training with the switchgear vendor to provide comprehensive system demonstration and training.
- 5. A full tank of fuel shall be provided, replacing any fuel used for testing. Diesel fuel shall be treated with and alcohol-free additive to disperse water and clean injectors.
- 6. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and in "Visual and Mechanical Inspection" and "Electrical and Mechanical Tests" subparagraphs below, as specified in the NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
    - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
    - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
  - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
    - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
      - a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp, 150 kW: Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
    - 2) Test protective relay devices.
    - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
    - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
    - 5) Conduct performance test according to NFPA 110.
    - 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
- 7. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
  - c. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
  - d. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
  - e. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
  - f. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
- 8. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
- 9. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
- 10. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
- 11. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.

- C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches, and run them concurrently.
- D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
- E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
- G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.
- J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component, indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- K. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels, so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.7 TRAINING

A. Prior to final acceptance, the manufacturer's authorized representative shall provide comprehensive training and thoroughly and competently instruct the Owner's designated personnel in proper operation of the system and in all required periodic maintenance. Training shall include, but not be limited to, operation (all aspects including normal and emergency modes), maintenance and troubleshooting of the equipment. A minimum of eight (8) hours on site time, in addition to load bank testing, shall be allocated for this purpose.

### 3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as

recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

# 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 263213

#### SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes **automatic** transfer switches rated 600 V and less.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

# B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
- 2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
- 3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load.
- 4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, engine-generator set, etc.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for transfer switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

TRANSFER SWITCHES 263600 - 1

- 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
  - b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Member company of NETA.
    - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:
  - 1. Notify **Construction Manager** no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without **Construction Manager's** written permission.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: **Five years** from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 110.
- D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

TRANSFER SWITCHES 263600 - 2

- F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
  - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
  - 2. Short-time withstand capability for **30** cycles.
- G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- J. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- L. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable **with printed** markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated
  - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
  - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
  - 4. Accessible via **front** access.
- M. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, **Type 4X stainless steel**, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Shall be provided by the generator vendor as part of a package system.
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

- 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
- 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
- 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
- 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
- 5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
- 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
- 8. Ground bar.
- 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
  - 1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- F. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- G. Electric Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.
- H. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- I. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- J. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
  - 1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
  - 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal **and Alternate** Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
  - 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
  - 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.

TRANSFER SWITCHES 263600 - 4

- 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
- 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
- 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
  - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
  - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
- 8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
- 9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
- 10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
- 11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- 12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- 13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
  - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
  - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
  - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for **emergency** systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
    - a. Overvoltage.
    - b. Undervoltage.
    - c. Loss of supply voltage.
    - d. Reduction of supply voltage.

TRANSFER SWITCHES

- e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
- f. Temperature rise.
- g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
- h. Overload.
- i. Contact opening.
- i. Endurance.
- k. Short circuit.
- 1. Short-time current capability.
- m. Receptacle withstand capability.
- n. Insulating base and supports damage.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- C. Comply with NECA 1.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- G. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260500, Para. 1.22.
- H. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

TRANSFER SWITCHES

# 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
  - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
    - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
    - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
    - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
    - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
      - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
    - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
    - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
    - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
    - 1. Inspect control power transformers.
      - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
      - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.

### 3. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
- b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
- c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
- d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
- e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
- f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
- g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
  - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
  - 2) Engine start sequence.
  - 3) Time delay on transfer.

TRANSFER SWITCHES 263600 - 7

- 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
- 5) Automatic transfer operation.
- 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
- 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
- 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
- 4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
  - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
  - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
  - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
  - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
- 5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
  - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
  - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
  - c. Verify time-delay settings.
  - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
  - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
  - f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
  - g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cooldown and shutdown.
- 6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
  - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- E. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

TRANSFER SWITCHES

- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - 1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
  - 3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

#### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

**END OF SECTION 263600** 

TRANSFER SWITCHES

#### SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTION FOR ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Inominal (I<sub>N</sub>): Nominal discharge current.
- B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.
- C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection (L-N, L-G, L-N & L-L): The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.
- D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.
- E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.
- I. Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) e.g., UL, ETL, CSA, etc.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. SPD units and all components shall be designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with the following latest standards:
  - 1. ANSI/UL 1449 Standard for Safety, Surge Protective Devices, 5th Ed.
  - 2. ANSI/UL 1283 Standard for Safety, Electromagnetic Interference Filters, 5th Ed.
  - 3. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code
  - 4. NFPA 780 Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems
  - 5. UL 96A Standard for Safety, Installation Requirements for Lightning Protection Systems, 12th Ed.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's technical data sheet containing the following information for each product type:
  - a. Model/Catalog Number
  - b. Surge Current Rating (kA/phase and kA/mode)
  - c. System Voltage
  - d. SPD Type (1 or 2)
  - e. Nominal Discharge Current Rating (I<sub>N</sub>)
  - f. Modes of Protection (L-N, L-G, L-N, L-L)
  - g. Voltage Protection Rating (VPR)
  - h. OCPD Requirements
  - i. System Frequency
  - j. NEMA 250 Enclosure Type
  - k. Dimensions
  - 1. Weights
- B. A Copy of manufacturer's UL 1449 Category Code VZCA published data file showing the model/catalog number and UL assigned values for "b" through "h" above
- C. Provide verification that submitted SPDs comply with ANSI/UL 1449 Standard for Safety, Surge Protective Devices, 5th Edition in the form of the manufacturer's UL file number that can be verified on UL's website (www.ul.org), and/or a direct hyperlink to the manufacturer's UL 1449 Category Code VZCA file on the UL website
- D. Manufacturer's product(s) installation instructions and warranty statement

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer shall provide a ten (10) year warranty (15 year warranty with product registration) that covers replacement of the complete unit (including lightning) from the date of shipment against any SPD part failure when installed in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and any applicable national or local electrical code.

#### 1.8 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. For the equipment specified herein, the manufacturer shall be ISO 14001 and ISO 9001 or 9002 certified
- B. The SPD shall be compliant with the Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) Directive 2011/65/EU and have a visible label showing compliance.

C. The SPD shall be UL 1449 5th Ed Listed, with a Nominal Discharge Current (IN) rating of 20 kA, and shall be a Type 1 or Type 2 for use in UL 96A systems as required

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton Corporation
- B. Schneider/Square D
- C. Siemens

Note: The listing of specific manufacturers above does not imply acceptance of their products that do not meet the specified ratings, features and functions. Manufacturers listed above shall meet these specifications herein in their entirety. Products in compliance with the specification and manufactured by others not named herein shall be considered if pre-approved by the consulting/specifying engineer ten (10) days prior to bid date.

## 2.2 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Operating Voltage refer to drawings for SPD(s) operating voltage configuration.
- B. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV) the MCOV shall not be less than 115% of the nominal system operating voltage.
- C. The suppression system shall incorporate thermally-protected metal-oxide varistors (MOVs) as the core surge suppression component for all surge protective devices.
- D. The system shall not utilize silicon avalanche diodes (SADs) or selenium cells.
- E. SPD end-of- life mode to be a benign, open circuit event. Devices utilizing an end-of-life, (potentially violent) short-circuit failure mode shall not be accepted.
- F. The system shall not utilize spark-gap devices, or any components that can crowbar the system voltage leading to a complete system voltage loss to all connected, downstream loads.
- G. SPDs shall operate without the need for an external overcurrent protection device (OCPD), and must be UL Listed as such. SPDs must not require an external OCPD or an internal replaceable OCPD to enable the manufacturer to obtain their UL product Listing.
- H. Protection Modes The SPD must protect all modes of the electrical system being utilized. The required protection modes are indicated by bullets in the following table:

	PROTECTION MODES				
VOLTAGE CONFIGURATION TYPE	L-N	L-G	N-G	L-L	
WYE	•	•	•	•	
DELTA	N/A	•	N/A	•	
SINGLE (SPLIT) PHASE	•	•	•	•	
HIGH-LEG DELTA	•	•	•	•	

- I. Nominal Discharge Current (IN) – All SPDs applied to the distribution system shall have a 20 kA IN rating regardless of their SPD Type (includes Types 1 and 2) or operating voltage. SPDs having an In less than 20 kA shall be rejected.
- J. ANSI/UL 1449 5th Edition Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) shall not exceed the following:

			VOLTAGE CONFIGURATION		
K. Balanced		MODES OF PROTECTION	208Y/120	480Y/277	120/240
	L-N, L-G, N-G	700 V	1200 V	700 V	
		L-L	1200 V	2000 V	1200 V

Suppression Platform - The surge current shall be equally distributed to all MOV components to ensure equal stressing and maximum performance. The surge suppression platform must provide equal impedance paths to each matched MOV. Designs incorporating replaceable single-mode modules shall not be accepted.

- L. SPDs containing items such as single-mode replaceable modules, replaceable fuses, or replaceable batteries shall not be accepted. SPDs requiring user intervention to test the unit via a diagnostic test kit or similar device shall not be accepted.
- Electrical Noise Filter Each Type 2 SPD shall include a high-performance EMI/RFI noise M. rejection filter. Noise attenuation for electric line noise shall be up to 50 dB from 10 kHz to 100 MHz using the MIL-STD-220A insertion loss test method.
  - 1. Type 1 units shall not contain filtering or have a UL 1283 5th Edition Listing
  - 2. Type 2 units with filtering shall conform to UL 1283 5th Edition Listing
- N. Internal Connections - No plug-in single-mode modules or printed circuit boards shall be used as surge current conductors. All internal components shall be soldered, hardwired with connections utilizing low impedance conductors.
- Monitoring Diagnostics Each SPD shall provide the following integral monitoring options: O.
  - Protection Status Indicators Each unit shall have a green / red solid-state indicator light 1. that reports the status of the protection on each phase
    - For wye configured units, the indicator lights must report the status of all a. protection elements and circuitry in the L-N and L-G modes. Wye configured units shall also contain an additional green / red solid-state indicator light that reports the status of the protection elements and circuitry in the N-G mode. SPDs that indicate only the status of the L-N and L-G modes shall not be accepted.
    - The absence of a green light and the presence of a red light shall indicate that b. damage has occurred on the respective phase or mode. All protection status indicators must indicate the actual status of the protection on each phase or mode. If power is removed from any one phase, the indicator lights must continue to indicate the status of the protection on all other phases and protection modes. Diagnostics packages that simply indicate whether power is present on a particular phase shall not be accepted.

- 2. Form C dry-relay contacts (optional) The SPD must include Form C dry contacts (one NO and one NC) for remote annunciation of its status. Both the NO and NC contacts shall change state under any fault condition.
- 3. Audible Alarm and Silence Button (optional) The SPD shall contain an audible alarm that will be activated under any fault condition. There shall also be an audible alarm silence button used to silence the audible alarm after it has been activated.

## P. Thermally-Protected Metal-oxide Varistors (MOVs)

1. The unit shall contain thermally protected MOVs. These self-protected MOVs shall have a thermal protection element integrated with the MOV and a mechanical disconnect with arc quenching capabilities in order to achieve overcurrent protection of the MOV. The thermal protection assembly shall disconnect the MOV(s) from the system in a fail-safe manner should a condition occur that would cause them to enter a thermal runaway condition.

#### Q. Overcurrent Protection

1. The unit shall not require external overcurrent protection as part of the UL 1449 listing. Local electrical code may require overcurrent protection of the conductors connecting the SPD to the system. OCPD shall be sized based on local electrical code requirements.

#### T. Enclosures

- 1. All enclosed equipment shall have either NEMA 250 Type 4X (stainless steel) enclosures as suitable for locations indicated on the drawings and as described below:
  - a. NEMA 250 Type 4X (exterior locations, Interior locations) Constructed of 304 stainless steel providing the same level of protection as the NEMA 4 enclosure with the addition of corrosion protection

#### 2.3 SYSTEM APPLICATION

A. The SPD applications covered under this section include distribution and branch panel locations, MCC, switchgear, and switchboard assemblies. All SPDs shall be tested and demonstrate suitability for application within ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C, B, and A environments.

## 2.4 SERVICE ENTRANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Current Rating 320 kA/phase (160 kA/mode)
- B. Nominal Discharge Current Rating (I<sub>N</sub>) 20 kA
- C. SPD Type 1 or 2
- D. UL 1449 5th Edition Listed
- E. Short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449 5th Ed and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating and redundant suppression circuits; with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
- F. Power and protection status indicator LEDs
- G. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.

H. N/O, N/C Form C dry-relay contacts for remote potential monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

## 2.5 SUBPANEL/BRANCH PANEL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Current Rating 160 kA/phase (80 kA/mode)
- B. Nominal Discharge Current Rating (I<sub>N</sub>) 20 kA
- C. SPD Type 2
- D. UL 1449 5th Edition Listed
- E. Short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449 5th Ed and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating and redundant suppression circuits; with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
- F. Power and protection status indicator LEDs.
- G. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
- H. N/O, N/C Form C dry-relay contacts for potential remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

#### 2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.
- C. The Contractor shall install all equipment per the manufacturer's recommendations, applicable electrical codes and the contract drawings.
- D. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
- E. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

## 3.2 OUALITY CONTROL

- A. Standard factory tests shall be performed on the equipment under this section. All tests shall be in accordance with the latest version of UL, IEEE, and NEMA standards.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  - 1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
  - 2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
  - 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.
- C. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

## 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 264313

#### SECTION 265100 - INTERIOR LUMINAIRES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior luminaires and accessories.
- B. Drivers.
- C. Lamps and LED Light Engines/Sources.
- D. Luminaire accessories.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260533 Conduit.
- C. Section 260519 Building Wire and Cable.
- D. Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding.
- E. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA WD 6 Wiring Devices-Dimensional Requirements.
- B. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
- C. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- C. Product Data: Provide dimensions, ratings, and performance data.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

### 1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions for each product.

# 1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

## 1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Conform to requirements of NFPA 101.
- C. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LUMINAIRES

- A. Furnish Products as scheduled. Refer to relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections for substitutions and product options.
- B. All lighting fixtures shall be approved by third party testing agencies and NFPA and shall bear their label.
- C. All fixtures shall be listed on one or more of the following websites: LED Lighting Facts website (<a href="www.lightingfacts.com">www.lightingfacts.com</a> ), Energy Star website (<a href="www.energystar.gov">www.energystar.gov</a> ), or the Design Light Consortium website <a href="www.designlights.org">www.designlights.org</a>.
- D. All fixtures shall have a stock, or standard finish unless otherwise specified. Fixtures subject to corrosive or damp environments shall have corrosion resistant hardware and finishes.
- E. All fixtures shall be installed complete with lamps or LED sources as specified.
- F. Lighting fixture types shall be furnished as required by the Lighting Fixture Schedule as indicated on the drawings. Catalog numbers are provided as a guide to the design and quality of fixture desired. Equivalent designs and equal quality fixtures of other manufacturers listed will be acceptable upon approval of the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall verify from the contract drawings the type ceilings or walls the fixture is to be used with and shall provide compatible

mounting attachments and trim. Provide all accessories or additional materials required to maintain the ceiling fire rating as required by regulatory authorities.

G. Fixtures shall be warrantied for a minimum of five (5) years.

### 2.2 LED SOURCES

LED sources shall be high intensity white, single color or as noted. Provide white LEDs in the color temperature(s) specified. The color temperature in all lamps of the same type shall be consistent and remain so over the life of the lamp. Color consistency between lamps shall conform to ANSI NEMA ANSLG standard C78.377-2008. The contractor shall replace lamps/fixtures exhibiting inconsistent lamp color. Minimum lumen maintenance shall be 70% of rated initial lumen output at 50,000 hours of operation. Measurement of lumen maintenance shall be in accordance with IES LM-80-08. The lamp and/or luminaire manufacturer shall provide a minimum of five year warranty from the date of Final Acceptance against premature failure, discoloration and defects. The color or color temperature of replacement LED lamps shall match those of the same lamp types that remain in operation. The minimum color rendering index of white LEDs shall be 80. Electrical and photometric performance of LED assemblies and luminaires shall conform to IES LM 79-08.

#### 2.3 LED DRIVERS

LED Drivers: Provide high frequency electronic type with secondary voltages matching those required by the led source they operate. Drivers shall operate within a  $0^{\circ}F - 140^{\circ}F$  ambient temperature range and shall comply with FCC Class A Standards for EMI. Minimum driver specifications:

- 1. Power factor  $\geq 90\%$ .
- 2. Efficiency  $\geq 90\%$ .
- 3. Current crest factor 1.5 minimum.
- 4. Total harmonic distortion < 20%.
- 5. Rated life -50,000 hours.
- 6. For indoor and building mounted fixtures, provide minimum 2-kv surge suppression integral with the driver (5-kv preferred if available).
- 7. For outdoor fixtures, provide minimum 10.0-kv surge suppression integral with the driver.

Manufacturers shall have been manufacturing LED drivers for at least ten years with a documentable low failure rate. The contractor shall provide a written warranty against defects in material and workmanship, including replacement for five years from the date of final acceptance.

## 2.4 LENSES

Lenses shall be clear virgin acrylic material with uniform 3/16" square based female cone prisms aligned 45° to the length and width of the lens panel. Minimum prism depth shall be 0.080" with a nominal panel thickness of 0.156" and a minimum overall panel thickness of 0.150" to 0.160" inches.

#### 2.8 CONTROLS

A. Time Switch: Astronomic, two channel, electronic type with 48 hour capacitor or battery reserve, digital display, 30 ampere output contact rating, two, single pole output contacts, voltage compatible with load served, NEMA-1 enclosure.

B. Photocell: Weatherproof, enclosed, single pole, 1800 VA, 120VAC, twist lock plug-in type with base.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install suspended luminaires using pendants supported from swivel hangers. Provide pendant length required to suspend luminaire at indicated height.
- B. Install surface mounted luminaires and exit signs plumb and adjust to align with building lines and with each other. Secure to prevent movement.
- C. Install wall mounted luminaires, emergency lighting units and exit signs at height as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- E. Connect luminaires, emergency lighting units and exit signs to branch circuit outlets provided under Section 260534 using flexible conduit.
- F. Make wiring connections to branch circuit using building wire with insulation suitable for temperature conditions within luminaire.
- G. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- H. Install/provide specified lamps/LEDs in each emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and luminaire.

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Assurance: Field inspection, testing and adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection. Inspect for proper connection and operation.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Aim and adjust luminaires as directed.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean electrical parts to remove conductive and deleterious materials.

- C. Remove dirt and debris from enclosures.
- D. Clean photometric control surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Clean finishes and touch up damage.

# 3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contract Closeout: Demonstrate installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Demonstrate luminaire operation for minimum of two hours.

# 3.6 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Contract Closeout: Protect installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Relamp luminaires that have failed lamps at Substantial Completion. Replace LED modules in which more than 5% of the LEDs have failed lamps at Final Acceptance of the Work.

END OF SECTION 265100

#### SECTION 265200 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

Section includes emergency exit lighting and emergency egress lighting units.

## 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260533 Conduit.
- C. Section 260519 Building Wire and Cable.
- D. Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding.
- E. Section 260553 Electrical Identification.

## 1.3 STANDARDS

- A. UL 924
- B. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code.
- C. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
- D. North Carolina State Building Code including Energy Code Volume X.
- E. NEMA Standards

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- C. Product Data: Provide dimensions, ratings, and performance data.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of

use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions for each product.

## 1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

# 1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Conform to requirements of NFPA 101.
- C. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated. Products shall also meet or exceed the standards listed in Part 2.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL

- A. All lighting fixtures shall be listed as emergency lighting equipment and approved by third party testing agencies and NFPA and shall bear their label.
- B. All fixtures shall have a stock, or standard finish unless otherwise specified.
- C. All fixtures shall be completely self-contained, provided with maintenance free battery, automatic charger and other features. They shall be installed complete with lamps, batteries, etc. which shall be new and unused at time of final inspection of the project for acceptance.
- D. Lighting fixture types shall be furnished as required by the Lighting Fixture Schedule on the contract drawings and as herein specified. Catalog numbers are provided as a guide to the design and quality of fixture desired. Equivalent designs and equal quality fixtures of other manufacturers listed will be acceptable upon approval of the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall verify from the contract drawings the type of ceilings or walls the fixture is to be used with and shall provide compatible mounting attachments and trim. Provide all accessories or additional materials required to maintain the ceiling fire rating as required by regulatory authorities.
- E. Emergency lighting fixtures shall be as shown on the lighting fixture schedule on the contract drawings, and as herein specified.
- F. Warranty: The entire unit shall be warranted for three years. The battery must have a additional two more years pro-rated warranty. Warranty shall date from the date of final project acceptance

and be included in the contract document.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING (EGRESS) UNITS

- A. Product Description: Self-contained LED emergency lighting unit automatically activated when the line voltage drops below 80%.
- B. Battery: Ten year normal life expectancy, 6 or 12 volt, sealed, maintenance-free, lead calcium type, with 1.5 hour minimum capacity at full load. Battery shall be a high temperature type with an operating range of 0° C. to 60° C., contain a resealable pressure vent and sintered positive and negative terminals. A low voltage disconnect switch shall be included if a lead battery is used, to disconnect the battery from the load and prevent damage from a deep discharge during an extended power outage.
- C. Battery Charger: Automatic, solid state, full wave rectification, surge protected, current-limiting, dual-rate type, with filtered output of sufficient capacity to recharge discharged battery to full charge within twelve hours. Provide fused output circuit, low voltage battery disconnect, brownout and short circuit protection. Thermal protection shall sense circuitry temperature and adjust charge current to prevent overheating and charger failure. Thermal compensation shall adjust charger output to provide optimum charge voltage relative to ambient temperature. Regulated charge voltage shall maintain constant charge voltage over a wide range of line voltages. AC lockout circuit shall allow battery connection before AC power is applied and prevent battery damage due to deep discharge.
- D. Lamps: LED. Heads shall rotate for aiming. Maximum LED failure rate shall be 25% within a seven (7) year period; otherwise, if exceeded, manufacturer shall replace the complete unit at no charge to the Owner.
- E. Mounting: Surface wall or recessed ceiling as indicated by the drawings.
- F. Housing: White polycarbonate, with steel backbox/housing or steel with white finish. Wall mount unit with hinged faceplate and adjustable mounting hardware. Ceiling mount unit with T bar hangar kit.
- G. Self-Diagnostics: Electronics shall automatically, or manually upon demand, conduct self test on battery condition (including actual discharge), charger, lamps and internal wiring integrity per NEC and NFPA at prescribed intervals. A pilot light shall indicate the unit is connect to AC power. Provide test switch and visual indicator(s) of unit operational condition including charger status, ready and service code. Test switch shall simulate operation of the unit upon loss of AC power by energizing lamps from the battery, and also exercise the transfer relay.
- H. Electrical Connection: Conduit connection.
- I. Input Voltage: Dual voltage input (120/277 volts).

#### 2.3 EXIT LIGHTING UNITS

- A. Product Description: Self-contained exit lighting unit automatically activated when the line voltage drops below 80%.
- B. Battery: Ten year normal life expectancy, 6 or 12 volt, sealed, maintenance-free, lead calcium type,

with 1.5 hour minimum capacity. Battery shall be a high temperature type with an operating range of 0° C. to 60° C. and contain a resealable pressure vent and sintered positive and negative terminals. A low voltage disconnect switch shall be included if lead battery is used, to disconnect the battery from the load and prevent damage from a deep discharge during an extended power outage.

- C. Battery Charger: Automatic, solid state, surge protected, full wave rectification, current-limiting, dual-rate type, with filtered output of sufficient capacity to recharge discharged battery to full charge within twelve hours. Provide fused output circuit, low voltage battery disconnect, brownout and short circuit protection. Thermal protection shall sense circuitry temperature and adjust charge current to prevent overheating and charger failure. Thermal compensation shall adjust charger output to provide optimum charge voltage relative to ambient temperature. Regulated charge voltage shall maintain constant charge voltage over a wide range of line voltages. AC lockout circuit shall allow battery connection before AC power is applied and prevent battery damage due to deep discharge.
- D. Lamps: LED, discrete or diffuse. Maximum failure rate shall be 25% within a seven year period, otherwise, if exceeded the manufacturer shall replace the entire unit at no cost to the Owner.

#### E. Face:

- 1. Standard Unit: Single or dual face as indicated or required. Translucent plastic face with red letters on white background.
- 2. Architectural/Edge Lit Unit: Clear transparent plastic panel with red letters on clear or mirrored background.
- F. Directional Arrows: As indicated or universal type for field adjustment.
- G. Mounting: Universal, surface wall, back or end mount, or ceiling, top or pendant mount.
- H. Housing: White polycarbonate for standard unit, metallic enclosure with clear plexiglass signage panel for architectural/edge lit unit.
- I. Self-Diagnostics: Electronics shall automatically, or manually upon demand, conduct self test on battery condition (including actual discharge), charger, lamps and internal wiring integrity per NEC and NFPA at prescribed intervals. Provide test switch and visual indicator(s) of unit operational condition including charger status, ready and service code. Test switch shall simulate operation of the unit upon loss of AC power by energizing lamps from the battery. This simulation shall also exercise the transfer relay.
- J. Electrical Connection: Conduit connection.
- K. Input Voltage: Dual voltage input (120/277 volts).

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install suspended exit signs using pendants supported from swivel hangers. Provide pendant length required to suspend sign at indicated height.

- B. Install surface-mounted emergency lighting units and exit signs plumb and adjust to align with building lines and with each other. Secure to prevent movement.
- C. Install wall-mounted emergency lighting units and exit signs at height as indicated.
- D. Install accessories furnished with each emergency lighting unit and exit sign.
- E. Emergency and exit lighting fixtures shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Specifications Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- F. Connect emergency lighting units and exit signs to branch circuit outlets provided under this Division as indicated.
- G. Make wiring connections to branch circuit using building wire with insulation suitable for temperature conditions within unit.
- H. Install specified lamps in each emergency lighting unit.
- I. Ground and bond emergency lighting units and exit signs under the provisions of Section 260526.
- J. Locate exit and emergency lighting fixtures as indicated on reflected ceiling plan.
- K. Install recessed luminaires to permit removal from below.
- L. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Assurance: Field inspection, testing and adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection. Inspect for proper connection and operation.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Aim and adjust emergency lighting fixture heads to illuminate paths of egress.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean electrical parts to remove conductive and deleterious materials.
- C. Remove dirt and debris from enclosures.

- D. Clean photometric control surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Clean finishes and touch up damage.

#### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

A. Contract Closeout: Demonstrate installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

The Contractor shall perform a test on each unit after it is permanently installed and charged for a minimum of 24 hours. Battery shall be tested for 90 minutes, in accordance with NEC 700. The battery test shall be done 10 days prior to final inspection. Any unit which fails the test must be repaired or replaced, and tested again. A copy of the test report shall be presented at final inspection and included in the Owner's Operation and Maintenance Manual. Include starting voltage, ending voltage, and percent voltage drop in the test report. The Architect/Engineer will provide the testing form for contractor use.

B. Demonstrate normal luminaire operation for minimum of ninety minutes after the unit has been permanently installed and charged for a minimum of 24 hours. The battery run time test shall be completed a minimum of 10 days prior to final inspection by Architect. Any unit which fails the test shall be repaired or replaced, and tested again. A copy of the test report shall be sent to the Architect. The Architect/Engineer will provide the testing form for contractor use.

## 3.6 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Contract Closeout: Protect installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Relamp emergency lighting units and exit signs that have failed lamps at Substantial Completion. Replace exit signs in which more than 5% of the LEDs have failed lamps at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 265200

#### SECTION 270510 - TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Equipment and terminal backboards.
- B. Premises wiring raceways and outlets.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 260533 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260534 Boxes.

# 1.3 REFERENCES

NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

#### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Individual and combination telecommunications/data outlets shall be installed where shown on the contract drawings. Raceways shall be installed as straight as possible and shall contain not more than the equivalent of three quarter bends.

# 1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations and sizes of pathways and outlets.

# 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Telephone Utility: Field verify.
- B. Perform Work in accordance with telephone utility's rules and regulations.

# 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TELECOM TERMINATION BACKBOARDS

- A. Material: Grade A/C Fire retardant treated plywood.
- B. Size: 4 x 8 feet (1.2 x 2.4 m), 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick.

#### 2.2 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

Outlets shall consist of standard, square cornered boxes 4-11/16" wide by 4-11/16" high by 2-1/8" deep, minimum, flush mounted at the height indicated on the contract drawings. Provide a single gang plaster ring for the square cornered boxes 4-11/16" wide by 4-11/16" high by 2-1/8" deep.

#### 2.3 TELECOM WIRE AND CABLE

All telephone, data and fiber cable shall be furnished and installed by the owner.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Finish paint termination backboards with durable white enamel under the provisions of Division 9 prior to installation of equipment.
- B. Support raceways and backboards under the provisions of Section 260529.
- C. Install termination backboards plumb, and attach securely to building wall at each corner.
- D. Install #14 gauge steel or approved, 200 lb. nylon cord pull wire in each empty conduit run. The maximum bends between pull points shall be 180 degrees.
- E. The maximum distance between pull boxes shall be 100 feet.

# END OF SECTION 270510

#### SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
- 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
- 3. System smoke detectors.
- 4. Heat detectors.
- 5. Notification appliances.
- 6. Remote annunciator.
- 7. Addressable interface device.
- 8. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.

#### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Noncoded, addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

# 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
  - 3. Include battery-size calculations.
  - 4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.

- 5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 6. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.

# C. General Submittal Requirements:

- 1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
- 2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
  - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
  - b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III minimum.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For smoke and heat detectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the detector.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," deliver copies to architect and owner include the following:
  - 1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
  - 3. Record copy of site-specific software.
  - 4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:

- a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
- b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
- c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
- d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.
- 5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
- 6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.

# B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

- 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
- 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
- 3. Device address list.
- 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

# 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II technician.
- C. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 1.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
  - 1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Fire Lite Alarms; a Honeywell company.
  - 2. NOTIFIER; a Honeywell company.
  - 3. Silent Knight; a Honeywell company.

# 2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:
  - 1. Manual stations.
  - 2. Heat detectors.
  - Smoke detectors.
  - 4. Duct smoke detectors.
  - 5. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
  - 1. Continuously operate alarm-notification appliances.
  - 2. Identify alarm at the fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciator.
  - 3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
  - 4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
  - 5. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
  - 6. Record events in the system memory.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  - 1. Valve supervisory switch.
- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  - 1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
  - 2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
  - 3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
  - 4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
  - 5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
  - 6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
  - 7. Failure of battery charging.
  - 8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
- E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciator.

# 2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

- A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
  - 1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.
    - a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
    - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
  - 2. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.
- B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
  - 1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 3 line(s) of 80 characters, minimum.
  - 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.

## C. Circuits:

- 1. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.
  - a. Initiating Device Circuits: Style D.
  - b. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style Z.
  - c. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 6.
  - d. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
- D. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a pattern approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
- E. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
- F. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters and digital alarm radio transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
  - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- G. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

H. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

#### 2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
  - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.

# 2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
  - 1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
  - 2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
  - 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  - 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
  - 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  - 6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and poweron status.

# B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

- 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
- 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
  - 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.

- 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
- 4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
- 5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
- 6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting or Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
  - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F (88 deg C).
  - 1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting or Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
  - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

#### 2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
  - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
- C. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.

- D. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
- E. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.
  - 1. Rated Light Output:
    - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
  - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
  - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
  - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
  - 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

#### 2.8 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
  - 1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

# 2.9 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

# 2.10 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from firealarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report

telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
  - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
  - 2. Programming device.
  - 3. LED display.
  - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
  - 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
  - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
  - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
  - 3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
  - 4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
  - 5. Low battery.
  - 6. Abnormal test signal.
  - 7. Communication bus failure.
- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
  - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m).
  - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A in NFPA 72.
  - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 5 feet (1.5 m) from air-supply diffuser or returnair opening.

- 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture.
- D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.
- E. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- F. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- G. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.
- H. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling.
- I. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- J. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
- K. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
  - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet (1 m) from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.

#### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

# 3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

# 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    - a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
    - b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
  - 2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
  - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
- C. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- D. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- G. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 283111

# Part I DEFINITIONS, ABBREVIATIONS AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

When standards are referred to in this "design criteria document", the most recent revision shall be applicable. This document addresses the collection and transmission of wastewater, not the treatment of wastewater.

Pump stations, force mains, and all related appurtenances shall be manufactured, designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with accepted standards, good engineering practice, and in complete compliance with the most current state regulations as well as the NCDENR Minimum Design Criteria.

These standards apply to gravity collection sewers, pump stations, force mains, and appurtenances.

#### I. STANDARD DEFINITIONS

# a. DEFINITIONS

Wherever used in this Manual, the following terms shall have the meanings indicated which shall be applicable to both the singular and plural thereof. There are other terms used in this document, which are defined in the sections to which they apply.

- Applicant Entity which is financially responsible for the proposed sewer collection system construction or modification, and who shall maintain operational responsibility of said system unless fee simple title is granted to Pluris.
- Application Form or forms provided by NCDENR and completed by the Design Engineer and Applicant providing pertinent information regarding the design and the proposed construction or modification of sewer collection facilities. It includes all required associated documents.
- Approving Authority Authorized agent of Pluris, who shall be responsible for approving plans and granting service.
- Approved Plans Sewer system improvement plans, which have been reviewed by and received the approval of Pluris and/or the appropriate state and local agencies.
- Contract Documents The term "Contract Documents" shall refer to the project plans and specifications for sewer system improvements.
- Contractor The person, business, or corporation responsible for the performance of

sewer system construction work.

- Design Engineer Professional Engineer, licensed to practice in the state of North Carolina, responsible for performing the design and preparing the drawings and specifications for the proposed sewer collection system construction or modification(s), construction administration and certifying the completion of such construction or modification(s) in accordance with the approved plans, specifications, and permits. The design engineer has demonstrated special experience and knowledge regarding the design and operation of sewer improvements.
- Design Population The population figure obtained by multiplying the effective population figure by the proper factors for determining the design flow.
- Developer The person(s) or corporation(s) financially responsible for the design and construction of a development for which wastewater service by Pluris will be requested.
- Documents Any and all drawings, graphs, charts, calculations, compilations of data, writings, photographs, audio or video tape recordings, or other such records from which project pertinent information can be obtained, extracted, or translated in a usable form.
- Manual The term "Manual" shall refer to all applicable standards, specifications, standard details, and policies contained in or referenced by this document.
- NCDENR North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources.
- Permit (NCDENR Permit) Written document which is issued by NCDENR authorizing the construction or modification of sewer infrastructure.
- Permit Period Duration during which a NCDENR Permit is valid, commencing on the date of permit issuance by the Approving Authority, and unless suspended, modified or revoked for cause, shall be valid for the succeeding 12 months, or until work is complete, accepted and certified by the Design Engineer, whichever occurs first.
- Person Individuals, sole proprietorships, partnerships, limited liability corporations, corporations, professional associations, firms, joint ventures, businesses, institutions, municipal or other local government subdivisions, governmental agencies, or any other body corporate or political, for profit or non-profit.
- Pipe Trench The following terms are used in reference to excavation and backfill for pipes:

- Bedding That portion of the pipe support structure bounded by the Foundation or undisturbed trench bottom, the trench walls and the bottom of the pipe.
- Final Backfill That portion of the backfill lying above the Initial Backfill.
- Foundation That portion of the pipe support structure bounded by the undisturbed trench bottom, the trench walls, and the pipe Bedding.
- Haunching That portion of the pipe support structure bounded by the Bedding, the trench walls, the outside of the pipe and a horizontal plane having an elevation equal to that of the spring line of the pipe.
- Initial Backfill That portion of the backfill lying above the spring line (midline) of the pipe and below a horizontal plane having an elevation which is one (1) foot above the top of the pipe.
- Professional Engineer (PE) A person who has been duly licensed as a professional engineer by the North Carolina State Board of Examiners for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors, with experience and special knowledge concerning sewer improvements.
- Record Drawing— A complete set of drawings, consisting of one (I) hard copy, on bond paper and one (I) electronic copy, in PDF format, which can be printed out, but not modified and which shows actual installed or constructed conditions. Controlled location shall be based upon North American Datum of 1983 (NAD 83). Vertical control shall be based upon North American Vertical datum of 1988 unless no such control is available within 2,000' of the property, in which case the datum used in setting the control monument will be used
- Required Fee Fees levied by Pluris, as established in adoption of Pluris User Rates and Application Fee for construction observation, permit application, modification, or renewal, as well as administrative review.
- Service Lines Small pipelines (sewer lines six (6) inches or less) connecting homes and buildings to the collection system.
- Sewer Collection System The meaning as stated in North Carolina General Statute 143-213 (15) in its most current amended form.
- Standards Where this Manual makes a reference to published standards such as ASTM, ANSI, AWWA, etc., the latest revisions of such standard shall apply.

Sewer Service Area - Area designated as the franchise area by the North Carolina Public Utilities Commission (The land area within which sewer service is or will soon be available).

Pluris Sewer Collection System - Part or portion of the facilities owned by Pluris, which are used to collect and carry wastewater to the treatment works and ending at the sewer service lateral cleanout or other designated connection.

Pluris - Pluris, LLC

## 2. STANDARD ABBREVIATIONS

Several specific standards and practices are referenced in these minimum design criteria. The following acronyms and abbreviations shall be used when referring to these standards and practices for purpose of enhancing the clarity of this document:

## Α

AASHTO - American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials ABC - Aggregate Base Course ACI - American Concrete Institute
ANSI - American National Standards Institute API- American Petroleum Institute
ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials AWWA - American Water Works Association

D

DI - Ductile Iron

Ε

EA - Environmental Assessment

EEP - Environment Enhancement Program

EIS - Environmental Impact Statement

F

FEMA - Federal Emergency Management Agency FIRM - Flood Insurance Rate Map

# FONSI - Finding of No Significant Impact

# G

Gal/Person - Gallons per Person Gal/Unit - Gallons per Unit Gal/Acre - Gallons per Acre GPD - Gallons per Day GPM - Gallons per Minute

# Н

HDPE - High Density Polyethylene HI – Hydraulic Institute

ı

I/I - Inflow and Infiltration

## М

MGD - Million Gallons per Day

#### Ν

NC - North Carolina

NCAC - North Carolina Administrative Code

NCDA - North Carolina Department of Administration

NCDEH - North Carolina Division of Environmental Health

NCDENR - North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources

NCDOT - North Carolina Department of Transportation

NCDWQ - North Carolina Division of Water Quality

NEC - National Electric Code

NEMA - National Electric Manufacturer's Association

NFPA - National Fire Protection Association

NPDES - National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System

NPSHA - Net Positive Suction Head Available

NPSHR - Net Positive Suction Head Required

#### 0

OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration

#### P

```
PPI - Plastic Pipe Institute psi - Pounds
per square inch
psig - Pounds per square inch gauge PVC -
Polyvinylchloride
```

S

SF - Safety Factor

Т

TDH - Total Dynamic Head

U

UL - Underwriters Laboratories
USCE - United States Corps of Engineers

# 3. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

a. Sewer Permits –Prior to submitting the application to NCDENR, Pluris will need to issue a flow acceptance letter for the additional flow to systems owned, operated, and maintained by an entity other than Pluris. Pluris will review and approve all plans for the proposed sewer improvements, prior to submission to NCDENR for permitting. In the case of extensions that will be dedicated to Pluris, the Applicant will provide a completed application in the name of Pluris, LLC for the proposed work.

The following situations require approval and are permitted by the State (NCDENR-DWQ), regardless of ownership (in addition to Pluris approval):

- i. Outfalls into a basin where sewer service has not yet been provided;
- ii. Low pressure sewer systems or STEP systems;
- iii. Projects involving Environmental Assessments; and
- iv. Any collection system where a variance from State regulations is required.
- b. All Pluris, LLC Design Standards shall be incorporated and become an integral part of the Plans, Specifications, and Contract Documents submitted for review and approval. Deviations must be noted in writing and receive written approval from Pluris prior to final Contract Document approval.
- c. The Contract Documents shall insure that all structures, pavements, utilities, and other facilities, which may possibly be damaged as a result of project work, are replaced or repaired in a manner, which meets the approval of Pluris or any governing bodies having jurisdiction.

- d. No connection to, or alteration of any existing facilities owned or maintained by Pluris shall be permitted without the express permission of Pluris and, where required, the presence of Pluris's representative, except as directed by Pluris. Where a connection or alteration of any existing facilities is approved, the connection or alteration shall conform to the standards of this Design Manual for new installations.
- e. All sewer extensions to be operated and maintained by Pluris, in addition to any extensions not owned by Pluris, shall be designed and built in accordance with this Design Manual, and all applicable State and local regulations.

# 4. SUBMITTALS AND GUIDELINES

# a. REQUIRED COPIES OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS FOR PLURIS APPROVAL

The Design Engineer should submit to Pluris one

(1) set of Contract Documents, including pertinent calculations, plans sheets, specifications, all required supporting documentation such as but not limited to Watershed Classification Statements and Certificates of Public Convenience and shall have made application for applicable permits to NCDENR, and associated fees, for a preliminary review prior to submission of all Contract Documents necessary. These documents shall be presented in duplicate to Pluris as an entire submission package for review.

Pluris shall review such plans and make the appropriate notes and return the "redlined drawings" to the Engineer marked so that the necessary revisions can be made and the Contract Documents revised. Upon review by Pluris of the "red lines", Pluris may request to meet to discuss comments. All comments shall be addressed so as to comply or an explanation of reasons for not complying must be provided and approved by Pluris.

The submitted plans are to meet Pluris design requirements. If plans or specifications do not meet Pluris design requirements (unless a variance has been given and a copy of such variance included with submission), Pluris may elect to return the submittal package until such time, the plans and specifications meet Pluris design requirements. Any applicable review fees paid to Pluris are non-refundable and any applicable fees are required for each review submittal.

The revised plans, applicable permit applications, and fees, and other supporting documentation shall be submitted for the approval by Pluris and the appropriate state agencies, as appropriate.

# b. ENGINEERING DESIGN CALCULATIONS & REPORTS

All Contract Documents submitted to Pluris for approval shall be accompanied with the necessary design calculations as specified herein or requested by Pluris. The calculations and any reports prepared by the Design Engineer must be reviewed and approved by a Professional Engineer in responsible charge over the project and so indicated by sealing and signing the said documents.

All design calculations based on data not contained therein shall be referenced to the source. The calculations shall be submitted in duplicate, clearly referencing the project and presented in a neat, orderly, and logical procedure. All reports prepared by sub-consultants shall list the assumptions made in the report preparation.

# c. SEWER DESIGN CALCULATIONS

Sanitary sewer, force main, and pump station improvement calculations shall demonstrate adequate capacity to serve the entire contributing area. The calculations for the gravity mains shall be based on Manning's Formula, using a roughness ("n" factor) appropriate for the material in question. This "n factor" must be supported by published data from the manufacturer or other industry publication.

# 5. CONCEPTUAL PHASE

# a. GENERAL

The Engineer and Developer shall become familiar with the sewer improvement policies of Pluris prior to making conceptual plans for developments, which will require sewer service.

# b. INITIAL CONFERENCE

Prior to finalizing any plans for sewer collection system improvements, the Developer or his Engineer shall consult with Pluris' Authroized Agent to determine if an initial conference will be necessary prior to the submission of plans for approval. If the scope of the proposed development is such that an initial conference will be beneficial prior to the development of final plans and specifications ("Final - Not Released for Construction"), the Developer will request scheduling of an initial conference. The Developer shall present the following:

i. Conceptual Plans: Submit two (2) copies of conceptual subdivision plans or site plans at a scale of I inch equals 200 feet (or larger scale) showing the proposed layout of the sewer extensions. The conceptual plans should show

# Pluris Standard Specifications

- all proposed pipelines and sizes, manholes, valves, and pump stations and the nearest existing sewer facilities to which the proposed new improvements will be located near or connect. All proposed easements shall be shown. Provide sketch of improvements and projected inverts within service area for sanitary sewer.
- ii. Design: Provide copies of preliminary engineering design calculations used to determine estimated wastewater demands used to size line and pump station requirements including expected initial and future populations to be served. The probable character of the wastewater generated should be provided.
- iii. Estimated Time Schedules: Submit an estimated time schedule identifying the expected dates of completion of the final plans and specifications and expected beginning and completion dates of construction.

# Part II GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

# 1. CLEARING

a. All clearing will follow the guidelines for erosion control per a NCDENR approved and permitted erosion control plan if one is required. Projects that do not require an approved plan will follow all industry standards for erosion control. All disturbed areas will be stabilized within 21 days of the end of work in that area. Stabilization of disturbed areas should follow the seeding guidelines set forth in Specification 3.

# 2. EXCAVATING, GRADING, TRENCHING, & BACKFILLING

#### b. General

i. The contractor shall furnish all labor, equipment, supplies and materials, and perform all operation in connection with the excavations, grading and backfilling, including borrow for drainage structures, curb and gutter, sidewalks, driveways, pavements, slopes, storm drains, water and sanitary sewer lines, including all hauling, wetting, rolling and other operations pertaining thereto within the clearing limits, complete, in strict accordance with this section of the specifications and all applicable NCDENR approved drawings, plans and permits.

# c. Existing Conditions

 Every reasonable effort should be made to provide accurate information on existing site conditions. The Contractor should become familiar with the site and satisfy himself as to the scope of the work involved and the materials to be encountered.

# d. References

- i. ASTM C33 Standard specification for concrete aggregates
- ii. ANSI/ASTM C136 Sieve analysis of fine and coarse aggregates.
- iii. ANSI/ASTM D698 Tests for moisture-density relations of soils and soil-aggregate mixture using 5.5 lb (2.49 kg) rammer and 12 inch (305 mm) drop.
- iv. ANSI/ASTM D1556 Density of soil in place by sand-cone method.
- v. ASTM D2487 Classification of soils for engineering purposes.

# e. Products - Soils

- i. General: Use soils free of organic matter, refuse, rocks and lumps greater than 4 inches in diameter and other deleterious matter.
  - Backfilling Materials: Suitable material, when used as backfill in paved areas, shall be capable of being compacted as specified in paragraph "Compaction and Testing" of this section of these specifications.

- a. Type I Material: Excavated material from the trench or materials from other sources which are free from large clods, roots or stones larger than I inch may be used as initial backfill in trenches.
- b. Type 2 Material: Excavated material from the trench or materials from other sources which are free from large clods, roots or stones larger than 8 inches may be used as final backfill in trenches (see Trench Details)
- ii. Classification: For the purpose of this specification, soils to be used as fill material are grouped into five classes according to soil properties and characteristics.
  - 1. Class I Angular, 6 to 40-mm (1/4 to I-1/2 in.), graded stone, including a number of fill materials that have regional significance such as coral, slag, cinders, crushed stone, crushed gravel, and crushed shells.
  - Class II Coarse sands and gravels with maximum practical size of 44 mm (I-I/2 in.), including variously graded sands and gravels containing small percentages of fines, generally granular and non-cohesive, either wet or dry. Soil Types GW, GP, SW, and SP are included in this class.
  - 3. Class III Fine sand and clayey gravels, including fine sands, sand-clay mixtures, and gravel-clay mixtures. Soil Types GM, GC, SM, and SC are included in this class.
  - 4. Class IV Silt, silty clays, and clays, including inorganic clays and silts of low to high plasticity and liquid limits. Soil Types MH, ML, CH, and CL are included in this class. These materials are not recommended for bedding, pipe haunching, or initial backfill.
  - 5. Class V This class includes the organic soil, OL, OH, PT as well as soils containing frozen earth, debris, rocks, larger than 40 mm (I-I/2 in.) in diameter, and other foreign materials. These materials are not recommended for bedding, pipe haunching or initial backfill.
- iii. Topsoil: Natural, friable soil free of subsoil, stumps, rocks larger than 2 inches in diameter, weeds and other material detrimental to plant growth.
- iv. Granular Fill: Granular fill under floor slabs shall be Class I material.
- v. Structural Fill: Fill material placed inside the line of the building foundation or slab shall be Class I or II.
- vi. Fill Beneath Pavement: Fill material used beneath pavement and for road shoulders shall be Class II or III.
- vii. General Fill: General fill material not otherwise specified shall be Class II or III.

#### Pluris Standard Specifications

- viii. Trench Backfill: Material used for bedding, pipe haunching and initial backfill shall be as specified hereinafter.
  - Crushed Stone: Crushed stone shall be size no. 57, washed stone. If fines
    are insufficient, stone screenings shall be added to extent required to
    stabilize it in the trench.
  - 2. Concrete: Concrete placed for cradles, thrust blocks, or encasement shall be 3000 psi 28 day concrete.

# 3. EXECUTION

#### f. General

i. Familiarization: Prior to commencement of the earthwork, become thoroughly familiar with the site, the site conditions, and all portions of the work specified in this Section.

# g. Surface Preparation

- i. Clearing: Areas designated for clearing and required for construction operations shall be cleared of trees, brush, structures and other materials. Trees which are to remain shall be protected during clearing operations and subsequent work.
- ii. Grubbing: Roots, stumps and other materials shall be grubbed from the cleared areas to a depth of at least 18 inches. Tree stumps shall be grubbed in their entirety, including tap roots where applicable.
- iii. Topsoil: Strip existing topsoil to a depth of 4 inches from areas to be excavated or graded. Stockpile the topsoil in a suitable area for use during final grading operations. Protect the topsoil from excessive erosion.
- iv. Unsuitable Material: Remove sod, muck or other unsuitable material to firm subsoil in areas designated for filling or grading operations.
- v. Disposal: Trees, stumps, roots, rubbish, unsuitable soil or other material resulting from surface preparation shall be removed from the site by the Contractor and disposed of.

#### h. Excess Water Control

- i. General: Grade and maintain all areas of the site to preclude surface runoff into excavations and prevent ponding of water.
- ii. Dewatering: Excavations should be kept free of surface water and/or groundwater. Provide and maintain at all times the necessary means and devices

- to prevent water from entering the excavations and for removing all water entering the excavations, at no additional cost to the owner.
- iii. Softened Subgrade: Remove all soil softened or eroded by the presence of water and replace with suitable backfill material.

# i. Excavation

- i. Excavation shall be accomplished in accordance with the grades and lines as established by the applicable plans and as required by the work to be performed. Excavation shall include the removal and replacement of all asphalt, concrete, curb, rock, earth, fences, trees (as directed by the Engineer of Record), shrubs, and other materials as applicable. The contractor will exercise care to prevent undercutting lower than the required subgrades. All materials from excavation, considered as suitable by the Engineer of Record, shall be used as fill wherever required, and the Contractor shall arrange his work so that this usage of excavated materials will be possible. Unsuitable and surplus materials from excavation, if any, shall be disposed of by the Contractor at this expense. All areas of the site shall be graded and maintained at all times to prevent surface runoff from draining into the excavations, and to prevent ponding of water therein.
- ii. Excavated materials not required for topsoil, fill or backfill shall be removed from the site of the work by the Contractor, but none shall be deposited on private property without written consent of the property owner.
- iii. Unsuitable Materials: Unsuitable materials encountered in an excavation shall be removed as directed by the Owner's representative, backfilled with suitable material and compacted. Unsuitable materials include organic soils, muck, soft and compressible silts and clays and running sands.
- iv. Undercutting: Undercutting, unless authorized by the Engineer of Record, shall be replaced and compacted, as specified in f. (Fill and Compaction), at the Contractor's expense. If the material, after excavation to subgrade, is found to be soft, spongy or pumping and thus unfit for use as subgrade, such unsuitable material shall be removed to a depth as directed by the Engineer of Record and the subgrade shall be brought to proper elevation by filling with suitable material from excavation or from an approved borrow site.
- v. Borrow: The Contractor will supply all borrow necessary and will provide all labor and equipment necessary to dig and haul such borrow. The placing of borrow shall be as provided for section f (Fill and Compaction).

# j. Preparation of Subgrade

i. General: Upon completion of site preparation and excavation, scarify to a depth of 12 inches and compact as specified. For areas to receive fill, the compacted subgrade shall be scarified to a depth of four inches prior to placing the fill.

## k. Fill and Compaction

- i. General: When and where existing plans and grades require the use of fill to reach the required elevation, the Contractor shall deposit suitable material from previously excavated areas. Such material shall be free from debris, roots, trash, stones, or other harmful substances, and shall be spread in successive layers of loose material not more than 8 inches in depth. Each layer shall be spread uniformly by motor grader or other approved device and rolled with an approved tamping or three-wheeled power roller until thoroughly compacted to 90 percent of maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content, as determined by the A.A.S.H.T.O. Standard Method T-180. When any portion of the fill is constructed on an old road bed, the existing surfaces shall be scarified and manipulated as directed by the Engineer of Record in order that, when compacted, it shall have a uniform density, as specified above. Fills shall be shaped and maintained at all times during their construction to prevent an accumulation of standing water in the event of rain.
- ii. Moisture Conditioning: Moisten or aerate the subgrade and fill material as required to obtain proper compaction.
- iii. Structural Fill: Compact the subgrade and fill to a minimum of 98 percent ASTM D698 (Standard Proctor) maximum density at optimum moisture content.
- iv. Granular Fill: Place granular fill on compacted, unscarified fill or subgrade and compact to a minimum of 100 percent, ASTM D698, maximum density at optimum moisture content.
- v. Pavement Areas: Compact the subgrade and fill material beneath paved areas and shoulders to a minimum 100 percent ASTM D698 maximum density at optimum moisture content.
- vi. Landscaped Areas: Compact the subgrade and fill to a minimum 98 percent ASTM D698 maximum density at optimum moisture content. Compact topsoil to 85 percent ASTM D698 maximum density at optimum moisture content.

# I. Finish Grading

- i. General: Perform finish grading to the lines and grades shown on the drawings. Finished grades should be smooth and uniform and provide positive drainage..
- ii. Tolerances:
  - I. Rough Grade Plus or minus 0.1 foot
  - 2. Finish Grade Plus or minus 0.1 foot
- iii. Topsoil: The top 4 inches of soil in landscaped areas shall be topsoil.
- iv. Protection: Protect areas which have been graded from equipment traffic.

- m. Trenching, Backfilling and Compaction for Utility Systems
  - i. General: Refer to specific utility sections in these specifications for installation requirements. Trench, backfill and compact as specified except as modified herein.
  - ii. Trenching: Trench widths at and below the top of the pipe shall be the minimum necessary for proper installation. Trench banks above the top of the pipe shall be as vertical as practicable. Overdepth excavation shall be backfilled with Class I material and compacted. The Contractor shall provide, at his expense and as directed by the Owner's representative, special bedding material or concrete encasement as may be necessary due to over-width excavation.
  - iii. Depth: Trench to the lines and grades shown on the drawings. Where elevations are not shown, trench to a depth sufficient to provide at least 36 inches of cover above the top of pipe, unless otherwise specified. Grade trenches to provide a constant slope free of sags and high spots.
  - iv. Dewatering: Keep trenches free of water. Include cost of dewatering in unit price bid for pipe. No additional payment for this item is permitted.
  - v. Trench Bracing: Properly brace, sheet and support trench walls as soil conditions indicate and in strict conformance with all pertinent laws and OSHA regulations.
     Provide adequate bracing and shoring to protect adjacent improvements.
     Contractor shall provide certification for all premanufactured trench bracing devices prior to any excavation activities.
  - vi. Bedding, Pipe Haunching and Initial Backfill: Tamp to provide firm, even bedding. Excavate bedding material to match the shape of the bottom of the pipe and bell, as detailed in the drawings. Place haunching material so as to provide full bearing around the bottom of the pipe. Place bedding haunching and initial backfill as specified below.

# vii. Pipe Bedding:

- P.V.C. Gravity Main Provide six (6) inches of Class I bedding material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching material shall be Class I material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching of pipe from invert to springline shall be by hand placement to ensure material is worked under Haunch. Initial backfill shall be Class I to top of pipe (washed #57 stone preferred).
- 2. D.I..P. and C900/905 PVC Gravity Main Provide six (6) inches of Class I bedding material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching material shall be Class I material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching of pipe from invert to springline shall be by hand placement to ensure material is worked under Haunch. Initial backfill shall be Class I to springline of pipe Class I, II or III material to top of pipe.

- 3. Pressure Main P.V.C. or D.I.P. Provide six (6) inches of Class I or II bedding material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching material shall be Class I or II material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching of pipe from invert to springline shall be by hand placement to ensure material is worked under Haunch. Initial backfill shall be Class I or Class II to top of pipe Class I, II or III material from top of pipe to 6-inches above pipe.
- 4. Service Pipe (Schedule 40) Provide six (6) inches of Class I or II bedding material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching material shall be Class I or II material compacted to 98 percent ASTM D698 density. Haunching of pipe from invert to springline shall be by hand placement to ensure material is worked under Haunch. Initial backfill shall be Class I or II to top of pipe.
- viii. Backfill: Backfill the remainder of the trench in accordance with paragraphs 2d (Products-Soils) and f. (Fill and Compaction) of this section. Backfill from embedment zone to surface grade may be by hand of mechanical placement. Trench backfill shall be compacted in 8-inch lifts.
- ix. Foundation: Foundation materials shall be required in wet, yielding and mucky locations. Foundation shall be constructed by removal of wet, yielding or mucky material and its replacement with sufficient Class I material to correct the instability. In areas where foundation is required bedding shall be class I only.
- x. Backfilling in Traffic Areas (Highways, paved streets, paved parking lots, alleys, driveways, highway and street shoulders)
  - 1. Initial Backfilling of Pipe (Ordinary Bedding for DIP Pipe)
    - a. After preparing the trench for ordinary bedding as described under h. Trenching, Backfilling and Compaction for Utility Systems) of this section, this portion of the pipe trench shall be backfilled with suitable materials (Type I) under and around the pipe, carefully deposited in uniform layers on both sides of pipe and compacted by hand or pneumatic tampers until backfill reaches one (I) foot above top of pipe. The depth of backfill layers shall be six (6) inches maximum. Each layer of material shall be compacted to a dry density 95 percent of the maximum determined by the Standard Proctor Compaction Test.
    - b. When crushed stone or concrete encasement is used, the initial backfill of suitable materials will not be required.
    - c. The tampers shall be of proper sized to operate between trench wall and pipe without damaging the pipe.

- 2. Initial Backfilling of Pipe (Crusted Stone Encasement for PVC pipe, DIP in unstable or wet conditions, or crushed stone encasement)
  - a. This portion of the pipe trench shall be backfilled with crushed stone to provide crusted stone encasement.
  - b. When concrete cradle is used, the initial backfill will start at the top of the concrete and then continue as specified above.
  - c. When concrete encasement is used, the initial backfill of crushed stone will not be required.
- 3. Backfilling Trench to Subgrade After Initial Backfilling (Suitable Materials)
  - a. After initial backfilling has been compacted as specified above, backfill the remainder of the trench in compacted layers not to exceed twelve (12) inches using a mechanical tamper up to the bottom elevation of the pavement structure with suitable materials (Type 2) to be a dry density 95 percent of the maximum determined by the Modified Proctor Compaction Test.

# n. Field Quality Control

- i. Field inspection, sampling and testing will be performed per owner's instructions.
- ii. An independent soils Engineer of Recording and testing laboratory shall perform sufficient tests and inspection procedures, to the satisfaction of the Engineer of Record, both in the field and lab to ensure that the provisions of this specification are met. The testing shall be paid by the Contractor. The testing lab shall be approved by the Engineer of Record. After testing is completed and reports are provided, all subgrades below the paving will be examined by the Engineer of Record before any paving is authorized. The responsibility of the soils Engineer of Recording and testing laboratory is to the Engineer of Record, to whom that firm must promptly, faithfully and accurately report the results of its tests and inspections. The firm must, in addition, work in coordination with the Contractor, making all tests required. The reports must state whether or not the reported results comply with contract requirements. The testing and control firm shall promptly type and deliver all its reports to the Engineer of Record with a copy to the Contractor.

## 2. SEEDING AND STABILIZATION OF DISTURBED AREAS

a. The seeding and stabilization of all disturbed areas shall conform to the NCDENR approved soil erosion plan and permit. If an approved plan is not requires than all disturbed areas will be seeded and stabilized per the latest edition of the "Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and design Manual"

#### SECTION 31 10 00 - SITE CLEARING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Clearing and protection of vegetation.
- B. Removal of existing debris.

#### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 11 00 Summary: Limitations on Contractor's use of site and premises.
- B. Section 01 11 00 Summary: Sequencing and staging requirements.
- C. Section 31 25 00 Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control.
- D. Section 01 73 00 Execution: Project conditions; protection of bench marks, survey control points, and existing construction to remain; reinstallation of removed products.
- E. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Topsoil removal.
- F. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Fill material for filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as a result of removal operations.
- G. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Fill material for filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as a result of removal operations.
- H. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as a result of removal operations.

#### 1.03 REFERENCES

# 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Erosion Control Plan: Showing:
  - 1. Vegetation removal limits.
  - 2. Areas for temporary construction and field offices.

# 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Clearing Firm: Company specializing in the type of work required.
  - 1. Minimum of five years of documented experience.

# 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Minimize production of dust due to clearing operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.
- B. Comply with other requirements specified in Section 01 73 00.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Fill Material: As specified in Section 31 22 00 – Grading

SITE CLEARING 31 10 00 - 1

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXISTING UTILITIES AND BUILT ELEMENTS

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.

# 3.02 VEGETATION

- A. Scope: Remove trees, shrubs, brush, and stumps in areas to be covered by building structure, paving, playing fields, lawns, and planting beds.
- B. Do not begin clearing until vegetation to be relocated has been removed.
- C. Do not remove or damage vegetation beyond the following limits:
  - 1. 40 feet (12 m) outside the building perimeter.
  - 2. 10 feet (3.1 m) each side of surface walkways, patios, surface parking, and utility lines less than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter.
  - 3. 15 feet (4.6 m) each side of roadway curbs and main utility trenches.
  - 4. 25 feet (7.5 m) outside perimeter of pervious paving areas that must not be compacted by construction traffic.
  - 5. Exception: Specific trees and vegetation indicated on drawings to be removed.
  - 6. Exception: Selective thinning of undergrowth specified elsewhere.
- D. Install substantial, highly visible fences at least 3 feet (1 m) high to prevent inadvertent damage to vegetation to remain:
  - 1. At vegetation removal limits.
  - 2. Around trees to remain within vegetation removal limits; locate no closer to tree than at the drip line.
  - 3. Around other vegetation to remain within vegetation removal limits.
  - 4. See Section 01 50 00 for fence construction requirements.
- E. In areas where vegetation must be removed but no construction will occur other than pervious paving, remove vegetation with minimum disturbance of the subsoil.
- F. Vegetation Removed: Do not burn, bury, landfill, or leave on site, except as indicated.
  - 1. Chip, grind, crush, or shred vegetation for mulching, composting, or other purposes; preference should be given to on-site uses.
  - 2. Trees: Sell if marketable; if not, treat as specified for other vegetation removed; remove stumps and roots to depth of 18 inches (450 mm).
  - 3. Existing Stumps: Treat as specified for other vegetation removed; remove stumps and roots to depth of 18 inches (450 mm).
  - 4. Sod: Re-use on site if possible; otherwise sell if marketable, and if not, treat as specified for other vegetation removed.
  - 5. Fill holes left by removal of stumps and roots, using suitable fill material, with top surface neat in appearance and smooth enough not to constitute a hazard to pedestrians.
- G. Dead Wood: Remove all dead trees (standing or down), limbs, and dry brush on entire site; treat as specified for vegetation removed.

SITE CLEARING 31 10 00 - 2

H. Restoration: If vegetation outside removal limits or within specified protective fences is damaged or destroyed due to subsequent construction operations, replace at no cost to Owner.

# 3.03 DEBRIS

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION 31 10 00

SITE CLEARING 31 10 00 - 3

#### SECTION 31 22 00 - GRADING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Removal of topsoil.
- B. Rough grading and preparation of site for site structures, building pads, and drainage features.
- C. Finish grading.

#### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 10 00 Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 23 00 Excavation.
- C. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Filling and compaction.
- D. Section 31 23 33 Trenching for Site Utilities: Trenching and backfilling for utilities.
- E. Section 32 92 19 Seeding: Finish ground cover.
- F. Section 32 92 23 Sodding: Finish ground cover.

## 1.03 UNIT PRICES

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for general requirements relating to unit prices for this work.
- B. Topsoil: Applies to Unit Price.
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the square yard down to a drawing-defined elevation.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing topsoil, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, and compacting.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of utilities remaining by horizontal dimensions, elevations or inverts, and slope gradients.

# 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with State of North Carolina, Highway Department standards.
  - 1. Maintain one copy on site.

# 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protect above- and below-grade utilities that remain.
- B. Protect plants, lawns, rock outcroppings, and other features to remain as a portion of final landscaping.
- C. Protect bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from grading equipment and vehicular traffic.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Fill Materials: See Section 31 23 23.

GRADING 31 22 00 - 1

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.

# 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Stake and flag locations of known utilities.
- C. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain, from damage.
- D. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.

## 3.03 ROUGH GRADING

- A. Remove topsoil from areas to be further excavated, re-landscaped, or re-graded, without mixing with foreign materials.
- B. Do not remove topsoil when wet.
- C. Remove subsoil from areas to be further excavated, re-landscaped, or re-graded.
- D. Do not remove wet subsoil, unless it is subsequently processed to obtain optimum moisture content.
- E. When excavating through roots, perform work by hand and cut roots with sharp axe.
- F. See Section 31 23 23 for filling procedures.
- G. Benching Slopes: Horizontally bench existing slopes greater than 1:4 to key fill material to slope for firm bearing.
- H. Stability: Replace damaged or displaced subsoil to same requirements as for specified fill.

#### 3.04 SOIL REMOVAL

- A. Stockpile excavated topsoil on site.
- B. Stockpile topsoil to be re-used on site; remove remainder from site.
- C. Remove excavated topsoil from site.
- D. Stockpile excavated subsoil on site.
- E. Stockpile subsoil to be re-used on site; remove remainder from site.
- F. Remove excavated subsoil from site.
- G. Stockpiles: Use areas designated on site; pile depth not to exceed 8 feet (2.5 m); protect from erosion.

# 3.05 FINISH GRADING

- A. Before Finish Grading:
  - 1. Verify building and trench backfilling have been inspected.
  - 2. Verify subgrade has been contoured and compacted.
- B. Remove debris, roots, branches, stones, in excess of 1/2 inch (13 mm) in size. Remove soil contaminated with petroleum products.
- C. Where topsoil is to be placed, scarify surface to depth of 3 inches (75 mm).
- D. In areas where vehicles or equipment have compacted soil, scarify surface to depth of 3 inches (75 mm).
- E. Place topsoil in areas where seeding are indicated.
- F. Place topsoil where required to level finish grade.

GRADING 31 22 00 - 2

- G. Place topsoil to the following compacted thicknesses:
  - 1. Areas to be Seeded with Grass: 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 2. Areas to be Sodded: 4 inches (100 mm).
  - 3. Shrub Beds: 18 inches (450 mm).
  - 4. Flower Beds: 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 5. Planter Boxes: To within 3 inches (75 mm) of box rim.
- H. Place topsoil during dry weather.
- I. Remove roots, weeds, rocks, and foreign material while spreading.
- J. Near plants spread topsoil manually to prevent damage.
- K. Fine grade topsoil to eliminate uneven areas and low spots. Maintain profiles and contour of subgrade.
- L. Lightly compact placed topsoil.

# 3.06 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of Subgrade: Plus or minus 1/10 foot (30 mm) from required elevation.
- B. Top Surface of Finish Grade: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).

# 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 31 23 23 for compaction density testing.

#### 3.08 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove unused stockpiled topsoil and subsoil. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing water.
- B. Leave site clean and raked, ready to receive landscaping.

END OF SECTION 31 22 00

GRADING 31 22 00 - 3

# SECTION 31 22 16 - SUBGRADE AND ROADBED

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The Drawings and provisions of the General Conditions, Supplemental Conditions, and Division 1 are included as part of this Section as though bound herein.
- B. Section 500 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" dated July 2006.

### 1.02 WORK INCLUDED

A. The work covered by this section consists of the preparation, shaping, and compaction of that portion of the roadway areas that are to be paved.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.01 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

# A. Preparation of Subgrade:

- 1. The subgrade shall be shaped to the lines, grades, spot elevations and typical sections shown on the plans. Where the Owner's Representative directs that areas of the subgrade are to be stabilized, the subgrade in such areas may be left uniformly below grade to provide for the addition of the stabilizer material.
- 2. All unsuitable material, boulders, and all vegetative matter shall be removed and replaced with suitable material. Suitable material, when not available from the subgrade work, shall be taken from pond excavation or borrow sources.
- 3. Material excavated in preparing the subgrade shall be stored or stockpiled in such a manner as to not interfere with proper drainage or any of the subsequent operations of placing aggregate base course.

# B. Compaction of Subgrade:

- 1. When tested, all material to a depth of 12 inches below the finished surface of the subgrade shall be compacted to a density equal to at least 100% of that obtained by compacting a sample of the material in accordance with ASTM D 698.
- 2. The subgrade shall be compacted at a moisture content which is approximately that required to produce the maximum density indicated by the above test method. The Contractor shall dry or add moisture to the subgrade when required to provide a uniformly compacted and acceptable subgrade.

# 3.02 TOLERANCES

A. A tolerance of plus or minus 1/2 inch from the established grade will be permitted after the subgrade has been graded to a uniform surface.

# 3.03 PROTECTION OF SUBGRADE

A. Ditches and drains shall be provided and maintained when required to satisfactorily drain the subgrade. Where previously approved subgrade is damaged by natural causes, by hauling equipment, or by other traffic, the Contractor shall restore the subgrade to the required lines, grades, and typical sections and to the required density at no cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 31 22 16

## SECTION 31 23 00 - EXCAVATION

### PART 1- GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavating for building volume below grade, footings, pile caps, slabs-on-grade, paving, site structures, and utilities within the building.
- B. Trenching for utilities outside the building to utility main connections.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 73 00 Execution: General requirements for dewatering of excavations and water control.
- B. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Soil removal from surface of site.
- C. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Grading.
- D. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Fill materials, filling, and compacting.
- E. Section 31 23 33 Trenching for Site Utilities: Excavating for utility trenches outside the building to utility main connections.
- F. Section 31 37 00 Riprap.
- G. Section 33 46 00 Subdrainage: Filter aggregate and filter fabric for foundation drainage systems.

# 1.03 UNIT PRICES

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for general requirements applicable to unit prices for excavation.
- B. Unit Price: Excavating Soil Materials:
  - 1. Measurement method: By the cubic foot.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating to required elevations, loading and placing materials in stockpile.
  - 3. Does Not Include Over-Excavation: Payment will not be made for over-excavated work nor for replacement materials.
- C. See Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill, for measurement and payment provisions related to fill.

### 1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.
- B. Protect plants, lawns, rock outcroppings, and other features to remain.
- C. Protect bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- B. See Section 31 22 00 for additional requirements.

EXCAVATION 31 23 00 - 1

### 3.02 EXCAVATING

- A. Underpin adjacent structures which may be damaged by excavating work.
- B. Excavate to accommodate new structures and construction operations.
- C. Notify Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- D. Preparation for Piling Work: Excavate to working elevations. Coordinate special requirements for piling.
- E. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.
- F. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- G. Cut utility trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities.
- H. Hand trim excavations. Remove loose matter.
- I. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
- J. Correct areas that are over-excavated and load-bearing surfaces that are disturbed; see Section 31 23 23.
- K. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation.
- L. Remove excavated material that is unsuitable for re-use from site.
- M. Stockpile excavated material to be re-used in area designated on site in accordance with Section 31 22 00.
- N. Remove excess excavated material from site.

# 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection and testing.
- B. Provide for visual inspection of load-bearing excavated surfaces before placement of foundations.

# 3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent displacement of banks and keep loose soil from falling into excavation; maintain soil stability.
- B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil adjacent to and beneath foundation from freezing.

END OF SECTION 31 23 00

EXCAVATION 31 23 00 - 2

#### SECTION 31 23 23 - FILL AND BACKFILL

# PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Filling, backfilling, and compacting for building volume below grade.
- B. Backfilling and compacting for utilities outside the building to utility main connections.
- C. Filling holes, pits, and excavations generated as a result of removal (demolition) operations.

#### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Removal and handling of soil to be re-used.
- B. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Site grading.
- C. Section 31 23 00 Excavation: Removal and handling of soil to be re-used.
- D. Section 31 23 33 Trenching for Site Utilities: Excavating for utility trenches outside the building to utility main connections.
- E. Section 31 37 00 Riprap.
- F. Section 33 46 00 Subdrainage: Filter aggregate and filter fabric for foundation drainage systems.
- G. Section 03 30 00 Cast-in-Place Concrete.

#### 1.03 UNIT PRICES

A. See Section 01 22 00 - Unit Prices, for general requirements applicable to unit prices for earthwork.

# 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. AASHTO T 180 Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 10-lb Rammer and a 18 in. Drop; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; 2001 (2004).
- B. ASTM C 136 Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2006.
- C. ASTM D 698 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3); 2000a.
- D. ASTM D 1556 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2000.
- E. ASTM D 1557 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3); 2002.
- F. ASTM D 2167 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 1994(R 2001).
- G. ASTM D 2487 Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2000.
- H. ASTM D 2922 Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- ASTM D 3017 Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- J. ASTM D 4318 Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils; 2005.

# 1.05 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finish Grade Elevations: Indicated on drawings.
- B. Subgrade Elevations: 4 inches below finish grade elevations indicated on drawings, unless otherwise indicated.

### 1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Fill Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
- C. Compaction Density Test Reports.

# 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Provide sufficient quantities of fill to meet project schedule and requirements. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. When fill materials need to be stored on site, locate stockpiles where indicated.
- 1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
- 2. Prevent contamination.
- 3. Protect stockpiles from erosion and deterioration of materials.
- C. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Materials shall conform to the respective specifications and other requirements specified below.
  - 1. Granular Material: Shall conform to the gradation requirements of ASTM D 693 size No. 67.
  - 2. Stone Bedding: Shall conform to Class I, 1/4 inch to 1 1/2 inch graded stone bedding, as described in ASTM D 2321.
  - 3. Portland Cement Concrete: Shall conform to ASTM C-94, with a 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 pounds per square inch. Concrete shall be protected from freezing and moisture loss for 7 days.

# 2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for testing and analysis of soil material.
- B. Where fill materials are specified by reference to a specific standard, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- C. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.

# 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Scarify and proof roll subgrade surface to a depth of 6 inches to identify soft spots.
- B. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with general fill.
- C. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- D. Until ready to fill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation.

#### 3.03 BACKFILLING

- A. Except for special materials for pavements, the remainder of the trench shall be backfilled with ASTM 2487 Class I, II, III or IV material that is free of stones larger than 6 inches in any dimension or one-half the layered thickness, whichever is smaller. Each layer shall be compacted to not less than the minimum density specified as applicable to the particular area per Section 31 22 00 Grading, of these specifications. Equipment for compacting backfill in trenches and excavation shall be especially selected for the type of material used in the backfill. Generally, vibrating type equipment shall be utilized for non-cohesive soils and impact type equipment shall be used for cohesive soils.
- B. Excavated Space: For manholes, wet wells, piers and similar structures shall be free of all debris prior to placing backfill. Remove all concrete forms. Place backfill in 8-inch thick layers and thoroughly compact each layer with mechanical tampers as necessary to prevent subsequent settlement. Extend backfill to indicated finish grade.
- C. Equipment shall not be allowed to pass over pipe until 3 feet of compacted cover has been placed over the pipe.

# 3.04 EXCESS WATER CONTROL

- A. General: Grade and maintain all areas of the site to preclude surface runoff into excavations and prevent ponding of water.
- B. Dewatering: Excavations should be kept free of surface water and/or groundwater. Provide and maintain at all times the necessary means and devices to prevent water from entering the excavations and for removing all water entering the excavations.
- C. Softened Subgrade: Remove all soil softened or eroded by the presence of water and replace with suitable backfill material.

### 3.05 DISPOSAL OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS

- A. Unsuitable materials encountered in an excavation shall be removed by the Contractor and backfilled with suitable material and compacted. Unsuitable materials include organic soils, muck, soft and compressible silts, and clays and running sands.
- B. Excavated materials not required for topsoil, fill, or backfill shall be removed from the site of the work by the Contractor, but none shall be deposited on private property without written consent of the property owner.

### 3.06 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of General Filling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- B. Top Surface of Filling Under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

# 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection and

- testing.
- B. Perform compaction density testing on compacted fill in accordance with ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D2922, or ASTM D3017.
- C. Evaluate results in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with ASTM D 698 ("standard Proctor"), ASTM D 1557 ("modified Proctor"), or AASHTO T 180.
- D. If tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.

# 3.08 CLEAN-UP

- A. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.
- B. Leave borrow areas in a clean and neat condition. Grade to prevent standing surface water.

END OF SECTION 31 23 23

# SECTION 31 23 23.23 - PROOF ROLLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The Drawings and provisions of the General Conditions, Supplemental Conditions, and Division 1 are included as part of this Section as though bound herein.
- B. Section 260 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation "Standard Specification for Roads and Structures" dated July 2006.

### 1.02 WORK INCLUDED

A. The work covered by this section consists of the Contractor furnishing and operating heavy pneumatic tired compaction equipment for compacting and testing the roadway areas for stability and uniformity of compaction.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

# 2.01 EQUIPMENT

- A. The equipment shall consist of 4 rubber-tired wheels mounted on a rigid steel frame. The wheels shall be evenly spaced in one line across the width of the roller and shall be arranged in such a manner that all wheels will carry approximately equal loads when operated over an uneven surface. The maximum center-to-center spacing between adjacent wheels shall not exceed 32 inches. The compacting equipment shall have a suitable body for ballast loading with such capacity that the gross load shall be from 48 to 50 tons unless otherwise permitted by the Owner's Representative in writing. Other equipment of equal of better effectiveness may be substituted with written permission from the Owner's Representative.
- B. The tires shall be operated at inflation pressures between 68 to 72 pounds per square inch unless otherwise permitted by the Owner's Representative in writing. The tires shall be inflated with air only; no liquid shall be used.
- C. Ballast to obtain the weight directed by the Owner's Representative shall consist of bulk, sand, bulk stone, bags of sand, stone, or other materials of known unit weight such that the total weight of the ballast used can be readily determined at all times. There shall be a sufficient amount of ballast available to load the equipment to a maximum gross weight of 50 tons. The loaded roller shall be so constructed that it will not trap water that will add weight to the ballast.
- D. Rubber tired or other types of tractive equipment may be used for operation of this equipment on the roadbed. The entire assembly including motivating equipment shall be capable of executing a 180-degree turn on a 27-foot wide area.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. After the roadway areas have been completed to within 0.50 foot of final grade, these areas shall then be compacted and tested with one coverage, unless otherwise directed by the Owner's Representative, of a heavy pneumatic tired roller meeting the equipment requirements. A coverage is considered that state in the rolling procedure when the entire width of the area being proof rolled has been in contact with the pneumatic tires of the roller. The roller shall be

PROOF ROLLING 31 23 23.23 -1

- operated in a systematic manner so that the number of coverages over all areas to be proof rolled can be readily determined and recorded.
- B. The equipment shall be operated at a speed between 225 and 300 feet per minute.
- C. Proof rolling shall be done only in the presence of the Owner's Representative.
- D. If it becomes necessary to take corrective action, such as but not limited to underdrain installation, undercut and backfill of unsuitable material, and aeration of excessively wet material in areas that have been proof rolled, these areas shall be proof rolled again following the completion of the necessary corrections.

END OF SECTION 31 23 23.23

PROOF ROLLING 31 23 23.23 -2

# SECTION 31 23 33 - TRENCHING FOR SITE UTILITIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Backfilling and compacting for utilities outside the building to utility main connections.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Site grading.
- B. Section 31 23 00 Excavation: Building and foundation excavating.
- C. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Backfilling at building and foundations.
- D. Section 33 46 00 Subdrainage: Filter aggregate and filter fabric for foundation drainage systems.

# 1.03 UNIT PRICES

A. See Section 01 22 00 - Unit Prices, for general requirements applicable to unit prices for earthwork.

#### 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. AASHTO T 180 Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 10-lb Rammer and a 18 in. Drop; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; 2001 (2004).
- B. ASTM D 698 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3); 2000a.
- C. ASTM D 1556 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2000.
- D. ASTM D 1557 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3); 2002.
- E. ASTM D 2167 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 1994(R 2001).
- F. ASTM D 2922 Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- G. ASTM D 3017 Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.

# 1.05 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finish Grade Elevations: Indicated on drawings.
- B. Subgrade Elevations: 4 inches below finish grade elevations indicated on drawings, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Fill Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
- C. Compaction Density Test Reports.

# 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Provide sufficient quantities of fill to meet project schedule and requirements. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.
- C. Protect plants, lawns, rock outcroppings, and other features to remain.
- D. Protect bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.01 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Materials shall conform to the respective specifications and other requirements specified below.
  - 1. Granular Material: Shall conform to the gradation requirements of ASTM D 693 size No. 67.
  - 2. Stone Bedding: Shall conform to Class I, 1/4 inch to 1 1/2 inch graded stone bedding, as described in ASTM D 2321.
  - 3. Portland Cement Concrete: Shall conform to ASTM C-94, with a 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 pounds per square inch. Concrete shall be protected from freezing and moisture loss for 7 days.

# 2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for testing and analysis of soil material.
- B. Where fill materials are specified by reference to a specific standard, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- C. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- B. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain and protect from damage.

#### 3.02 TRENCHING

- A. Notify Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- B. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.
- C. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- D. Cut trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities.
- E. Hand trim excavations. Remove loose matter.
- F. Remove large stones and other hard matter which could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.
- G. Remove excavated material that is unsuitable for re-use from site.
- H. Stockpile excavated material to be re-used in area designated on site in accordance with Section 31 20 10.
- I. Remove excess excavated material from site.

# 3.03 PREPARATION FOR UTILITY PLACEMENT

- A. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with general fill.
- B. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- C. Until ready to backfill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation.

#### 3.04 BACKFILLING

- A. Except for special materials for pavements, the remainder of the trench shall be backfilled with ASTM 2487 Class I, II, III or IV material that is free of stones larger than 6 inches in any dimension or one-half the layered thickness, whichever is smaller. Each layer shall be compacted to not less than the minimum density specified as applicable to the particular area per Section 31 22 00 Grading, of these specifications. Equipment for compacting backfill in trenches and excavation shall be especially selected for the type of material used in the backfill. Generally, vibrating type equipment shall be utilized for non-cohesive soils and impact type equipment shall be used for cohesive soils.
- B. Excavated Space: For manholes, wet wells, piers and similar structures shall be free of all debris prior to placing backfill. Remove all concrete forms. Place backfill in 8-inch thick layers and thoroughly compact each layer with mechanical tampers as necessary to prevent subsequent settlement. Extend backfill to indicated finish grade.
- C. Equipment shall not be allowed to pass over pipe until 3 feet of compacted cover has been placed over the pipe.

### 3.05 BEDDING AND FILL AT SPECIFIC LOCATIONS

- A. Bedding material requirements as specified hereinafter are due to the properties of pipe materials and trench depths. Whenever the width of the trench at the top of the pipe cannot be maintained for any reason whatsoever, the Contractor shall immediately stop all work in connection with the preparation of the pipe bed and shall notify the Owner's Representative. The Owner's Representative will select the proper class of pipe bedding to be provided by the Contractor. Any and all changes to class of pipe bedding made necessary by the Contractor not being able to maintain the conditions specified shall be provided by the Contractor at his expense and without any change in the contract price.
  - 1. Bedding Materials: Shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D 2487, and are described in Table 2221-1. Bedding, haunching, and initial backfill material shall be free of stones larger than 1/2 inch in diameter and shall not be Class V soil.

TABLE 2221-1

### DESCRIPTION OF EMBEDMENT MATERIAL CLASSIFICATIONS

SOIL SOIL DESCRIPTION OF

<u>CLASS</u> <u>TYPE</u> <u>MATERIAL CLASSIFICATION</u>

Manufactured angular, granular material, 1/4 to 1 1/2 inches (6 to 40 mm) size,

CLASS I SOILS*		including materials having regional significance such as crushed stone or rock, broken coral, crushed slag, cinders, or crushed shells.
	GW	Well-graded gravels and gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines. 50% or more retained on No. 4 sieve. More than 95% retained on No. 200 sieve. Clean.
	GP	Poorly graded gravels and gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines. 50% or more retained on No. 4 sieve. More than 95% retained on No. 200 sieve. Clean.
CLASS II SOILS **	SW	Well-graded sands and gravely sands, little or no fines. More than 50% passes No. 4 sieve. More than 95% retained on No. 200 sieve. Clean.
	SP	Poorly graded sands and gravely sands, little or no fines. More than 50% passes No. 4 sieve. More than 95% retained on No. 200 sieve. Clean.
	GM	Silty gravels, gravel-sand-silt mixtures. 50% or more retained on No. 4 sieve. More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.
SOIL CLASS	SOIL TYPE	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL CLASSIFICATION
CLASS III SOILS***	GC	Clayey gravels, gravel-sand-clay mixtures. 50% or more retained on No. 4 sieve. More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.
	SM	Silty sands, sand-silt mixtures. More than 50% passes No. 4 sieve. More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.
	SC	Clayey sands, sand-clay mixtures. More than 50% passes No. 4 sieve. More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.
	ML	Inorganic silts, very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands. Liquid limit 50% or less. 50% or more passes No. 200 sieve.

	CL	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, lean clays. Liquid limit 50% or less. 50% or more passes No. 200 sieve.
CLASS IV SOILS	МН	Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sands or silts, elastic silts. Liquid limit Greater than 50%. 50% or more passes No. 200 sieve.
	СН	Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays. Liquid limit greater than 50%. 50% or more passes No. 200 sieve.
	OL	Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity. Liquid limit 50% or less. 50% or more passes No. 200 sieve.
	ОН	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity. Liquid limit greater than 50%. 50% or more passes No. 200 sieve.
	PT	Peat, muck and other highly organic soils.

<sup>\*</sup> Soils defined as Class 1 materials are not defined in ASTM D2487.

- 2. Rigid Pipe (DIP pipe): Bedding, haunching, and initial backfill for rigid pipe shall be placed as specified on the plans. The applicable trench bedding conditions shall be dependent on type of pipe and depth of cut, as specified herein.
- 3. Flexible Pipe (PVC Pipe): Flexible pipe bedding shall conform to ASTM D2321 and consist of bedding the pipe in compacted granular material placed on a flat trench bottom, as shown in the plans.

# 3.06 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- B. Top Surface of Backfilling Under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

# 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection and testing.
- B. Perform compaction density testing on compacted fill in accordance with ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D2922, or ASTM D3017.

<sup>\*\*</sup> In accordance with ASTM D 2487, less than 5% pass No. 200 sieve.

<sup>\*\*\*</sup> In accordance with ASTM D 2487, more than 12% pass No. 200 sieve. Soils with 5% to 12% pass No. 200 sieve fall in borderline classification; e.g., GP-GC.

- C. Evaluate results in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with ASTM D 698 ("standard Proctor"), ASTM D 1557 ("modified Proctor"), or AASHTO T 180.
- D. If tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.

# 3.08 CLEAN-UP

A. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.

END OF SECTION 31 23 33

# SECTION 31 25 00 - TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

# 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Prevention of erosion due to construction activities.
- B. Prevention of sedimentation of waterways, open drainage ways, and storm and sanitary sewers due to construction activities.
- C. Restoration of areas eroded due to insufficient preventive measures.
- D. Performance bond.
- E. Compensation of Owner for fines levied by authorities having jurisdiction due to non-compliance by Contractor.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 10 00 Site Clearing: Limits on clearing; disposition of vegetative clearing debris.
- B. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Temporary and permanent grade changes for erosion control.
- C. Section 31 37 00 Riprap: Temporary and permanent stabilization using riprap.
- D. Section 32 11 23 Aggregate Base Course: Temporary and permanent roadways.
- E. Section 32 92 19 Seeding: Permanent turf for erosion control.
- F. Section 32 92 23 Sodding: Permanent turf for erosion control.

# 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM D 4355 Standard Test Method for Deterioration of Geotextiles by Exposure to Light, Moisture, and Heat in a Xenon Arc Type Apparatus; 2005.
- B. ASTM D 4491 Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity; 1999a (Reapproved 2004).
- C. ASTM D 4533 Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles; 2004.
- D. ASTM D 4632 Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles; 1991 (Reapproved 2003).
- E. ASTM D 4751 Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile; 2004.
- F. ASTM D 4873 Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples; 2002.
- G. EPA (NPDES) National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Construction General Permit; current edition; <a href="http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/cgp.cfm">http://cfpub.epa.gov/npdes/stormwater/cgp.cfm</a>.
- H. FHWA FLP-94-005 Best Management Practices for Erosion and Sediment Control; Federal Highway Administration; 1995.
- I. USDA TR-55 Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds; USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service; 1986.

# 1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with all requirements of U.S. Environmental Protection Agency for erosion and sedimentation control, as specified for the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Phases I and II, under requirements for the 2003 Construction General Permit (CGP), whether the project is required by law to comply or not.
- B. Also comply with all more stringent requirements of State of North Carolina Erosion and Sedimentation Control Manual.

- C. Comply with all requirements of NCDENR Division of Land Quality for erosion and sedimentation control.
- D. Do not begin clearing, grading, or other work involving disturbance of ground surface cover until applicable permits have been obtained; furnish all documentation required to obtain applicable permits.
  - 1. Owner will obtain permits and pay for securities required by authority having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Owner will withhold payment to Contractor equivalent to all fines resulting from non-compliance with applicable regulations.
- E. Provide to Owner a Performance Bond covering erosion and sedimentation preventive measures only, in an amount equal to 100 percent of the cost of erosion and sedimentation control work.
- F. Timing: Put preventive measures in place as soon as possible after disturbance of surface cover and before precipitation occurs.
- G. Storm Water Runoff: Control increased storm water runoff due to disturbance of surface cover due to construction activities for this project.
  - 1. Prevent runoff into storm and sanitary sewer systems, including open drainage channels, in excess of actual capacity or amount allowed by authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is less.
  - 2. Anticipate runoff volume due to the most extreme short term and 24-hour rainfall events that might occur in 25 years.
- H. Erosion On Site: Minimize wind, water, and vehicular erosion of soil on project site due to construction activities for this project.
  - 1. Control movement of sediment and soil from temporary stockpiles of soil.
  - 2. Prevent development of ruts due to equipment and vehicular traffic.
  - 3. If erosion occurs due to non-compliance with these requirements, restore eroded areas at no cost to Owner.
- I. Erosion Off Site: Prevent erosion of soil and deposition of sediment on other properties caused by water leaving the project site due to construction activities for this project.
  - 1. Prevent windblown soil from leaving the project site.
  - 2. Prevent tracking of mud onto public roads outside site.
  - 3. Prevent mud and sediment from flowing onto sidewalks and pavements.
  - 4. If erosion occurs due to non-compliance with these requirements, restore eroded areas at no cost to Owner.
- J. Sedimentation of Waterways On Site: Prevent sedimentation of waterways on the project site, including rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, open drainage ways, storm sewers, and sanitary sewers.
  - 1. If sedimentation occurs, install or correct preventive measures immediately at no cost to Owner; remove deposited sediments; comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. If sediment basins are used as temporary preventive measures, pump dry and remove deposited sediment after each storm.
- K. Sedimentation of Waterways Off Site: Prevent sedimentation of waterways off the project site, including rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, open drainage ways, storm sewers, and sanitary sewers.
  - 1. If sedimentation occurs, install or correct preventive measures immediately at no cost to Owner; remove deposited sediments; comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- L. Open Water: Prevent standing water that could become stagnant.
- M. Maintenance: Maintain temporary preventive measures until permanent measures have been established.

# 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Certificate: Mill certificate for silt fence fabric attesting that fabric and factory seams comply with specified requirements, signed by legally authorized official of manufacturer; indicate actual minimum average roll values; identify fabric by roll identification numbers.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Mulch: Use one of the following:
  - 1. Straw or hay.
  - 2. Wood waste, chips, or bark.
  - 3. Erosion control matting or netting.
  - 4. Cutback asphalt.
  - 5. Polyethylene film, where specifically indicated only.
- B. Grass Seed For Temporary Cover: Select a species appropriate to climate, planting season, and intended purpose. If same area will later be planted with permanent vegetation, do not use species known to be excessively competitive or prone to volunteer in subsequent seasons.
- C. Silt Fence Fabric: Polypropylene geotextile resistant to common soil chemicals, mildew, and insects; non-biodegradable; in longest lengths possible; fabric including seams with the following minimum average roll lengths:
  - 1. Average Opening Size: 30 U.S. Std. Sieve (0.600 mm), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4751.
  - 2. Permittivity: 0.05 sec^-1, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4491.
  - 3. Ultraviolet Resistance: Retaining at least 70 percent of tensile strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4355 after 500 hours exposure.
  - 4. Tensile Strength: 100 lb-f (450 N), minimum, in cross-machine direction; 124 lb-f (550 N), minimum, in machine direction; when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4632.
  - 5. Elongation: 15 to 30 percent, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4632.
  - 6. Tear Strength: 55 lb-f (245 N), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4533.
  - 7. Color: Manufacturer's standard, with embedment and fastener lines preprinted.
  - 8. Manufacturers:
    - a. BP Amoco, Amoco Fabrics and Fibers: <a href="www.geotextile.com">www.geotextile.com</a>.
    - b. TC Mirafi: www.tcmirafi.com.
    - c. Synthetic Industries: www.fixsoil.com.
- D. Silt Fence Posts: One of the following, minimum 5 feet (1500 mm) long:
  - 1. Steel U- or T-section, with minimum mass of 1.33 lb per linear foot (1.98 kg per linear m).
- E. Gravel: See Section 32 11 23 for aggregate.
- F. Riprap: See Section 31 37 00.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine site and identify existing features that contribute to erosion resistance; maintain such existing features to greatest extent possible.

# 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Schedule work so that soil surfaces are left exposed for the minimum amount of time.

### 3.03 SCOPE OF PREVENTIVE MEASURES

- A. In all cases, if permanent erosion resistant measures have been installed temporary preventive measures are not required.
- B. Construction Entrances: Traffic-bearing aggregate surface.
  - 1. Width: As required; 20 feet (7 m), minimum.
  - 2. Length: 50 feet (16 m), minimum.
  - 3. Provide at each construction entrance from public right-of-way.
  - 4. Where necessary to prevent tracking of mud onto right-of-way, provide wheel washing area out of direct traffic lane, with drain into sediment trap or basin.
- C. Linear Sediment Barriers: Made of silt fences.
  - 1. Provide linear sediment barriers:
    - a. Along downhill perimeter edge of disturbed areas, including soil stockpiles.
    - b. Along the top of the slope or top bank of drainage channels and swales that traverse disturbed areas.
    - c. Along the toe of cut slopes and fill slopes.
    - d. Perpendicular to flow across the bottom of existing and new drainage channels and swales that traverse disturbed areas or carry runoff from disturbed areas; space at maximum of 200 feet (60 m) apart.
    - e. Across the entrances to culverts that receive runoff from disturbed areas.
  - 2. Space sediment barriers with the following maximum slope length upslope from barrier:
    - a. Slope of Less Than 2 Percent: 100 feet (30 m)..
    - b. Slope Between 2 and 5 Percent: 75 feet (23 m).
    - c. Slope Between 5 and 10 Percent: 50 feet (15 m).
    - d. Slope Between 10 and 20 Percent: 25 feet (7.5 m).
    - e. Slope Over 20 Percent: 15 feet (4.5 m).
- D. Storm Drain Curb Inlet Sediment Trap: Protect each curb inlet using the following measures:
  - 1. Filter fabric wrapped around hollow concrete blocks blocking entire inlet face area; use one piece of fabric wrapped at least 1-1/2 times around concrete blocks and secured to prevent dislodging; orient cores of blocks so runoff passes into inlet.
- E. Storm Drain Drop Inlet Sediment Traps: As detailed on drawings.
- F. Temporary Splash Pads: Stone aggregate over filter fabric; size to suit application; provide at downspout outlets and storm water outlets.
- G. Soil Stockpiles: Protect using one of the following measures:
  - 1. Cover with polyethylene film, secured by placing soil on outer edges.
  - 2. Cover with mulch at least 4 inches (100 mm) thickness of pine needles, sawdust, bark, wood chips, or shredded leaves, or 6 inches (150 mm) of straw or hay.
- H. Mulching: Use only for areas that may be subjected to erosion for less than 6 months.
  - 1. Wood Waste: Use only on slopes 3:1 or flatter; no anchoring required.
  - 2. Asphalt: Use only where no traffic, either vehicular or pedestrian, is anticipated.
- I. Temporary Seeding: Use where temporary vegetated cover is required.

# 3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. The Contractor shall install the erosion control construction measures as shown on the contract drawings, except that should circumstances dictate that extra precaution be taken to prohibit erosion and sedimentation on the project, the Contractor will, at his own expense, take preventative measures as needed.
- B. The Contractor is required to maintain all erosion and sediment control facilities to insure proper performance throughout the construction phase and until such time all disturbed areas are permanently stabilized.
- C. Upon completion of construction or successful permanent stabilization of all areas which were disturbed before or during construction operations or as indicated on the construction drawings, whichever occurs last, the Contractor shall remove all temporary erosion and sediment control devices and facilities from the project site. The Contractor shall retain these items for future use or properly dispose of these items offsite.
- D. The Contractor shall provide temporary or permanent stabilization with ground cover on all perimeter dikes, swales, ditches, perimeter slopes and all slopes steeper than 3:1 (horizontal to vertical) within 7 calendar days from the last land disturbing activity. All other areas shall be stabilized with ground cover within 14 days from the last land disturbing activity.

## 3.05 MAINTENANCE

- A. Inspect preventive measures weekly, within 24 hours after the end of any storm that produces 0.5 inches (13 mm) or more rainfall at the project site, and daily during prolonged rainfall.
- B. Repair deficiencies immediately.
- C. Silt Fences:
  - 1. Promptly replace fabric that deteriorates unless need for fence has passed.
  - 2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-third of the height of the fence.
  - 3. Repair fences that are undercut by runoff or otherwise damaged, whether by runoff or other causes.
- D. Clean out temporary sediment control structures weekly and relocate soil on site.
- E. Place sediment in appropriate locations on site; do not remove from site.

#### 3.06 CLEAN UP

- A. Remove temporary measures after permanent measures have been installed, unless permitted to remain by Engineer.
- B. Clean out temporary sediment control structures that are to remain as permanent measures.
- C. Where removal of temporary measures would leave exposed soil, shape surface to an acceptable grade and finish to match adjacent ground surfaces.

END OF SECTION 31 25 00

### SECTION 31 37 00 - RIPRAP

### PART 1- GENERAL

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Riprap.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 31 23 23 - Fill and Backfill: Aggregate requirements.

### 1.03 UNIT PRICES - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Riprap: By the square yard (meter) of riprap area; summing the areas of individual layers, of riprap. Includes supply and placing riprap.

## 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standard.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Riprap: Provide in accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards.
- B. Aggregate: Granular fill as specified in Section 32 11 23.
- C. Geotextile Fabric: Non-biodegradable, woven, and Type II.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PLACEMENT

- A. Place geotextile fabric over substrate, lap edges and ends.
- B. Place riprap at culvert pipe ends, embankment slopes, and as indicated on construction documents.

END OF SECTION 31 37 00

RIPRAP 31 37 00 -1

### SECTION 32 11 23 - AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aggregate base course.
- B. Paving aggregates.

# 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Preparation of site for base course.
- B. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Compacted fill under base course.
- C. Section 31 23 33 Trenching for Site Utilities: Compacted fill over utility trenches under base course.
- D. Section 33 49 13 Manholes and Covers: Manholes including frames.
- E. Section 32 11 26 Bituminous Concrete Paving: Binder and finish asphalt courses.
- F. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Topsoil fill at areas adjacent to aggregate base course.

# 1.03 UNIT PRICES

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for general requirements applicable to unit prices for earthwork.
- B. Coarse Aggregate Type C: By the cubic yard. Includes supplying aggregate material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing, and compacting.
- C. Fine Aggregate Type B: By the cubic yard. Includes supplying aggregate material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, and compacting.

## 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. AASHTO M 147 Standard Specification for Materials for Aggregate and Soil-Aggregate Subbase, Base and Surface Courses; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; 1965 (2004).
- B. AASHTO T 180 Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 10-lb Rammer and a 18 in. Drop; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; 2001 (2004).
- C. ASTM C 136 Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2006.
- D. ASTM D 698 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3); 2000a.
- E. ASTM D 1556 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2000.
- F. ASTM D 1557 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3); 2002.
- G. ASTM D 2167 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 1994(R 2001).
- H. ASTM D 2487 Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2000.
- I. ASTM D 2922 Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- J. ASTM D 3017 Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.

K. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils; 2005.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Aggregate Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
- C. Compaction Density Test Reports.

### 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Provide sufficient quantities of aggregate to meet project schedule and requirements. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. General Requirements: Aggregate base course material shall consist of crushed stone, crushed or uncrushed gravel or other similar material having hard, strong, durable, particle free of adherent coatings and comply with the gradation requirements contained in Section 520 of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" referenced above.

# 2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for testing and analysis of aggregate materials.
- B. Where aggregate materials are specified using ASTM D 2487 classification, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- C. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.
- D. Provide materials of each type from same source throughout the Work.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify substrate has been inspected, gradients and elevations are correct, and is dry.

# 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Correct irregularities in substrate gradient and elevation by scarifying, reshaping, and recompacting.
- B. Do not place aggregate on soft, muddy, or frozen surfaces.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

A. The subgrade shall be prepared as called for on the plans in accordance with Section 31 22 16 of these specifications prior to placement of the base material.

- B. The aggregate material shall be placed on the subgrade with a mechanical spreader capable of placing the material to a uniform loose depth without segregation except that for areas inaccessible to a mechanical spreader, the aggregate material may be placed by other methods approved by the Owner's Representative.
- C. Where the required compacted thickness of base is 8 inches or less, the base material may be spread and compacted in one layer. Where the required compacted thickness is more than 8 inches, the base material shall be spread and compacted in 2 or more approximately equal layers. The minimum compacted thickness of any one layer shall be approximately 4 inches.
- D. Each layer of material shall have been sampled, tested, compacted and approved prior to placing succeeding layers of base material or pavement.
- E. No base material shall be placed on frozen subgrade or base.
- F. No traffic shall be allowed on the completed base course other than necessary local traffic and that developing from the operation of essential construction equipment as may be authorized by the Owner's Representative. Any defects that develop in the completed base or any damage caused by local or construction traffic shall be acceptably repaired at no cost to the Owner.
- G. The Contractor shall utilize methods of handling, hauling and placing which will minimize segregation and contamination. If segregation occurs, the Owner's Representative may require that changes be made in the Contractor's methods to minimize segregation, and may also require mixing on the roadway areas which may be necessary to correct any segregation. No additional compensation will be allowed for the work of mixing as may be required under this provision. Aggregate that is contaminated with foreign materials to the extent that the base course will not adequately serve its intended use will be removed and replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.04 SHAPING AND COMPACTING

- A. Within 48 hours after beginning the placing of a layer of the base, the Contractor shall begin machining and compacting of the layer. Each layer shall be maintained to the required cross section during compaction and each layer be compacted to the required density prior to placing the next layer.
- B. Each layer of the base shall be compacted to a density equal to at least 100% of that obtained by compacting a sample of the material in accordance with AASHTO T180.
- C. The base material shall be compacted at a moisture content which is approximately that required to produce a maximum density indicated by the above test method. The Contractor shall dry or add moisture to the material when required to provide a uniformly compacted and acceptable base.
- D. The final layer of base material shall be shaped to conform to the lines, grades and typical sections shown on the plans or established by the Owner's Representative. When completed, the base course shall be smooth, hard, dense, unyielding and well bonded. A broom drag may be used in connection with the final finishing and conditioning of the surface of the base course.
- E. After final shaping and compacting of the base, the Owner's Representative will check the surface of the base for conformance to the grade and typical section and determine the base thickness.
- F. The thickness of the base shall be within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.1 feet of the base thickness required by the plans. The maximum differential between the established grade and the base within any 100-foot section shall be 0.1 feet.
- G. Where the base material is placed in a trench section, the Contractor shall provide adequate drainage through the shoulders to protect the subgrade and base until such time as the shoulders are completed.

- H. The Contractor shall maintain the surface of the base by watering, machining, and rolling or dragging when necessary to prevent damage to the base by weather or traffic.
- I. Where the base or subgrade is damaged, the Contractor shall repair the damaged area; reshape the base to required lines, grades and typical sections; and recompact the base to the required density at no cost to the Owner.

# 3.05 TOLERANCES

- A. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch (6 mm) measured with 10 foot (3 m) straight edge.
- B. Scheduled Compacted Thickness: Within 1/4 inch.
- C. Variation From Design Elevation: Within 1/2 inch.

# 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection and testing.
- B. Compaction density testing will be performed on compacted aggregate base course in accordance with ASTM D1556.
- C. Results will be evaluated in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with ASTM D 698 ("standard Proctor").
- D. If tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.

#### 3.07 CLEAN-UP

A. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.

END OF SECTION 32 11 23

### SECTION 32 11 26 - BITUMINOUS CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aggregate base course.
- B. Single course bituminous concrete paving.
- C. Double course bituminous concrete paving.
- D. Surface sealer.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Preparation of site for paving and base.
- B. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Compacted subgrade for paving.
- C. Section 33 49 13 Manholes and Covers: Manholes, including frames.
- D. Section 32 17 23 Pavement markings.

# 1.03 UNIT PRICES

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices for requirements applicable to this section. Measurement and payment will be as follows:
- B. Asphalt Pavement Mix (Base Course): By the ton. Includes preparing base, tack coating surfaces, placing, compacting and rolling, testing. Includes mix design, supplying to site, testing.
- C. Asphalt Pavement Mix (Binder Course): By the ton. Includes preparing base, tack coating surfaces, placing, compacting and rolling, testing. Includes mix design, supplying to site, testing.
- D. Asphalt Pavement Mix (Wearing Course): By the ton. Includes preparing base, tack coating surfaces, placing, compacting and rolling, testing. Includes mix design, supplying to site, testing.
- E. Seal Coat: By the square yard. Includes preparing surfaces and applying.

### 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. AI MS-2 Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types; The Asphalt Institute; 1994, Sixth Edition.
- B. AI MS-19 A Basic Asphalt Emulsion Manual; The Asphalt Institute; Third Edition.
- C. ASTM D 946 Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction; 1982 (Reapproved 2005).

# 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standard.
- B. Mixing Plant: Conform to State of North Carolina Highways standard.
- C. Obtain materials from same source throughout.

# 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for paving work on public property.

# 1.07 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not place asphalt when ambient air or base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Aggregate for Base Course: In accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards.
- B. Aggregate for Binder Course: In accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards.
- C. Aggregate for Wearing Course: In accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards
- D. Fine Aggregate: In accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards.
- E. Mineral Filler: Finely ground particles of limestone, hydrated lime or other mineral dust, free of foreign matter.
- F. Primer: In accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards.
- G. Tack Coat: Homogeneous, medium curing, liquid asphalt.

## 2.02 BASE COURSE

- A. Earth Type Base Course: If allowed in the scope of this project, shall consist of approved selected soil materials. The material shall consist of topsoil, naturally or artificially proportioned sand-clay, or sand-clay gravel obtained from locations designated or approved by the owner's representative. Earth type base course shall comply with requirements of Section 520 for materials and construction procedures. The earth type base course shall be placed on a prepared sub-grade mixed, shaped, brought to proper moisture content and compacted in accordance with these specifications or as directed by the owner's representative.
- B. Stabilized Aggregate Base Course: If allowed in the scope of this project, shall consist of properly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel or stone, crushed slag, natural or processed sand that will readily compact to required density. Base course shall comply with requirements of Section 520 for materials and construction procedures. Stabilized aggregate base course shall be mixed, placed on a prepared sub-grade, brought to proper moisture content, and shaped. Compacted, and primed in accordance with these specifications or as directed by the owner's representative.
- C. Hot Laid Asphalt Aggregate Base Course (Black Base): If allowed in the scope of this project, shall consist of a base course of crushed stone, crushed slag, or gravel and asphalt cement mixed in an approved plant and constructed on a prepared sub-grade. Hot laid asphalt aggregate base course shall comply with requirements of Section 610 for materials and construction procedures.

### 2.03 TACK COAT

- A. Asphalt Emulsion Grade SS01: This grade may be diluted with not more than 50% water. Note: ss01 shall meet requirements as specified in section 605 of standard specs manual (latest edition) of the North Carolina Department of Transportation.
- B. Apply to contract surfaces of previously constructed bituminous concrete or Portland cement concrete and similar surfaces. Distribute at rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gallons per square yard of surface.

- C. Apply tack coat by brush to contact surfaces of curbs, gutters, manholes, and other structures projecting into or abutting asphalt concrete pavement.
- D. Allow tack coat to dry to proper conditions of tackiness to receive paving before proceeding with work.

### 2.04 HOT LAID ASPHALTIC CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE

- A. Mineral aggregate and asphalt cement shall conform to Section 610 for materials and construction procedures.
- B. Aggregate and asphalt cement shall be mixed in an approved plant in such proportions that compositions by weight of finished mixture shall be within range limits as specified in Section 610.
- C. The surface course shall be constructed on a prepared base in accordance with these specifications and to the lines, grades, and typical cross section shown on the plans or as directed by owner's representative.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that compacted subgrade is dry and ready to support paving and imposed loads.
- B. Verify gradients and elevations of base are correct.

### 3.02 BASE COURSE

A. Place and compact base course.

# 3.03 PREPARATION - TACK COAT

- A. Apply tack coat in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply tack coat on asphalt or concrete surfaces over subgrade surface at uniform rate of 1/3 gal/sq yd.
- C. Coat surfaces of manhole frames with oil to prevent bond with asphalt pavement. Do not tack coat these surfaces.

### 3.04 PLACING ASPHALT PAVEMENT - SINGLE COURSE

- A. Install Work in accordance with State of North Carolina Highways standards.
- B. Place asphalt within 24 hours of applying primer or tack coat.
- C. Compact pavement by rolling to specified density. Do not displace or extrude pavement from position. Hand compact in areas inaccessible to rolling equipment.
- D. Perform rolling with consecutive passes to achieve even and smooth finish without roller marks.

### 3.05 PLACING ASPHALT PAVEMENT - DOUBLE COURSE

- A. Place asphalt binder course within 24 hours of applying primer or tack coat.
- B. Compact pavement by rolling to specified density. Do not displace or extrude pavement from position. Hand compact in areas inaccessible to rolling equipment.

C. Perform rolling with consecutive passes to achieve even and smooth finish, without roller marks.

# 3.06 TOLERANCES

- A. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch measured with 10 foot straight edge.
- B. Variation from True Elevation: Within 1/2 inch.

# 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements, for general requirements for quality control.
- B. Provide field inspection and testing. Take samples and perform tests in accordance with AI MS-2.

END OF SECTION 32 11 26

### SECTION 32 16 13 - CONCRETE CURBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The general provisions of Division 1 shall govern this section.

### 1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of concrete curbing is shown on the drawings.
- B. Concrete curbing shall be constructed as detailed on the drawing. All curbing shall be "formed" in the road curvature and radii. Extruded curbing is permitted on tangents.

# 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All work and materials shall comply with North Carolina Department of Transportation standard specifications, latest edition.

### 1.04 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Concrete curb shall be applied only when ambient temperature is above 50 degrees F and when temperature has not been below 35 degrees F for 12 hours immediately prior to application.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete shall be 3000 psi mix from an approved batch plant using Portland cement ASTM C150-67, Type 1, sand ASTM C33-67 and coarse aggregate ASTM C33-67.
- B. Expansion joint material for joints shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M-173. All preformed point fillers shall have a thickness equal to the width of the joint required (1/2-inch minimum) and shall be furnished in lengths equal to the widths of the slab in which they are to be installed. The upper surface shall be 1/2-inch below the surface of the slab.
- C. Curing materials shall be burlap cloth conforming To AASHTO B-182; waterproof, polyethylene film; or liquid curing compounds conforming to AASHTO M-148 for Type 2 (white pigmented).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONCRETE CURBS

- A. The curbs shall be installed as detailed on the Drawings.
- B. The subgrade shall be thoroughly compacted and finished to a smooth, firm surface, and shall be moist at the time the concrete is placed. Any concrete that settles after placement shall be removed and replaced without additional compensation as directed by the owner's representative.
- C. Forms shall be of wood or metal and of a depth equal to the thickness of the concrete course. They shall be free from warp, and of sufficient strength, when staked, to hold the alignment

- during the concrete placing and finishing operations. All forms shall be cleaned and oiled each time they are used, before concrete is placed against them. Flexible or curved form shall be used on curves as necessary in order to prevent a chord effect in the alignment of the finished work.
- D. The concrete shall be batched and mixed in an approved batch plant and transported to the job site in a truck mixer. Unless otherwise indicated on the plan, concrete curbs, gutters, and curb and gutters shall be constructed uniform section ten feet in length, except where shorter sections are necessary for closures; but no section shall be less than 4 feet in length. The sections shall be separated by sheet steel templates or dividing plates set normal to the face and top of the curb. The plates shall be carefully set during the placing of the concrete and allowed to remain in place until the concrete has set sufficiently to hold its shape, but shall be removed while the forms are still in place.
- E. Concrete shall be deposited in the forms in such manner that the forms will not be displaced out of grade or alignment. During the placing operations, the concrete shall be spaded or vibrated through out the entire mass and especially against the forms and points. The surface of the concrete shall be tamped, floated, troweled, roomed, corners edged, and finished to the typical section, lines, and grades as soon as practical after the placing of the concrete. The forms shall be left in place until the concrete has set sufficiently that their removal will not injure the concrete.
- F. The curb shall be rubbed with a brush and water to leave a smooth finish free of voids and honeycomb.
- G. The contractor shall pay particular attention to the alignment of curbs on tangents and maintain a smooth radius on curves.
- H. The contractor shall remove any curb that is cracked, settled, honeycombed, or in poor alignment or elevation as determined by the owner's representative.
- I. The contractor shall backfill all curbs with clean topsoil, smooth, free of clogs or debris. The contractor shall fine-grade the backfill to top of curb elevation, ready for plating. The contractor shall replace all curb that is damaged or mud stained beyond cleaning. All curbs shall be left clean and shall present a neat appearance after the back-filling operation.
- J. Preformed expansion joints 3/4 inch thick, extending the full depth of the concrete slab, shall be constructed at the locations indicated on the plans and at other locations as follows:
- 1. Transverse expansion joints shall be placed at intervals of not more than 100 feet in all new concrete pavement, sidewalk and curb and gutter.
- K. Contraction joints for concrete curbing shall be placed not the exceed 10 feet o/c, by scoring after loading operations are completed. Contraction joints shall be 1 inch deep by 1/2 inch wide and shall be edged and finished smooth and true to line.
- L. As soon as the concrete curb has hardened sufficiently, the forms for the exposed surfaces shall be removed and the concrete for the curb face and top shall be floated and troweled as necessary to provide a smooth uniform finish. Templates shall be left in place a sufficient length of time to prevent bonding at the joint.
- M. After the surface of the gutter has been properly shaped and prepared and the water sheen has disappeared, the final finish shall be by brooming. Brooming shall be transverse to the line of traffic. All joints shall be in a vertical plane perpendicular to the curb face. Joints shall be clean with corners well rounded. All corners shall be edged to conform to the typical cross section. Tool marks shall be eliminated.
- N. Concrete curb shall be backfilled within 48 hours after pouring.

END OF SECTION 32 16 13

# SECTION 32 17 23 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The Drawings and provisions of the General Conditions, Supplemental Conditions, and Division 1 are included as part of this Section as though bound here.

# 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. The General Provisions of Division 1 shall govern this section.
- B. Construction drawings.
- C. Section 32 11 26 Bituminous Concrete Paving.

### 1.03 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of traffic stripe painting is shown on the drawings.
- B. All parking stalls, centerline of entrance drives and other markings as shown on the drawings.
- C. All handicap symbols, directional arrows, turn symbols, stop and yield symbols, no parking stripping, as required for traffic control, are a part of this specification.
- D. All work and materials shall comply with appropriate department of transportation standard specifications, latest edition.

## 1.04 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Traffic painting shall be applied only when ambient temperature is above 50 degrees F. and when temperature has not been below 35 degrees F. for 12 hours immediately prior to application. Do not apply when pavement is wet, unclean, or damaged.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 PAINT

- A. Paint shall be "white" traffic stripe suitable for traffic line marking on highways with composition conforming to appropriate department of transportation standard specifications; however, all sections related to pavement shall be excluded.
- B. Paint color for fire lanes and for handicap symbols shall be as per local codes. All paint used shall be suitable for traffic line marking and shall conform to appropriate department of transportation standard specifications.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.01 PARKING LOT STRIPE PAINTING

- A. All parking stalls and centerline striping shall be 4" wide with a wet film thickness of 0.015 inches.
- B. The paint shall dry to touch within 15 minutes, shall dry to no pick-up within 30 minutes when tested in accordance with ASTM C-711. The color after drying shall be pure flat white, free from tint, furnishing the maximum amount capacity for both daylight and artificial light.
- C. The contractor shall certify via letter to the engineer that the paint and execution of work

complies with the appropriate North Carolina Department of Transportation standard specifications.

END OF SECTION 32 17 23

### SECTION 32 31 13 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Chain-link fences.
- 2. Swing gates.
- 3. Horizontal-slide gates.
- 4. Privacy slats.

# B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete **equipment** bases/pads for gate operators and controls and post footings.
- 2. Section 281300 "Video Intercom and Access Control" for gate controls.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, equipment bases, and other preparatory work specified elsewhere.
  - 2. Review sequence of operation for each type of gate operator.
  - 3. Review coordination of interlocked equipment specified in this Section and elsewhere.
  - 4. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

# 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
    - a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
    - b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
    - c. Accessories:
    - d. Gates and hardware.
    - e. Gate operators, including operating instructions and motor characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of fence and gate assembly.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Include accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.

- 3. Gate Operator: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, drive arrangement, mounting, and grounding provisions.
- 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-applied finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of component with factory-applied finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Polymer-Coated Components: In 6-inch lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural performance of chain-link fence and gate frameworks, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For **professional engineer**
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, and gate.
- C. Product Test Reports: For framework strength according to ASTM F 1043, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gate operators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

# 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing fence grounding; member company of NETA or an NRTL.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Emergency Access Requirements: According to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for gates with automatic gate operators serving as a required means of access.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: **Installer agrees** to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure to comply with performance requirements.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - c. Faulty operation of gate operators and controls.
  - 2. Warranty Period: **Two (2)** years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design chain-link fence and gate frameworks.
- B. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate frameworks shall withstand the design wind loads and stresses for fence height(s) and under exposure conditions indicated according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
  - 1. Design Wind Load: **120 mph**.
    - a. Minimum Post Size: Determine according to ASTM F 1043 for post spacing not to exceed **10 feet** for Material **Group IA**, **ASTM F 1043**, **Schedule 40 steel pipe**
    - b. Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Determine according to CLFMI WLG 2445, based on mesh size and pattern specified.
- C. Lightning Protection System: Maximum resistance-to-ground value of 25 ohms at each grounding location along fence under normal dry conditions.

## 2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist according to "CLFMI Product Manual" and requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Fabric Height: **As indicated on Drawings**.
  - 2. Steel Wire for Fabric: Wire diameter of **0.192 inch**.
    - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches.
    - b. Polymer-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 668, Class 2a over aluminum-coated steel wire.
      - 1) Color: **Black**, according to ASTM F 934.
    - c. Coat selvage ends of metallic-coated fabric before the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.

- 3. Aluminum Wire Fabric: ASTM F 1183, with **mill** finish, and wire diameter of **0.192** inch.
  - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches.
- 4. Selvage: **Knuckled at both selvages**.

### 2.3 FENCE FRAMEWORK

- A. Posts and Rails: ASTM F 1043 for framework, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 based on the following:
  - 1. Fence Height: **As indicated on Drawings**.
  - 2. Light-Industrial-Strength Material: **Group IC-L**, **round steel pipe**, **electric-resistance-welded pipe**.
    - a. Line Post: **1.9 inches in diameter**.
    - b. End, Corner, and Pull Posts: **2.375 inches**.
  - 3. Heavy-Industrial-Strength Material: Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40.
    - a. Line Post: 2.375 inches in diameter.
    - b. End, Corner, and Pull Posts: **2.875 inches in diameter**.
  - 4. Horizontal Framework Members: **top and bottom** rails according to ASTM F 1043.
    - a. Top Rail: **1.66 inches in diameter**.
  - 5. Brace Rails: ASTM F 1043.
  - 6. Metallic Coating for Steel Framework:
    - a. Type A: Not less than minimum 2.0-oz./sq. ft. average zinc coating according to ASTM A 123/A 123M or 4.0-oz./sq. ft. zinc coating according to ASTM A 653/A 653M.
    - b. Type B: Zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film
    - c. External, Type B: Zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film. Internal, Type D, consisting of 81 percent, not less than 0.3-mil-thick, zinc-pigmented coating.
    - d. Type C: Zn-5-Al-MM alloy, consisting of not less than 1.8-oz./sq. ft. coating.
    - e. Coatings: Any coating above.
  - 7. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
    - a. Color: **Black**, according to ASTM F 934.

### 2.4 TENSION WIRE

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch-diameter, marcelled tension wire according to ASTM A 817 or ASTM A 824, with the following metallic coating:
  - 1. Type I: Aluminum coated (aluminized).

- 2. Type II: Zinc coated (galvanized) by **electrolytic** process, with the following minimum coating weight:
  - a. Class 3: Not less than 0.8 oz./sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.
  - b. Class 4: Not less than 1.2 oz./sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.
  - c. Class 5: Not less than 2 oz./sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.
  - d. Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
- 3. Type III: Zn-5-Al-MM alloy with the following minimum coating weight:
  - a. Class 60: Not less than 0.6 oz./sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.
  - b. Class 100: Not less than 1 oz./sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.
  - c. Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
- B. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: **0.148-inch-**diameter, tension wire according to ASTM F 1664, **Class 2b** over **aluminum-**coated steel wire.
  - 1. Color: **Black**, according to ASTM F 934.
- C. Aluminum Wire: 0.192-inch-diameter tension wire, mill finished, according to ASTM B 211, Alloy 6061-T94 with 50,000-psi minimum tensile strength.

## 2.5 SWING GATES

- A. General: ASTM F 900 for gate posts and **single and double** swing gate types.
  - 1. Gate Leaf Width: **As indicated**.
  - 2. Framework Member Sizes and Strength: Based on gate fabric height as indicated.
- B. Pipe and Tubing:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated Steel: ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; manufacturer's standard protective coating and finish.
  - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 429/B 429M; manufacturer's standard finish.
  - 3. Gate Posts: **Round tubular steel**.
  - 4. Gate Frames and Bracing: **Round tubular steel**.
- C. Frame Corner Construction: Welded.
- D. Hardware:
  - 1. Hinges: **360-degree inward and outward** swing.
  - 2. Latch: Permitting operation from both sides of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate.
  - 3. Lock: Manufacturer's standard internal device.
  - 4. Padlock and Chain: Provided by Owner, however; Contractor shall coordinate lock type with Owner to be certain gate can accept the lock.
  - 5. Closer: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.6 FITTINGS

A. Provide fittings according to ASTM F 626.

- B. Post Caps: Provide for each post.
  - 1. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.
- C. Rail and Brace Ends: For each gate, corner, pull, and end post.
- D. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
  - 1. Top Rail Sleeves: **Pressed-steel or round-steel tubing** not less than 6 inches long.
  - 2. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting **bottom** rails to posts.
- E. Tension and Brace Bands: **Pressed steel**.
- F. Tension Bars: **Steel**, length not less than 2 inches shorter than full height of chain-link fabric. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.
- G. Truss Rod Assemblies: **Steel, hot-dip galvanized after threading** rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.
- H. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: According to ASTM F 626.
  - 1. Standard Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, according to the following:
    - a. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: **0.106-inch-**diameter wire; **galvanized coating thickness matching coating thickness of chain-link fence fabric**.
    - b. Aluminum: ASTM B 211; Alloy 1350-H19; **0.148-inch-**diameter, mill-finished wire.

### I. Finish:

- 1. Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz./sq. ft. of zinc.
  - a. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
- 2. Aluminum: Mill finish.

### 2.7 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- B. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating, and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer for exterior applications.

### 2.8 GROUNDING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- B. Connectors and Grounding Rods: Listed and labeled for complying with UL 467.
  - 1. Connectors for Below-Grade Use: Exothermic welded type.
  - 2. Grounding Rods: Copper-clad steel, 5/8 by 96 inches.

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a certified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

### 3.3 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install chain-link fencing according to ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements specified.
  - 1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts **in concrete** at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
  - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
  - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
    - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
    - b. Concealed Concrete: Place top of concrete **as indicated on Drawings** to allow covering with surface material.
    - c. Posts Set into Sleeves in Concrete: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with **nonshrink**, **nonmetallic grout**, mixed and placed according to anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions. Finish anchorage joint to slope away from post to drain water.

- d. Posts Set into Holes in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with **nonshrink**, **nonmetallic grout** mixed and placed according to anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions. Finish anchorage joint to slope away from post to drain water.
- D. Terminal Posts: Install terminal end, corner, and gate posts according to ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of **15 degrees or more**. For runs exceeding 500 feet, space pull posts an equal distance between corner or end posts.
- E. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at **96 inches** o.c.
- F. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
  - 1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 72 inches or higher, on fences with top rail, and at two-third fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.
- G. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch-diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
  - 1. Extended along **top** and **bottom** of fence fabric. Install top tension wire through post cap loops. Install bottom tension wire within 6 inches of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
  - 2. Extended along top of **extended posts** and top of fence fabric to support barbed tape.
- H. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
- I. Intermediate and Bottom Rails: Secure to posts with fittings.
- J. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to **outside** of enclosing framework. Leave **1-inch** bottom clearance between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
- K. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts, with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.

- L. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric according to ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
  - 1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.
- M. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of fence opposite the fabric side. **Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.**

## 3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

### 3.5 GROUNDING AND BONDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fence and Gate Grounding:
  - 1. Ground for fence and fence posts shall be a separate system from ground for gate and gate posts.
  - 2. Install ground rods and connections at maximum intervals of **1500 feet**.
  - 3. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of **750 feet**.
  - 4. Ground fence on each side of gates and other fence openings.
    - a. Bond metal gates to gate posts.
    - b. Bond across openings, with and without gates, except openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
- C. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a ground rod located a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- D. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground according to IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
  - 1. Make grounding connections to each barbed wire strand with wire-to-wire connectors designed for this purpose.
  - 2. Make grounding connections to each barbed tape coil with connectors designed for this purpose.

## F. Connections:

- 1. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
- 2. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
- 3. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
- 4. Make above-grade ground connections with mechanical fasteners.
- 5. Make below-grade ground connections with exothermic welds.
- 6. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **Owner will engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests.
- B. Prepare test reports.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chain-link fences and gates.

END OF SECTION 323113

### SECTION 32 91 13 - SOIL PREPARATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### **SCOPE**

The work under this section shall consist of providing all work, materials, labor, equipment and supervision necessary to provide and prepare soil for seeding, sodding, and landscape planting. Included are the following topics:

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

## A. PART 1 - GENERAL

Scope

**Related Sections** 

**Unit Prices** 

**Definitions** 

Regulatory Requirements

Reference Standards

**Submittals** 

**Quality Assurance** 

## B. PART 2 - MATERIALS

**Topsoil** 

Soil Amendments

Fertilizer

## C. PART 3 - EXECUTION

Subgrade Soil Preparation

Placing Topsoil

Organic Soil Amendments and pH Adjustment

Fertilizer

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Topsoil material.
- B. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Preparation of subsoil and placement of topsoil in preparation for the work of this section.
- C. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Topsoil material.

## 1.03 UNIT PRICES - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Topsoil:
- 1. Basis of Measurement: By the cubic yard.
- 2. Basis of Payment: Includes topsoil, placing topsoil.

#### 1.04 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.
- B. Balled and Burlapped stock: Exterior plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown, with ball size not less than sizes indicated diameter and depth

recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of tree or shrub required; wrapped, tied, rigidly supported, and drum-laced as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.

- C. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted exterior plants grown in a container with well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for kind, type, and size of exterior plant required.
- D. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- E. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.
- F. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant or desiccant.
- G. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails or slugs), rodents, unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria and viruses.
- H. Planting Soil: The following types of standardized topsoil: existing in-place surface topsoil, surface soil modified to become topsoil imported topsoil, or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- I. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately beneath planting soil.
- J. Weeds but are not limited to: Include Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

## 1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with regulatory agencies for fertilizer and herbicide composition.

### 1.06 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D5268-07 Standard Specification for Topsoil Used for Landscaping
- B. USDA Agricultural Handbook No. 60 Diagnosis and Improvement of Saline and Alkali Soils

SOIL PREPARATION

C. American Nursery and Landscape Association

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened, labeled, and undamaged containers showing weight, name of manufacturer and indication of conformance with state and federal laws (as applicable). Store and handle materials according to manufacturer's and supplier's recommendations.

#### B. Bulk Materials:

- 1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements or on existing turf areas or plants.
- 2. Provide erosion control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems or walkways.
- 3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime and/or soil amendments with appropriate certificates. Provide copies of these to the Owner/Architect upon request.

## C. Pesticides:

- 1. Handle all pesticides in accordance with federal, state and local rules and regulations.
- 2. Do not store these products near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements or on existing turf areas or plants.

## 1.08 SUBMITTALS

- A. Soil Testing: For existing soil in landscape areas, provide testing results and analysis or recommendations from an independent third party testing laboratory to correct deficiencies or problematic soil conditions.
- B. Material Test Reports: Provide copies of all quality assurance testing reports for all soils intended for use in planting or turf areas on the site. Reports required for at least: existing surface soil, manufactured soil, imported soil in planting areas and soil intended for use as planting soil (if different than existing surface soil).
- C. Provide product data, including applicable analytical data, for soil amendments including but not limited to:
  - Peat products
  - Lime
  - Fertilizer

SOIL PREPARATION

## 1.09 OUALITY ASSURANCE

The Contractor shall retain the services of an independent soil testing laboratory to process soil sampling, testing and analysis of salvaged and imported soil and amendments as required by this section and elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The materials testing consulting Architect/Engineer shall be subject to approval by the Owner.

Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

Soil Analysis: A soil test and analysis of a wide representation of soils through out the intended planting and turf areas. For each unamended soil type and each selected location, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil. The test results should also include the soil-testing laboratory's recommendations for any corrective measures needed to grow healthy, thriving specified plant material or turf on the site.

Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.

The soil-testing laboratory shall be given samples with information including depth and location, and number of samples taken over the entire site. If the Owner or Architect chose, the contractor may be required to have the soil-testing laboratory oversee the soil sampling. A minimum of three representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.

Report suitability of and recommended alterations of tested soil for healthy, thriving plant & turf growth.

Based upon the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.

Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

Fertilizer shall be delivered to the site in original, sealed containers, and stored in a waterproof space. Containers shall bear the manufacturer's name, analysis, trademark and guarantee unless otherwise approved by Owner or Architect.

Collection of soil specimens shall be complete in accordance with accepted practices, and shall be subject to approval by the Owner.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 TOPSOIL

Clean salvaged or imported material capable of passing the 1" sieve and meeting the requirements of Section 625.2(1) of the Standard Specifications for Highway Construction. The material shall be free of rocks, gravel, wood, debris, and of noxious weeds and their seeds.

### 2.02 SOIL AMENDMENTS

Soil amendments acceptable as part of a backfill mix (if appropriate according to soils testing report) include but not limited to:

- Peat Moss Type 1 sphagnum, weed and seed free, 3.1-5.0 pH
- Sedge Peat decomposed peat with no identifiable fibers
- Leaf Compost screened and free of trash and other debris
- Compost standard commercial grade compost of sheep or cow manure
- Pine Bark potting grade pine bark with no particles larger than 1/2" (1.3 cm), less than 10% wood fiber
- Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
- Class: Class T, with a minimum 99 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum 75 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.
- Class: Class O, with a minimum 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) (0.25 mm) sieve.
- Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone.
- Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum 99 percent passing through no. 6 (3.35 mm) sieve and a maximum 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425 mm) sieve.
- Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.
- Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.
- Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- Agricultural Gypsum: Finely ground, containing a minimum of 90 percent calcium sulfate with 90 percent passing through No. 50 (0.30 mm) sieve.
- Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials.
- Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.
- Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

Soil amendments shall be capable of passing the 1" sieve. The material shall be free of rocks, gravel, wood, debris, and of noxious weeds and their seeds. Any soil amendments other than those listed above should be approved by Owner and/or Architect prior to use on site.

SOIL PREPARATION

### 2.03 FERTILIZER

Use commercially available fertilizer meeting the following requirements: commercial grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the composition as recommended by the findings and recommendations in the soils report.

All fertilizers shall be delivered fully labeled according to applicable regulations, bearing name, trade name or trademark of producer, along with producer's warranty. Application amounts of fertilizer and lime will be governed by the recommendations of the soil test.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.01 SUBGRADE SOIL PREPARATION

Remove or mow all vegetation to a height 3". Remove all rocks, debris, and litter that will prevent compliance with topsoil and seeding specifications. Final grade area to within 2" of subgrade elevations. Rake, till or disc the subsoil to a depth of 2"-4" to allow aeration.

#### 3.02 PLACING TOPSOIL

Place topsoil to achieve final grades indicated on the Drawings, allowing for settlement. Place topsoil to the depth shown on the Drawings. If no depth is shown provide a minimum of 4" of topsoil.

Do not apply topsoil to saturated or frozen subgrades.

# 3.03 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS AND pH ADJUSTMENT

Provide organic soil amendments and lime as recommended soil analysis. If topsoil has been determined acceptable by a soil test, no amendments are needed.

Uniformly apply organic soil amendments and lime, and incorporate into the top 4"-6" of soil by tilling or discing.

## 3.04 PRE-EMERGENT HERBICIDE

Pre-emergent herbicides shall be applied in accordance with any local, state, or federal guidelines to control weeds in planting and turf areas.

### 3.05 FERTILIZER

Fertilizer shall be applied in accordance with the recommendations of the soils test.

## END OF SECTION 32 91 13

### SECTION 32 92 19 - SEEDING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. Seeding, mulching and fertilizer.
- D. Maintenance.

# 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Topsoil material.
- B. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Preparation of subsoil and placement of topsoil in preparation for the work of this section.
- C. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Topsoil material.

#### 1.03 UNIT PRICES - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Topsoil:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes topsoil, placing topsoil.
- C. Grassed Areas:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the square yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes preparation of subsoil, placing topsoil, seeding, watering and maintenance to specified time limit.

### 1.04 DEFINITIONS

A. Weeds: Include Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

# 1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with regulatory agencies for fertilizer and herbicide composition.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver grass seed mixture in sealed containers. Seed in damaged packaging is not acceptable. Deliver seed mixture in containers showing percentage of seed mix, year of production, net weight, date of packaging, and location of packaging.

#### 1.07 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Furnish maintenance of seeded areas for three months from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Maintain seeded areas immediately after placement until grass is well established and exhibits a vigorous growing condition.

SEEDING 32 92 19 -1

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SEED MIXTURE

A. Seed Mixture: Refer to seeding schedule located on construction documents sheet C-1.0, General Notes.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that prepared soil base is ready to receive the work of this Section.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with Section 31 22 00.
- B. Place topsoil in accordance with Section 31 22 00.

### 3.03 FERTILIZING

- A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to roller compaction.
- C. Do not apply fertilizer at same time or with same machine as will be used to apply seed.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

# 3.04 SEEDING

- A. Apply seed in accordance with NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, July 2006.
- B. Do not seed areas in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- C. Do not sow immediately following rain, when ground is too dry, or during windy periods.
- D. Immediately following seeding and compacting, apply mulch to a thickness of 1/8 inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- E. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.
- F. Following germination, immediately re-seed areas without germinated seeds that are larger than 4 by 4 inches.
- G.. Finished surface of seeded area and underlying grade to be smooth without dips, trenches, or depressions. Any irregularities should be repaired immediately and the site should be monitored regularly to address problems as they occur.

### 3.05 MAINTENANCE

- A. Mow grass at regular intervals to maintain at a maximum height of 2-1/2 inches. Do not cut more than 1/3 of grass blade at any one mowing.
- B. Water to prevent grass and soil from drying out and to maintain healthy, viable turf grass.
- C. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remedy damage resulting from improper use of herbicides.
- D. Immediately reseed areas which show bare spots.

END OF SECTION 32 92 19

SEEDING 32 92 19 -2

### SECTION 32 92 23 - SODDING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. Fertilizing.
- D. Sod installation.
- E. Maintenance.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Topsoil material.
- B. Section 31 22 00 Grading: Preparation of subsoil and placement of topsoil in preparation for the work of this section.
- C. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Topsoil material.

## 1.03 UNIT PRICES - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Topsoil:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes topsoil, placing topsoil.
- C. Sodded Areas:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the square yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes preparation of subsoil, placing topsoil, sodding, watering and maintenance to specified time limit.

### 1.04 REFERENCES

A. TPI (SPEC) - Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding; Turfgrass Producers International; 1995.

#### 1.05 DEFINITIONS

A. Weeds: Includes Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

# 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with regulatory agencies for fertilizer and herbicide composition.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver sod on pallets. Protect exposed roots from dehydration.
- B. Do not deliver more sod than can be laid within 24 hours.

SODDING 32 92 23 - 1

## 1.08 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Furnish service and maintenance of sodded areas for three months from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Maintain sodded areas immediately after placement until grass is well established and exhibits a vigorous growing condition.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Sod: TPI, Certified Turfgrass Sod quality; cultivated grass sod; type indicated in plant schedule on Drawings; with strong fibrous root system, free of stones, burned or bare spots; containing no more than 5 weeds per 1000 sq ft. Minimum age of 18 months, with root development that will support its own weight without tearing, when suspended vertically by holding the upper two corners.
- B. Topsoil: as specified in Section 32 91 13.
- C. Fertilizer: recommended for grass, with fifty percent of the elements derived from organic sources; of proportion necessary to eliminate any deficiencies of topsoil, as indicated by analysis.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that prepared soil base is ready to receive the work of this section.

# 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with Section 31 22 00.
- B. Place topsoil in accordance with Section 31 22 00.

### 3.03 FERTILIZING

- A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to installation of sod.
- C. Apply fertilizer no more than 48 hours before laying sod.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

## 3.04 LAYING SOD

- A. Moisten prepared surface immediately prior to laying sod.
- B. Lay sod immediately after delivery to site to prevent deterioration.
- C. Lay sod tight with no open joints visible, and no overlapping; stagger end joints 12 inches minimum. Do not stretch or overlap sod pieces.
- D. Lay smooth. Align with adjoining grass areas.
- E. On slopes 6 inches per foot and steeper, lay sod perpendicular to slope and secure every row with wooden pegs at maximum 2 feet on center. Drive pegs flush with soil portion of sod.
- F. Water sodded areas immediately after installation. Saturate sod to 4 inches of soil.

SODDING 32 92 23 - 2

- G. After sod and soil have dried, roll sodded areas to ensure good bond between sod and soil and to remove minor depressions and irregularities. Roll sodded areas with roller not exceeding 150#/ft of roller width.
- H. Finished surface of sod and underlying grade to be smooth without dips, trenches, or depressions. Any irregularities should be repaired immediately and the site should be monitored regularly to address problems as they occur.

### 3.05 MAINTENANCE

- A. Mow grass at regular intervals to maintain at a maximum height of 2-1/2 inches. Do not cut more than 1/3 of grass blade at any one mowing.
- B. Water to prevent grass and soil from drying out or as otherwise required to maintain healthy, viable turf grass.
- C. Roll surface to remove irregularities.
- D. Level out any irregularities in soil/turf grade.
- E. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remedy damage resulting from improper use of herbicides.
- F. Immediately replace sod to areas which show deterioration or bare spots.

END OF SECTION 32 92 23

SODDING 32 92 23 - 3

### SECTION 33 40 00 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Storm drainage piping, fittings, and accessories.
- B. Catch basins, Paved area drainage, Site surface drainage, and Detention basin.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 23 00 Excavation: Excavating of trenches.
- B. Section 31 23 23 Fill and Backfill: Bedding and backfilling.
- C. Section 31 23 33 Trenching for Site Utilities: Excavating, bedding, and backfilling.
- D. Section 33 49 13 Manholes and Covers.
- E. Section 03 30 00 Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete for cleanout base pad construction.

#### 1.03 UNIT PRICES

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Pipe and Fittings:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the linear foot.
- C. Catch Basins and Cleanouts:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the unit for a nominal depth of 6 feet.

# 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. AASHTO M 36 Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated, for Sewers and Drains; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; 2003.
- B. ASTM A 74 Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2005.
- C. ASTM C 12 Standard Practice for Installing Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines; 2006.
- D. ASTM C 14 Standard Specification for Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe; 2005a.
- E. ASTM C 14M Standard Specification for Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe; 2005a.
- F. ASTM C 76 Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe; 2005b.
- G. ASTM C 76M Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe; 2005b.
- H. ASTM C 425 Standard Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings; 2004.
- ASTM C 443 Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets: 2005a.
- J. ASTM C 443M Standard Specification for Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets; 2005a.
- K. ASTM C 564 Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2003a
- L. ASTM C 700 Standard Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength, and Perforated; 2005.

- M. ASTM D 1785 Standard Specification for Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2005.
- N. ASTM D 2321 Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications; 2005.
- O. ASTM D 2729 Standard Specification for Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2003.
- P. ASTM D 2751 Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2005.
- Q. ASTM D 3034 Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2004a.

### 1.05 DEFINITIONS

A. Bedding: Fill placed under, beside and directly over pipe, prior to subsequent backfill operations.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

## 1.07 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for materials and installation of the Work of this section.

### 1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS – NOT USED

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 SEWER PIPE MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Pipe: Reinforced, AASHTO M170, Class III with Wall type A; mesh reinforcement; bell and spigot end joints.
- B. Reinforced Concrete Pipe Joint Device: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M) rubber compression gasket joint.
- C. High Density Polyethylene Pipe: N-12 WT (Watertight) by Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc. All installation shall conform to the plans and the manufacturer's recommendations.

# 2.02 CATCH BASIN, CLEANOUT, AND AREA DRAIN COMPONENTS

A. Concrete: Unless otherwise specified, concrete and reinforced concrete shall conform to ASTM C-94 and have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi. The concrete mixture shall have air content by volume of concrete, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer, of 3 to 6 percent when maximum size of coarse aggregates exceeds 1-1/2 inches. Air content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 231. The concrete covering over steel reinforcing shall be not less than 1 inch thick for covers and not less than 1-1/2 inches thick for walls and flooring. Concrete covering deposited directly against the ground shall have a thickness of at least 3 inches between steel and ground. Expansion-joint filler material shall conform to ASTM D 1725, D 1752, or AASHTO M 33 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard conforming to the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.

- B. Mortar: Mortar for drainage structures, and brick or block construction shall conform to ASTM C 270, Type S. The quantity of water in the mixture shall be sufficient to produce a stiff workable mortar but in no case shall exceed 7 gallons of water per sack of cement. Water shall be clean and free of harmful acids, alkalies, and organic impurities. The mortar shall be used within 30 minutes after the ingredients are mixed with water.
- C. Precast Concrete Segmental Blocks: Shall conform to ASTM C 139, not more than 8 inches thick, not less than 8 inches long and of such shape that joints can be sealed effectively and bonded with cement mortar.
- D. Brick: Shall conform to ASTM C 62, Grade SW; ASTM C 55, Grade S-I or S-II; or ASTM C 32, Grade MS. Mortar for jointing and plastering shall consist of one part Portland cement and two parts fine sand. Lime may be added to the mortar in a quantity not more than 25 percent of the volume of cement. The joints shall be filled completely and shall be smooth and free from surplus mortar on the inside of the structure. Brick structures shall be plastered with 3/4 inch of mortar over the entire outside surface of the walls. For square or rectangular structures, brick shall be laid in stretcher courses with a header course every sixth course. For round structures, brick shall be laid radially with every sixth course a stretcher course.
- E. Reinforcing Steel: Steel reinforcement shall be protected at all times from damage and when placed in the work shall be free from dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, paint, oil, or other foreign materials. Deformed steel bar reinforcement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 615 for Grade 60. Tolerances for bending and cutting during fabrication shall be in accordance with the "Manual of Standard Practice" published by the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute. Bars shall be bent cold to the details shown on the plans. Cold drawn steel wire to be used as spirals or in fabricated form for the reinforcement of concrete shall meet the requirements of ASTM A 82. Welded wire fabric shall conform to ASTM A185.
- F. Iron Casting: Castings shall be boldly filleted at angles, and the rises shall be sharp and perfect. No sharp, unfileted angles or corners will be permitted. They shall be true to pattern in form and dimensions, free from pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes, and other defects affecting their strength and value for the service intended. All castings shall be sand blasted or otherwise effectively cleaned of scale and sand so as to present a smooth, clean, and uniform surface.
- G. Steps: Steps for minor drainage structures shall be polypropylene encapsulated steel meeting requirement of ASTM C-478.
  - Steps differing dimension, configuration, or materials from those shown on the plans may also be used provided the Contractor has furnished the Owner's Representative with details of the proposed steps and has received written approval from the Owner's Representative for the use of such steps.
- H. Stone Bedding for Drainage Structures: Stone bedding for drainage structures shall be NCDOT standard size No. 57.

## 2.03 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS

- A. Bedding: As specified in Section 31 23 33.
- B. Cover: As specified in Section 31 23 33.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.01 TRENCHING

- A. See Section 31 23 33 for additional requirements.
- B. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION – PIPE

- A. Verify that trench cut is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on layout drawings.
- B. Install pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Seal watertight.
- C. Lay pipe to slope gradients noted on layout drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 10% from structure to structure.

# 3.03 INSTALLATION - CATCH BASINS AND CLEANOUTS

- A. Form bottom of excavation clean and smooth to correct elevation.
- B. Form and place cast-in-place concrete base pad, with provision for sanitary sewer pipe end sections.
- C. Establish elevations and pipe inverts for inlets and outlets as indicated.
- D. Mount lid and frame level in grout, secured to top cone section to elevation indicated.

## 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect pipe and bedding cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.

END OF SECTION 33 40 00

#### SECTION 33 46 00 - SUBDRAINAGE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building Perimeter, Retaining Wall, and Under-Slab Drainage Systems.
- B. Filter aggregate and fabric and bedding.

### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 23 00 Excavation: Excavating for subdrainage system piping and surrounding filter aggregate.
- B. Section 31 023 23 Fill and Backfill: Backfilling over filter aggregate, up to subgrade elevation.
- C. Section 31 23 33 Trenching for Site Utilities: Excavating and backfilling for site subdrainage systems.

### 1.03 UNIT PRICES

A. See Section 01 22 00 - Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.

#### 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 4 Standard Specification for Clay Drain Tile and Perforated Clay Drain Tile; 2004.
- B. ASTM C 412 Standard Specification for Concrete Drain Tile; 2005a.
- C. ASTM C 412M Standard Specification for Concrete Drain Tile; 2005a.
- D. ASTM D 2729 Standard Specification for Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2003.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.

# 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for materials and installation of the work of this section.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PIPE MATERIALS

- A. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe: ASTM D 2729; plain end, 4 inch inside diameter; with required fittings.
- B. Use perforated pipe at subdrainage system; unperforated through sleeved walls.

### 2.02 AGGREGATE AND BEDDING

- A. Filter Aggregate and Bedding Material: Granular fill as specified in Section 31 23 23.
- B. Filter Sand and Bedding Material: Sand as specified in Section 31 23 23.

SUBDRAINAGE 33 46 00 - 1

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pipe Couplings: Solid plastic.
- B. Filter Fabric: Water pervious type, black polyolefin. Provide a type I engineering fabric in accordance with NCDOT standard specifications for roads and structures, Section 1056, and dated July 2006.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that trench cut is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on layout Drawings.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Hand trim excavations to required elevations.
- B. Remove large stones or other hard matter which could damage drainage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and join pipe and pipe fittings in accordance with pipe manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place drainage pipe on clean cut subsoil.
- C. Lay pipe to slope gradients noted on Drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- D. Loosely butt pipe ends. Place joint cover strip 12 inches wide, around pipe diameter centered over joint.
- E. Place pipe with perforations facing down. Mechanically join pipe ends.
- F. Install pipe couplings.
- G. Install filter aggregate at sides, over joint covers and top of pipe. Provide top cover compacted thickness of 12 inches.
- H. Place filter fabric over levelled top surface of aggregate cover prior to subsequent backfilling operations.
- I. Place aggregate in maximum 4-inch lifts, consolidating each lift.
- J. Refer to Section 31 23 23 for compaction requirements. Do not displace or damage pipe when compacting.
- K. Connect to storm sewer system with unperforated pipe, through installed sleeves.

# 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Section 01 40 00 Quality Requirements: Field inspection and testing.
- B. Request inspection prior to and immediately after placing aggregate cover over pipe.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect pipe and aggregate cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation begins.

END OF SECTION 33 46 00

SUBDRAINAGE 33 46 00 - 2

### SECTION 33 49 13 - MANHOLES AND COVERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Modular precast concrete manhole sections with tongue-and-groove joints with masonry transition to lid frame, covers, anchorage, and accessories.
- B. Masonry manhole sections with masonry transition to lid frame, covers, anchorage, and accessories.

# 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 03 30 00 Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 04 20 00 Unit Masonry Assemblies: Masonry units and mortar and grout.

## 1.03 UNIT PRICES - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

- A. See Section 01 22 00 Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Manhole: By the unit. Includes excavating, concrete base pad, concrete manhole sections, FRP manhole sections, brick masonry manhole construction, brick masonry transition to cover frame, cover frame and cover, to indicated depth, forming and sealing pipe inlets and outlets.

## 1.04 REFERENCES

- A. ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 Specification For Masonry Structures; American Concrete Institute International; 2005.
- B. ASTM A 48/A 48M Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings; 2003.
- C. ASTM A 123/A 123M Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2002.
- D. ASTM C 55 Standard Specification for Concrete Brick; 2003.
- E. ASTM C 62 Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay or Shale); 2005.
- F. ASTM C 478 Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections; 2006a.
- G. ASTM C 478M Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections; 2006a.
- H. ASTM C 923 Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals; 2002.
- ASTM C 923M Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals; 2002.
- J. ASTM D 3753 Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Polyester Manholes and Wetwells; 2005.
- K. IMIAWC (CW) Recommended Practices & Guide Specifications for Cold Weather Masonry Construction; International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council; 1993.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate manhole locations, elevations, piping sizes and elevations of penetrations.

## 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Cold and Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Manhole Sections: Reinforced precast concrete in accordance with ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), with resilient connectors complying with ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M).
- B. Concrete: As specified in Section 03 30 00.
- C. Concrete Brick Units: As specified in Section 04 20 00.
- D. Mortar and Grout: As specified in Section 04 20 00, Type S.
- E. Reinforcement: Formed steel wire, galvanized finish, wire diameter as indicated on drawings.

#### 2.02 CONFIGURATION

- A. Shaft Construction: Concentric with concentric cone top section; lipped male/female dry joints; sleeved to receive pipe sections.
- B. Shape: Cylindrical.
- C. Clear Inside Dimensions: As indicated.
- D. Design Depth: As indicated.
- E. Clear Lid Opening: As indicated.
- F. Pipe Entry: Provide openings as indicated.
- G. Steps: As indicated.
- H. Steps: As required by code.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify items provided by other sections of Work are properly sized and located.
- B. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into Work.
- C. Verify excavation for manholes is correct.

#### 3.02 MANHOLES

- A. Place concrete base pad, trowel top surface level.
- B. Place manhole sections plumb and level, trim to correct elevations, anchor to base pad.
- C. Form and place manhole cylinder plumb and level, to correct dimensions and elevations. As work progresses, build in fabricated metal items.
- D. Cut and fit for pipe.
- E. Grout base of shaft sections to achieve slope to exit piping. Trowel smooth. Contour as required.
- F. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.

## 3.03 MASONRY WORK

- A. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- B. Lay masonry units in running bond. Course one unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches.
- C. Form concave mortar joints.
- D. Lay masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- E. Install joint reinforcement 16 inches on center.
- F. Place joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above base pad and below lid frame opening.

END OF SECTION 33 49 13